









# TRAVELS

IN

EUROPE, AFRICA, AND ASIA, &c.

VOL. I.







# TRAVELS

IN

EUROPE, AFRICA, AND ASIA,

MADE

BETWEEN THE YEARS 1770 AND 1779.

IN FOUR VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

CONTAINING A

VOYAGE TO THE SOUTHERN PARTS OF EUROPE,

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE IN AFRICA,

IN THE YEARS 1770, 1771, 1772, 1773.

THE SECOND EDITION,

2293

BY CHARLES PETER THUNBERG, M.D.

Knight of the Order of Vasa, Professor of Botany in the University of Upsal,  
and Member of various Academies and learned Societies both in  
Sweden and other Countries.

289

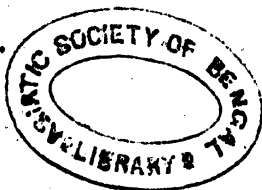
LONDON:

PRINTED FOR F. AND C. RIVINGTON, N° 62,

ST. PAUL'S CHURCH-YARD;

AND SOLD BY W. RICHARDSON, CORNHILL.

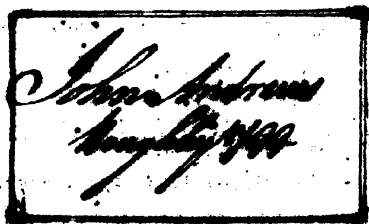
1795.



*a/v cm*

910-8  
T-535-E  
✓1

Sl No 039046



36721



---

## P R E F A C E.

---

SO many relations of Travels have already been obtruded upon the Public, that the shelves in the booksellers shops are loaded with them. It might therefore seem needless to add to their number, did not the generality of them abound more in the marvellous than in simple and certain truths; did they not contain more ridiculous, and frequently, insipid narratives, than articles of useful information; did they not supply more obscure descriptions of animals, plants, and other productions of nature, than plain and intelligible names and characters of these different objects. How often is the reader's time wasted in toiling through a large folio, which scarcely contains as much useful matter or real facts, as would fill a single page! How often has the natural philosopher, as well as the cultivator of rural economy, sought in vain for useful information in many of these books, for want of understanding the barbarous



names of natural objects, which the author has misreported, and frequently did not comprehend himself! Is not the nutmeg, of which almost all the travellers to the East Indies have made mention, and which for several centuries past has formed a considerable branch of the European commerce, is not the genus of this in a great measure unknown? Has not our knowledge of the animals and plants mentioned in the Bible, a book the most ancient, most sacred, and most universally read of any, been very imperfect till these later times, and are they not even now in some measure unknown to us? An ignorant traveller is apt to call foreign and uncommon animals by the names of those that he is already acquainted with; and, consequently, to consider all the different sorts of wild cats as *tigers*, and several species of the dog genus as *foxes*, and thus confound the *jackall*, or *Sampson's fox*\*, either with the common European *fox*, or with the ordinary *house-cur*, however dissimilar they are in their qualities.

Every traveller thinks himself under an obligation to turn author, and report something marvellous to his countrymen, although, perhaps, possessed of so small a stock of knowledge, as not to be able himself clearly to comprehend what he has seen or heard, much less to give

\* Vid. Judges, Chap. XV.

tion of the students, as to the arrangement and making catalogues of various botanic gardens, and more particularly of different collections of natural history, I cannot but hope for his favour and indulgence.

In this volume, I am persuaded, various particulars relative to the Cape will be found to be mentioned and illustrated, which have been entirely passed over by others; and many useful and important propositions are advanced with respect to rural œconomy, natural history, medicine, geography, and natural philosophy, which were my principal objects, as also on the subject of historical geography, according to the difference of countries and circumstances. But in all these a great degree of perfection cannot be expected, when one travels through regions, little better than deserts; when one runs with the greatest rapidity through whole provinces, where the natives are almost wild, where not the least trace of literature or civilization is to be seen, and where all nature is enveloped in the swaddling clothes of simplicity and ignorance.

Besides geographical observations, the physical knowledge of countries, together with the different institutions for arts and sciences, political and œconomical establishments, architecture, the different customs and ways of living of different nations, the reader will find I have principally

cipally had in view the various discoveries, that may have been made, for the benefit of mankind, in natural history, physic, and rural as well as domestic œconomy; three sciences to which I am very much attached. And in consequence of these my endeavours, which I flatter myself have not been entirely fruitless, I have been enabled to propose, in this first part of my travels, the following natural products, as being useful, and most of them unknown before:—  
*viz. As esculent and fit for food, the Cavia Capensis, Hystrix, Myrmecophaga, Gladiolus plicatus, the roots of Anise and of Gatagay, the Aponogeton distachyon, Arduina bispinosa, Mesembryanthemum edule, Euclea undulata, Streptis, Vitis vitiginea, Salicornia fruticosa, Zamia Caffra, Guaiacum Afrum, Albuea major, and the Myrica.*

*As tried and approved medicines for various diseases, both internal and external: The Arctopus echinatus, various species of Geranium, the Bryonia Africana, Asclepias undulata and crispa, the Eriocephalus, Hæmanthus coccineus, Polygonum barbatum, Crotalaria perfoliata, Piper Capense, Fagara Capensis, Mesembryanthemum edule, Officinarum camphorina and asteriscoides, the Adonia Capensis, Atragene vesicatoria, Adiantum Æthiopicum, Protea mellifera and grandiflora, the Oxalis cernua, Tulbaghia, Montinia, Turtle's blood, the Ricinus communis, Solanum nigrum, Sonchus oleraceus,*

oleraceus, crassula tetragona, lycoperdon carcinomale, and the seriphium.

*As useful for the purposes of domestic and rural economy.*

For ropes, the rind of the anthyllis.

For basons or bowls, tortoise-shells.

For window-blinds and chairs, ratans.

For tobacco, the cannabis sativa.

For tinder, the bupleurum giganteum.

For tea, the borbonia cordata.

For coffee, the brabejum stellatum.

For soap, the falsola aphylla.

For candles, the myrica cordifolia and quercifolia.

For trumpets, the fucus buccinalis.

For brooms and thatching, the restio dichotomus.

For mats and thatching, the cyperus textilis.

For fences and folds for cattle, the mimosa nilotica, arduina hispidosa, galenia Africana.

For quickset hedges, the aloe succotrina, zygo-  
phyllum morgsana, quince, apple and pear  
tree, hawthorn, euonymus, willow, rose bush,  
bramble, yew-tree, elm, holly, box, lime-tree,  
dogwood, honeysuckle, cherry-tree, cercis, sili-  
quastrum, lycium barbarum, maple, coronilla  
securidaca, lilac, oak, laurel, and myrtle; to  
which may be added, as borders in gardens, the  
shin-bones of sheep.

For

For *fuel*, the *protea grandiflora*, *conocarpa*, *hirta*, *speciosa*, *mellifera*, and *argentea*, with various species of *ericæ* and *bruniæ*.

For *various tools and utensils*, *camassie* wood, the *ilex crocea*, *olea Capensis* and *Europea*, stink hout, the *gardenia Thunbergia*, the bamboo, and the *curtisia*.

Though I cannot flatter myself that every thing in this journal will be equally pleasing to all of my readers, or that all my readers will be able to derive the same advantage from the perusal of it; yet I am inclined to hope, that something will continually occur in it which will prove either entertaining or instructive to every one of them. And since the two first volumes, which treat chiefly of the Cape and the Hottentots (a country and people in which art has improved but little upon the wild simplicity of nature) cannot possibly be as interesting as the third, which will contain relations and observations respecting a civilized nation, that has both a regular government and other good institutions, and even vies with the Europeans themselves; I presume the reader will not impute this circumstance to any want of attention in me, but to the country itself and the natives, that could not possibly present more materials to an attentive traveller, than they actually possessed.

TRAVELS.

---

# TRAVELS

IN

EUROPE, AFRICA, AND ASIA.

---

JOURNEY TO DENMARK, 1770.

AFTER having spent nine years at the University of Upsal, the most respectable in Sweden, and passed the usual examinations for taking the Degree of Doctor of Physic, I obtained from the Academical Consistory the *Koborn* Pension for travelling, which, in the space of three years, amounts to 3,800 Copper Dollars †, and with my own little stock, enabled me to undertake a journey to Paris, with a view to my farther improvement in Medicine, Surgery, and Natural History.

On the 13th of *August*, 1770, leaving *Upsal*, I passed through *Stockholm*, *Jönköping*, *Hälsingland*, and *Helsingborg*, to *Elseneur*, whither I was accompanied by M. BARKENMEYER, an

† About 45l. 16s. 8d. Sterling. [T.]

Apothecary, who, during my stay at *Helsingborg*, had shewn me many civilities.

On the 15th of September, I left my native country, little thinking that I should not return to it, till I had spent nine years in travelling through the remotest regions. During my passage across the Sound, the innumerable ships under sail resembled a vast forest; and those that lay in the road, appeared like a town floating on the water. At *Kronoburg*, they pay a toll, which is levied by the Danes on all other nations. Of this toll Sweden cannot partake, on account of the shoal water contiguous to her coasts, which yearly becomes shallower from a continual accumulation of sand, grass-wrack, (*Zostera*), and Sea-weed (*Fuci*), near *Helsingborg*.

As there was no ship in the road of *Elfsneur* ready to sail for Amsterdam, I resolved in the mean time to make a trip the same day to *Copenhagen*, by the common-stage cart.\* The road was very pleasant. After travelling a great way along the shore, and afterwards through thick forests of beech and oak, we entered the King's Park, in which, I understood, it was a capital offence to discharge fire-arms. By the

\* In some parts of Germany and the North of Europe, they travel chiefly in carts, the roads being too rough for chaises or coaches. [T]

road-side, especially near Copenhagen, there were very fine avenues of horse-chestnut trees, (*Æsculus Hippocastanum*), the trunks of which had been wreathed, when young, into a spiral form at the bottom. Vines were pretty numerous in the hedges.

At Copenhagen I viewed the Botanical Garden, which they were just then removing. I also visited the Hospital, which, together with its Dispensary, I was told, was founded by the late unfortunate Queen, and now contained about 200 patients; at the same time I viewed several private Museums.

The Professors ZOEGA and FABRICIUS, who a few years before had been my friends and fellow students at Upsal, were the first whom I enquired after. Besides other civilities, they gave me free access to the Botanical Garden, and their own private Collections, particularly Professor FABRICIUS, whose collection of insects was well worthy of attention. These gentlemen would certainly have rendered my stay at Copenhagen longer, as well as more agreeable and more advantageous to myself, had they not been under the necessity of going, in the afternoon of that same day, on business of importance to Sleswick.

The streets of Copenhagen are paved at the sides with flag stones, for the convenience of



foot passengers; and there are planks over the kennels. The houses have sunk stories, in which the inhabitants generally live.

Having viewed several remarkable things in the City, such as the Royal Palace, the University, Frederick's Square, the Exchange, the Quay, the Port, &c. I hastened back towards Elfsineur, in a return-cart, which was to convey me only part of my way, after which I was to proceed in a stage-cart; but having got near the Park, it being Sunday night, all the inns were so full of people, including ladies, as well with natural as artificial complexions, who had crowded together from all quarters to spend the Sunday evening here in fiddling and dancing, that I could neither get horses, nor a room to sleep in for the night. And as the amusement of this noisy rout had no great charms for me, I resolved to walk away with my botanical knapsack under my arm, to some inn farther on. But not knowing a step of the road, and having no guide, I lost my way in the Park; when, darkness overtaking me, I was obliged to repose under a large tree, with the sky for my canopy, in the company of animals both tame and wild. The next morning I resumed my journey on foot, and, it being a fine warm day, found my cloak, which had protected me in the night against the cold, very heavy and trouble-

troublesome. Towards noon I arrived at an inn, where I procured a carriage, in which I proceeded to Elfsneur.

I could plainly perceive, that near the shore the land has gained upon the water, by means of sand and sea-weed (*fuci*), though much less than on the Swedish side. Hence it appears evident, that the sound is already become narrower, and probable, that its breadth will be progressively contracted. On the shore I found several species of fucus, zostera, and falsola, as also muscles (*mytilus edulis*). By the sides of the roads were several fine gardens, many of them adorned with arbours of ever-greens.

The houses in *Elfsneur* are built either entirely of bricks, or, as in Halland in Sweden, of wooden frames, with the spaces filled up with bricks. The numerous fountains that are seen in the squares, and in several streets of the town, are no less useful than ornamental; so that water may conveniently be had in a place, where, in other respects, dearth herself seems to have fixed her head quarters.

At my return to Elfsneur, I soon found a vessel bound for Amsterdam, which had just arrived from *Pillaw* with corn. In her I set sail on the 18th of September, and soon lost sight of the Swedish and Danish Coasts. On the 21st, we were obliged, by a heavy gale of con-

trary wind, to put into a harbour in Norway, about twenty miles from Fredrickshamn, where, among others, I found a Swedish ship. The mountains and the shore round this little harbour, are frightfully precipitous. The water near the shore abounded with star-fish (*asterias*), fuci, ulvæ, barnacles (*lepadæ*), cray-fish (*canceres*), and other marine animals. The Lobsters here (*gammarus*), were not much esteemed. Every thing was as cheap here, as it was dear at Elfsneur. The mountains produced, at this season of the year, nothing but the *Silene rupestris* (a species of catch-fly), and a kind of rose, together with (*empetrum nigrum*) or crow-berries.

On the 24th we sailed with a fair wind; but soon again were opposed by a storm and contrary wind with rain, which lasted for several days, so that we saw nothing but thick clouds and the sea, the green waves of which frequently broke over our little vessel, and rendered the deck extremely slippery.

The diet of the crew of a Dutch ship is strong and nutritive, consisting of the seeds of French beans, with sweet and sour sauce; stock-fish, with mustard and potatoes; stewed grey, and boiled yellow peas; thick flummery, made of coarse-ground barley, with some fat in it; pudding, with fat and treacle; and coarse four

Dutch bread, with butter and a slice of cheese. They drink tea and coffee several times a day, the former in general strong, and sometimes mixed with a little saffron, especially in bad weather; but the coffee is made weak, mostly without any sugar, always without milk or cream: of both they drink plentifully, to the quantity of ten or twelve cups at a time. The Captain and myself were the only persons on board who were indulged with a little sugar-candy, when we drank our coffee, together with English wheat-bread for our bread and butter, and rice-gruel with raisins and butter in it.—Butchers-meat and bacon are always eaten with mustard. Brandy is seldom drank, except a pilot comes on board, or the weather is very bad. Wine is still less common. They take out beer with them, indeed, in earthen vessels, but do not often drink any; so that their food is strong and dry, and not a little greasy.—Cleanliness and neatness is the great object of their attention on board their ships, which they are perpetually scrubbing and painting.

On the 1<sup>st</sup> of *October* we arrived off the Coast of Holland. The Island of *Texel* first presented itself to us, and a pilot came on board to conduct us to Amsterdam. Here was an infinite number of ships, men of war, East and West Indiamen, and smaller vessels, some

at anchor, others sailing in all directions; all which could not but prove an enchanting sight to an eye that was not accustomed to such prospects.

On the 2d, having arrived at the little town of *Bergen*, we were ordered, on pain of death, not to go on shore, because the ship came from *Pillaw*, on the borders of Poland, and was suspected of being infected with the plague.— Though I had come as a passenger, not from *Pillaw*, but from *Elfineur*, yet my trunks were brought on shore, to be kept in quarantain; but the ship, with its crew, was permitted to sail to Amsterdam. A surgeon, however, came previously on board, to enquire into the state of our health, and for the trouble of feeling the pulses of five persons, fairly pocketed his ducat, by way of convincing me and a few poor sailors of the profits attending his profession.

In the continuation of our voyage towards Amsterdam, on the *Zuyderzee*, we frequently met with Islands almost covered with towns.— The horizon was skirted with forests of ships sailing different ways, and forming the most beautiful sea-piece. The tide here, on its changes, forms long and irregular spots of smooth water. In this sea we spent several days in sailing little more than fifty miles,

as the wind at best was faint, so that we were for the most part obliged passively to obey the direction of the current. During our frequent calms, the crew were so earnestly employed in scouring, washing, and painting, that they did not even leave the dog's kennel unpainted. I had at this time also the pleasure of seeing a large vessel brought out by camels, \* to the Texel; a method which they make use of, on account of the low water, to convey large vessels from the city into deep water. In this sea I saw nothing deserving the attention of a naturalist, but large masses of seed-weed (*zostera*) floating about.

On the 5th, towards evening, we arrived at the populous and splendid commercial city of *Amsterdam*, which extends along the shore in the form of a crescent. The harbour is crowded with an incredible number of ships. The largest vessels lie farthest from, and the smallest nearest to, the city, according to the depth of the water; and in such order, that they form a kind of wall several rows deep; and their num-

\* The camels are two very large lighters, nearly full of water, between which, large ships that have been built at Amsterdam are made fast. The water is then pumped out of the lighters; and thus, by their buoyancy, the intermediate vessel is sufficiently raised to pass over the bar, which, being a security against a hostile fleet, is suffered to remain. [T]

bers are such as to intercept the view of the city. Within these the city is bordered with several rows of piles, off which smaller craft and lighters can lie, and run up through their openings and bridges. Both towards the water side, and in the city itself, the banks of the canals are faced with brick-work, to which boats and small vessels can lay their sides.

The houses are in general very neat and elegant, though not always equally convenient.—Every where they are nearly uniform and regularly built of brick, five stories high, with pitch-roofs covered with tiles. The gable ends are towards the street, and slope off, as it were, by steps, which gives the houses a nobler appearance, than when the slope of the roofs is next to the street. The houses have in general a basement, or sunk story, which is made use of for work-shops, kitchens, and sometimes for dwelling apartments. The windows immediately above the street are very high, and in two divisions, as they give light both to the first floor, and to that beneath it, which in most of the common houses appear externally to form but one story. The walls are very thin, on account of the bad foundations in that marshy soil: and five stories in Amsterdam are hardly so high as three in Stockholm. The inside of the apartments, and still more frequently of  
the

the anti-chambers and passages, and sometimes even of the churches, is covered with small squares of Delft ware, and the floors are laid with white and other marble. The houses in general stand upon little ground, and have but few apartments, often but one on a floor, except in certain quarters of the town, where the houses, in point of size and magnificence, resemble palaces. The water is conducted to and from every street and house, by means of little covered channels communicating with the large canals. Throughout Holland chimnies are generally used; stoves are but scarce, the great utility of them being as yet little known in that country, where turf, which is their most common fuel, is probably unfit to heat them, and its fumes, if prevented by stoves from having a free exit, might be dangerous. The streets are paved in the middle with oblong granites of the best sort, and at each side with hard yellow bricks, or, as they are there called, clinkers. Close to the house, the street is laid as far as the outer steps project, with white marble slabs, or blue lime-stone. Though all the stones for paving are imported, yet in no other place do we meet either with such choice stones, or streets so well paved; besides that, the pavement or clinkers at the side of the houses, which is daily washed, is very agreeable to the foot-passenger,



senger, who is thus, not only secured from the inroads of carriages and horses, but likewise avoids being bespattered with dirt. Wheel-carriages are very little used here, except by physicians, who are obliged to make dispatch in visiting their patients; and who use large chaises with high wheels, drawn either by one or two horses.

The coaches, or rather sledges, are drawn by one horse upon sliders, by which means the houses are not shaken, nor the streets soiled.→ Goods are also conveyed on sledges, or on a kind of wheel-barrow.

The whole city is intersected with canals, on which goods are conveyed in craft of a moderate size. On each side, rows of trees are planted, with lamps placed between them. Many of the lanes and alleys intersecting the streets, are very narrow.

At the same time that the eye of the stranger is entertained with viewing elegant buildings and other objects worthy of attention, the ear is charmed with the music of the chiming clocks in the Stadt-house, or town-hall, and of almost every church-steeple in the city. They chime a little at the end of every fifth minute; longer at every quarter of an hour; and every hour, just before the clock strikes, they play an entire piece.

Among

Among the chief and most remarkable buildings, is the Stadt-house, the Custom-house, and the Exchange; the first of which is scarcely to be paralleled. The outside of the Stadt-house is faced with free-stone: in the first floor is a large and lofty hall, the walls of which are decorated with marble of different kinds, and with several marble statues.

In so large and populous a city, where so much business is transacted, the streets of course are noisy. The mode of crying fruit, milk, &c. in the streets, saves the inhabitants much trouble. Immediately on my entering the city, I met a man with a rattle, which is a signal every morning to the inhabitants to bring out their ashes, &c. to be conveyed away in large carts, which have separate divisions for every kind of soil; this regulation prevents the canals from being choaked up with dirt, and the air from generating putrid diseases.

The inhabitants enjoy a degree of liberty, which is equally distant from restraint and licentiousness. Persons in a costly or in a mean dress, are equally exempted from reflections.—Without ceremoniously regarding either persons or occasions, they keep on their hats in the house, and even at church.

In like manner every one, whatever may be his religion or country, is at liberty to earn his  
— livelihood

livelihood in any way, so that it be but honest, that he may think proper; and without being checked in his pursuits by corporations, monopolies, or exclusive privileges. Strangers are likewise exempted from being visited, much less ill-treated, by toll-gatherers in this country, where happily no land-tolls \* exist.

The day after my arrival, several criminals were punished on a stage erected near the Stadt-house; one of them was broke on the wheel, and the rest whipped. The magistrates, in their official dress, viewed the execution from the windows of the Stadt-house. It appeared to add great solemnity to the punishment, that those who had tried and condemned the offenders, should themselves superintend the execution; not, as in Sweden, where it is committed to an inferior officer, whose ignorance of this important duty often renders him either too mild, or too severe.—

In my landlord's house I observed, a very ingenious method of teaching children to walk.—A ribband was fastened under the child's arms, which passed through a ring that slid on a long iron rod fixed horizontally in the roof, so that the child could walk backwards and forwards along

\* In this, very different from Sweden, where certain taxes are levied upon all sorts of goods entering the inland towns and sea ports. [T]

the room, without falling or taking up the time of an attendant.

On the 9th of October, I visited the Professors, Messrs. BURMANNS, who received me in a very friendly manner. In my daily visits to them, I had not only the pleasure of surveying their different and numerous collections in natural history, and the advantage of their valuable library, in which the late celebrated LINNÆUS put the last hand to his *Bibliotheca Botanica*, but was likewise invited every day to their tables, and requested to examine and give names to a great number of unknown minerals, insects, and plants, particularly of the grass and moss kind.

Here were some exquisitely beautiful petrifications and corals; and the Library, so far as related to Medicine and Natural History, might be said to be quite complete. This rendered my stay at Amsterdam both agreeable and useful; and notwithstanding the advanced season, I should not have hastened from thence, had I not been deprived of my little stock of clothes and books, which, in my opinion, were both unjustly and imprudently kept in quarantain.— It could not but be imprudent, to suffer a ship suspected of infection, to enter a harbour crowded with ships, and the crew to frequent the towns freely for several days, and afterwards to  
send

send the ship and cargo back to the Texel to perform quarantain. It appeared likewise to be unjust, when there were no symptoms of infection on board, to detain the trunks of a passenger, who did not come from the suspected place, contrary to every usage on such occasions. This conduct excited my pity for a government, that, on so serious and delicate a conjuncture, must frequently entrust the execution of its orders to ignorant and imprudent officers. I endeavoured, by means of an application to the Swedish agent, M. BAILLERIE, to procure from the admiralty an order to deliver up my trunks; but all I could obtain, was a permit to get them at passing the Texel, if I should chuse to take a passage for France.— Thus I was obliged to change my route, and subjected to considerable inconvenience and expence.

In the mean time, I determined to travel about in Holland, and view some of their many curiosities, collections of natural history, and gardens.

On the 15th of October, I went out in a carriage with Professor BURMANN, to a country house of his, near Amsterdam. His garden is finely laid out in the English taste. The hedges were formed of yew (*saxus*), holly (*ilex*), beech (*fagus*), and oaks (*quercus*).

Among

Among the many rare plants now in bloom, were the *amaryllis, ceilanica*, and *gladiolus tristis*. In the Wilderness I observed, among others, the *kalmia latifolia*, the *æsculus pavia* (or scarlet horse-chestnut tree); the *clethra alnifolia*, and the *magnolia grandiflora*.

At eight in the evening I went in the treck-schuyt (or passage-boat) to Leyden. These boats are generally used for travelling in Holland, where the whole Country is intersected with Canals. They are very long, and tilted over, to shelter the passengers from the weather; at one end is a cabin, which the skipper sometimes hires out to such persons as wish to sleep, or to sit separate from the common people.— These boats always set out on a certain day and hour, and arrive with the same regularity at the places of their destination. In the middle they have a mast, to the top of which is fastened a rope, by which a horse draws the boat. When the wind is favourable to them, they make sail; and the helm, in both cases regulates the motion. Every passenger is entitled to bring as much baggage as he can carry, without any extra charge. As soon as the boat has set off, the passage-money is paid, which, considering the ease and convenience of this mode of travelling, is very trifling.

The first thing I did in the morning of the 16th of October, was to visit Professor DAVID VAN ROYEN, who showed me his collection of plants from the Cape of Good Hope, and another which had lately been sent him from Ceylon. I next viewed the 'cabinet of natural history' that was committed to the care of Professor ALLAMAND; as also the botanic garden, where I procured many rare plants for my own *hortus siccus*, and seeds and roots for the garden at Upsal. The botanic garden is situated near the university, and is surrounded with a stone wall. Though not very extensive, it is neat and elegant, divided into several quarters, and well furnished with curious plants. On three sides it is inclosed by the university, the apartments of the botanical professor, and of the gardener, the cabinet of natural history, and other necessary buildings,

Among other things worthy of attention, I was shown a *hortus siccus*, composed for the use of the lecturer, of all the plants that had flowered in the garden. This is certainly a proof of the professor's zeal for the science he teaches, and for the improvement of the students. At the gardener's, NICOLAS MEERBOURG, I saw also several fine specimens of animals preserved in spirits of wine; as well as of plants and insects, of which latter I bought

6

and

and procured by exchange, several American and East Indian butterflies.

The houses at Leyden have the same external appearance as at Amsterdam, but have no sunk stories.

The edifice of the university is divided into separate apartments or lecture-rooms; the chairs are small, and there are benches with desks before them for the students.

The library is neat, though neither large nor much decorated.—Immediately under it, is the anatomical theatre.

I paid a visit to the learned and aged librarian, GRONOVIVS, was well received, and heard him bestow great encomiums on the learned assessor, SWEDENBORG, who a few weeks before had gone from thence to England.

I also visited the senator (*scabinus*) GRONOVIVS, a very polite and cheerful, as well as learned man, who, notwithstanding his many occupations, showed me his valuable collections of corals, fishes, amphibious animals, insects, minerals, plants, and books. The bottles that contained the specimens of animals preserved in spirits of wine, were covered with a glass-plate and a red cement; the composition of which was communicated to me. It answered the purpose so well, that the spirits appeared not to have evaporated much, though they had been



seven years in the bottles. These must be filled in the summer, and not in the spring, lest the glass-plate should be broke by the rarefaction of the air. Among the minerals were many which had been sent him from Sweden, by M. GOTHER. Speaking of iron ores, he gave it as his opinion, that all iron was native, that was attracted by the load-stone.

I went to see the garden of that celebrated florist, VAN HAZEN, in the neighbourhood of Leyden. This gentleman sends yearly many thousands of roots, seeds, and shrubs, to different countries.

In the evening I walked to *Zudwyk*, where I met with a hearty welcome from a Mr. VITTBOM, a Swedish gardener; here I deposited the plants which I had purchased at Leyden, for the garden of Upsal, to be sent over the following spring. The elegant garden which VITTBOM superintended, was the property of Count HAHN, and was ornamented with visioes, hedges, grottos, fountains, canals, English summer-houses, Chinese temples and bridges, and other decorations. As for walls, it needed no other than the deep canals by which it was surrounded, and which are the usual boundaries of property in this country, the very cattle never attempting to swim over them.

On

On the 18th of October, in the morning, I took a walk to the *Hague*. The road is heavy and sandy, but is rendered agreeable by large cuts, or canals, ornamented with avenues of trees or cut hedges, and surrounded with a variety of beautiful seats. By the road-side grew poplars (*populus alba*), alders (*betula alnus*), common broom (*spartium scoparium*), German broom (*genista Germanica*), reed canary-grass (*phalaris arundinacea*), &c. The public houses, which were by no means few, were plentifully supplied with ale, wine, and mead.

I passed the palace of the Prince, near the Hague, which is decorated with an elegant garden. Before I arrived at the town, I viewed the physic-garden, which, though small, contains some very curious plants.

The Hague is a handsome town; the houses being larger than they usually are in Holland, bear a greater resemblance to those of Paris or Stockholm, and the slope of the roofs, which have no gable ends, is towards the street. The squares are tolerably large, and ornamented with trees.

Throughout all Holland turf is their usual fuel. Their chimneys have no register for opening and shutting the vent, which, as well as stoves, the Dutch do not think adapted to a lamp country, being of opinion that it would

render them more subject to gout and rheumatism; but the true reason probably is, their want of wood, which is very scarce and dear, and turf is not proper for heating stoves. Turf is sometimes sold by the ton, and sometimes by tale; it has a disagreeable smell like that of grease, which excites a head-ach and nausea in persons unaccustomed to it. It is cut into oblong squares; and though it burns slowly, and must be kindled with wood, it throws out a strong heat.

At half past three in the afternoon, I went in a treckschuyt to *Amsterdam*, where I arrived at six the next morning. Whenever the boats stopt at the inns, several women came up to us to sell us bread, fish, and other refreshments.

The country, between the Hague and Amsterdam, is very agreeably interspersed with numerous gentlemens' seats, situated on each side of the canal, and adorned with elegant gardens and summer-houses. The walls of their houses are frequently covered all over with ivy (*bedera*), and the box trees and hedges are formed by the shears into a thousand fantastic figures.

While I was waiting for a vessel to convey me to *Rouen*, I daily visited Professor BURMANN, and made use of his library, and cabinet of natural history. Here I perceived the unspeakable advantage of a professor having a library so near at hand, which affords him an  
oppor-

opportunity of arranging it in scientific order, and of comparing the different subjects in his collection with the figures and descriptions of different authors, of which it is frequently necessary to consult not only one or two, but a hundred. The largest public libraries are, in this respect, less useful, because they are opened and shown only on certain days, and that frequently under the inspection of one librarian only, who cannot be supposed to interest himself in accommodating his visitors with books in all the branches of science alike, or with such a number of them as is often necessary; not to mention the inconvenience of frequent applications. These important considerations render it adviseable for professors to furnish themselves, as far as they are able, with libraries of their own; and also show, that notwithstanding all that has been said of the utility of large public libraries, much is wanting to render them as extensively useful as is pretended.—Among the many scarce books it contained, were RUMPHIUS's shells and fishes, coloured, in large folio, drawn at Amboyna, by RUMPHIUS the son; the original drawings of PETIVER's plants; MERINA's coloured drawings of butterflies; RUMPHIUS's *plantæ Amboynenses*, also coloured, &c. I likewise attentively examined his various collections of dried plants, from the East and West

Indies, and Africa, but especially those of HERMANNUS and OLDENLANDIUS, which were bound. And as I arranged and described several plants belonging to the most comprehensive genera, such as *Ixia*, *Erica*, *Aspalathus*, &c. Professor BURMANN mentioned, that he would procure me an opportunity of making a voyage either to Surinam, or the Cape of Good Hope, at the expence of the States. I testified my sense of his friendly offer in the best manner I was able, and told him I would gladly accept it, and that I had no objection to spend a few years in an expedition of this kind; at the same time I could not help expressing my surprise, that he should place so much confidence in a stranger, whom he had known only for a few days. In answer to this, he assured me, that from the time that he had passed a summer at the university of Upsal, he had conceived, and still entertained, a great partiality for the Swedish nation, and that he had taken a great liking to me in particular, on finding with what readiness I named and described a great number of his non-descripts, a circumstance, which, he was pleased to say, filled him with astonishment.

The professor at this time complained, that his salary was so small, that it barely paid his house-rent, and that consequently he was obliged to support himself by his medical practice, which;

which, being pretty extensive, took off his attention from a study, to which he was more inclined, and which was the proper object of his professorship. Here I could not help tacitly congratulating the professors in the Swedish universities, who are not under the necessity of dividing their attention between the cares of their subsistence, and their proper employment, the instruction of youth.

I now also took a view of the physic-garden, and the different hospitals in and about Amsterdam. The botanic-garden is situated near the town, is large and elegant, and contains several large orangeries and hot-houses, and a great number of succulent plants, and other curious productions from the Cape. The great American aloe (*agave Americana*) was in full blossom, and shown every day for money. Of the city hospital, Professor BURMANN, jun. had been for some time before appointed chief physician, in the room of his father, whose great age had obliged him to retire from his office. Seven or eight hundred patients were said to be supported here. Two women were generally in a bed, and the beds were all numbered. In the morning-visits, the number of the patient was put down on a slate, with the medicine prescribed to them for that day. The dispensary of the hospital was contiguous to it. The lazaretto

retto (or pest-house) is situate at some distance from the town.

The air of this low country was at this time very damp and unwholesome. The hair would not keep in curl without the help of pins; and plants could not be dried otherwise than before the fire. The atmosphere bore an appearance similar to the exhalations of a bath; there often fell a drizzling rain, attended sometimes with a fog, so thick as to occasion imprudent people to fall into the canals. A very singular phænomenon is sometimes observed, caused by an exhalation altogether opaque suddenly arising, and as this subsides, which it generally does in a short time, at first only the heads of the foot-passengers are to be seen, and afterwards their bodies gradually come into view. Catarrhal fevers (*febres catarrhales*) also now began to prevail.

During the cold season, women of the middling station in life kept themselves warm by means of chafing-dishes, containing live coals of turf, placed in perforated boxes on the floor, under their clothes.

As the Dutch in general are great smokers, a necessary part of the furniture of every sitting-room, is a copper chafing-dish, with live coals of turf to light their pipes, and a spitting-box, with

with a small mouth and broad brim, beside it on a table.

Tea and coffee are the usual substitutes for beer, which is but little drank in Holland. The coffee is always weak, and roasted but little, and is copiously used in the morning, sometimes with and sometimes without milk, and a bit of sugar-candy is kept in the mouth to sweeten it. Tea is drank in the same manner in the afternoon. On board of ship we sometimes had milk and water, with an infusion of tea or sage, and a little powdered sugar.

Soups are but little used; their diet is chiefly solid, and consists of vegetables, butcher's meat, and fish. This last is the most common, and the cheapest food. The common people at every meal eat two sorts of bread cut into slices, with butter, and a piece of cheese between the slices. Salt meat is hardly ever used. Fresh water fish, such as pikes and perch, is scarce and dear. Potatoes and sea-fish form the chief diet of the poor.

The ladies all wear small hoop-petticoats, and have frequently a pouch or bag at their side, with a large silver lock.

*October the 26th* I went on board a Dutch vessel bound for Rouen. In the harbour I observed many boats loaded with milk, vegetables, fruit,



fruit, and other provisions, for the supply of Amsterdam.

*November the 1st* we set sail, and on the 5th arrived in the *Texel*, where I at last recovered my trunks by the good offices of Mr. ROSEBORN, our Commissary at Aufgell, at which place, all ships bound to and from Amsterdam, must be entered and cleared out. The island is surrounded with dykes, formed of feed-weed (*zostera*). A road goes round the island along the sea-shore, which, though elevated, being composed of clay, was, at this wet season, rather dirty.

The surface of this island, like that of a great part of Holland, is evidently lower than the surface of the sea, which is only prevented from over-flowing the land by the dykes, in the repairs of which immense sums are yearly expended.

From the element of water the Dutch derive all the advantages of their internal and external commerce. It fertilizes their meadows, which are the true source of their natural riches. At the same time, their security from this element costs them much expence and labour; but, in spite of all their precaution, the storms from the N. W. often cause irruptions of the sea through their dykes and sluices, deluging whole tracts of land, and laying even towns under water,

others a distinct idea of it. And this circumstance alone has produced more unintelligible books than can easily be imagined.

Upon the whole then, if relations of travels can either clear up the obscurities of ancient authors, or throw a new light on geography, political history, rural oeconomy, physick, natural philosophy and natural history, and several other sciences, they will certainly not be superfluous.

When travellers pass through countries with as much knowledge and attention to the objects they meet with as some of the more modern travellers have done, the reader, in perusing their books, imagines that he is following them, as it were, step by step, and with his own eyes sees what they have seen. And when every thing is set in a clear light, and rendered perfectly intelligible, the reader is always enabled to derive more or less advantage from them.

Many accounts have been published of the CAPE OF GOOD HOPE in Africa, and some of them in large volumes, in which one may naturally expect to find every thing mentioned which relates to that part of the world. Besides several detached tracts relative to this country, KOENIG, in 1727, published two essays in Dutch, which have been translated and printed in several languages, to the no small emolument of the booksellers, and two other descriptions

of the Cape, which are little else than extracts of KOUR's prolix narrative, with some few additions, appeared not long ago in Dutch at Amsterdam, viz. in the years 1777 and 1778, in octavo. The celebrated astronomer DE LA CAILLE arrived at the Cape in 1751, and left it in 1753. The short account he gives of the Cape, consists, for the most part, of the relations of others, and those frequently resting upon very uncertain foundations. The travels of Professor SPARRMAN, printed at Stockholm in 1783, turn chiefly upon geography and zoology, of which KOUR had treated in the old-fashioned obscure manner, so that zoology has gained considerably by the researches and discoveries of that learned professor.

So much, therefore, having been written, and consequently so much being known concerning this country, I might have saved myself the trouble, and my readers the expence of this publication. But as both my own countrymen, and also several foreigners who honour me with their friendship, have frequently signified to me their desire of being informed of the events that have occurred to me, and the discoveries I have made in my travels, and have, moreover, in the kindest manner, encouraged and persuaded me to publish these remarks, I could do no less than (at the few leisure hours I have after

an assiduous application to the duties of my office) collect and put in order the scattered observations I had made in the course of my long-continued and extensive travels.

With a view of facilitating the publication of it, I have divided my narrative into three parts; the *first* of which contains my travels through Denmark, Holland, and France, my voyage to the Cape of Good Hope, in Africa, my first expedition up the coast of Caffraria, and my residence at the Cape during the two first winters. The *second* part will contain my farther stay at the Cape the third winter, and two long journies into the country of the Caffres, and Namaquasland northwards. The *third* will comprize my voyage to Java and Japan, my residence there, and journey to the Emperor's court; and farther, my return by the way of Java, Ceilon, the Cape, Holland, England, and Germany, to Sweden.

I have carefully avoided introducing into this narrative any prolix descriptions (and particularly in Latin) of animals or plants, for fear of tiring out the patience of the generality of my readers; but, for the use of botanists and zoologists, I have thought proper to publish them in separate works. Still, however, I have taken care, as far as it might be done, to distinguish them by their proper and genuine names. The relations of others which have come

come to my ears, I have for the most part forbore to speak of, that nobody might be misled or confused by them; and have therefore merely given an account of what I myself have done, seen, or experienced.

I have likewise presented, in an artless unpremeditated order, the memorandums I had put down in my journal, thinking it less necessary as well as less useful to write an elegant romance or a well-compiled history, than to introduce naked and simple truths in the same order of time and place as they have occurred to me.

If the reader should find any passages in this narrative, that might have been either arranged in a better order, or more elegantly expressed, he will be pleased to recollect, that I neither had an opportunity of collecting the materials for it with a free and vacant mind, nor of arranging them properly afterwards, having been for the most part interrupted and disturbed by a great variety of other occupations. And if he will likewise be kind enough to consider, on the one hand, how much in the course of these last nine years I have already written and published for the advancement of the science I profess, and, on the other, the almost innumerable occupations in which I have been engaged, as well with respect to the instruction

to the great terror and danger of the inhabitants.

The soil in general is loose and marshy. We may therefore safely affirm, that scarcely any country in the world is naturally dirtier; but by the ingenuity and indefatigable industry of the inhabitants, it has been rendered incomparably neat and clean.

I lodged that night in a village, before which the vessel lay at anchor. Muscles (*mytilus*), and oysters (*ostrea edulis*), are eaten here, both boiled and raw, with vinegar, oil and pepper.—When the muscles are boiled till the shell opens, and eaten with sweet and sour sauce, they are both relishing and nutritive. While the ship lay at anchor, the sailors went on shore in the evenings, and brought whole pails full of them on board. They sometimes used Spanish onions, instead of bread, with their peas and other victuals. Notwithstanding that they keep every thing clean and neat on board, I now discovered them to be very uncleanly at their meals, for they fed themselves with their fingers, which seemed very well secured against putrefaction, by a thick coat of tar.

On the evening of *November the 13th*, which was perfectly calm, a murmuring noise was heard from the sea, and the water swelled towards the shore, exhibiting a very beautiful phæno-

phænomenon; for it sparkled like fire, or as if the light of the moon had been reflected from its surface; but this was only when it was agitated, as, for instance, when any thing was thrown into it, or it was stirred with an oar.

On the 15<sup>th</sup>, we left the Texel with a fair wind; but in the night a storm arose, which continued till the 17<sup>th</sup>, when we were in the English Channel, just between Dover and Calais, and plainly saw two light-houses on the English shore. At length the gale increased so much as to split several of our sails, and the rain fell in torrents.

On the 18<sup>th</sup>, the wind being fair, we saw the French shore, which appeared very high.

On the 19<sup>th</sup>, we were within a stone's throw of the shore, which is very precipitous, projecting in irregular promontories, and seemed to consist of chalk, interspersed with red streaks. Towards noon we arrived at *Havre de Grace*, where several ships lay in the large harbour formed there by the shore. The sailors feet, which had been wet for several days, from the sea-water which had washed over the ship, were now swelled and blistered, an inconvenience which they remedied merely by rubbing their feet with brandy.

On the 20<sup>th</sup> of November, the Captain went to the town, to get a certificate of health (*lettre de santé*) and a pilot.

The

The town is situated on a declivity, and is nearly surrounded with hills. Though not very large, it is neat, well situated, and has the advantage of an excellent harbour, which, at this time, contained about 150 vessels.—In the road there were some Hamburgh ships riding quarantain. The next day, towards noon, we arrived at *Quillebœuf*, at the mouth of the river Seine. Here a custom-house officer came on board to seal the hatches, and a pilot to conduct us to *Rouen*. The water was quite white from the chalk which forms the bottom. From the mouth of the winding Seine to Rouen, the distance was said to be thirty French leagues by sea, and only ten by land.

On the 23d, I went on shore. The farm-houses are very close to each other, and the lands are separated merely by quick-set hedges or apple and pear trees, hawthorn (*cratægus oxyacanthus*), prickwood, (*euonymus*), and willows (*salices*); among which were wild briars (*rosæ*), and brambles (*rubus cæsius*), interwoven with ivy (*hedera*). Here I could not help indulging the patriotic wish, that Sweden might one day be so far improved, as to substitute quick hedges for its present wooden fences, which are not only expensive, but tend to destroy the forests. If, at the same time, the plantation of trees was encouraged, and the laws for securing



securing them enforced, the country would soon assume a far more delightful appearance. The fruit trees here are planted regularly in rows. Apples were in such plenty, that a quart of cyder cost only three sols.

The houses are built with wooden frames wattled, and clay. The peasants wear wooden shoes, with socks or straw within them.

The wild plants growing here were (*daucus carota*) carrots (*bellis*) daisies, (*senecio*) ragwort, (*mentha*) mint, (*betonica*) betony, and (*viscum*) mistletoe. The *helix hispida* was found here on the trees.

In the evening, we came to a part of the river where we were surrounded with high hills, which intercepted the wind, so that we were obliged to hire horses from the peasants to draw the vessel up the river. When nearer Rouen, we observed several islands in the river.

On the 25th of November, towards noon, we arrived at Rouen, which is a large fortified town. Some of the houses are of stone, and others of frame-work and plaster. The convent is very extensive. The vessels run up to the bridge, directly opposite to the exchange and the parade. This exchange, which is opened only in fine weather, is inclosed with iron rails; and there is another exchange in the middle of the town. The whole street along the harbour is

is lined with custom-house officers ; the entrance from the harbour to the city is through gates, which are shut at nine at night. The houses in general are covered with slate. The horses are small, and slow in motion. Both men and women rode on them, frequently two at a time. Asses are much used here, several of which were harnessed one before the other to large carts, and were ornamented with bells, which produced a very discordant kind of music.

Though the weather was not very cold, yet the inhabitants already wore waistcoats, lined with shag.

A kind of Dutch stoves were in common use here, which were made either of iron or Delft-ware, and were heated with brush-wood ; these warm a room in a quarter of an hour, but their effect is merely temporary.

The shops of the tradesmen and mechanics are built with open fronts. It could not but appear strange to me, to hear the ordinary burghers and peasants speak in common the language which in others countries is peculiar to the gentry, and to see the servant-maids strolling about in their wooden shoes, and at the same time dressed up in their fly caps and negligees, like ladies.

In every part of the city the inhabitants enjoy the benefit of fountains conveniently situated.

I visited M. PINARD, the professor of botany here, and viewed his *hortus siccus*.

The botanical garden, which is situated at the end of the town is not very large; it is divided into two parterres, and has a round mount in the middle, and an orangery, which consists of three divisions, and is not very elegant.

An illicit commerce in tobacco is prohibited, under no less a penalty than that of slavery in the galleys. All the tobacco on board our ship was immediately entered and taken into custody; and the crew, who could not exist without this commodity, received only a weekly allowance of it, for their immediate use.

*November the 29th*, at four in the morning, when the city gates were opened, I was told the post-coach was just going to set out. Though this vehicle holds ten persons, there was no passenger in it but myself; it was loaded with a great deal of luggage, and was drawn by four horses. The cold was intense. A fog enveloped the country, and there was ice on the water.—Trees were planted at the sides of the roads, which were very broad. On all the hills there lay a great number of blue and yellow flints.—The houses on the road were built with limestone and flint.

During this journey, which lasted three days, I passed through several fortified towns. At the inns on the road a traveller may dine either in company with other people at a fixed price, or may chuse his own dishes, and dine by himself, paying in proportion. At every inn something must be given to the domestics (*quelque chose pour le garçon*), especially for being awaked in the morning, when the diligence sets out.

Mile stones are regularly placed along the road, and at every quarter of a mile there is a post with a copper-plate on it. Near the convents it was not unusual to meet with boys and other mendicants, who read the pater-noster for the edification of travellers.

The hedges were in some places formed of brambles (*rubus*), which, though prickly, were not thick set.

On the 1st of December, in the morning, I arrived at Paris. The luggage was all unloaded and searched in the inn yard. I took an apartment in the neighbourhood to hold my baggage, till I could get a lodging nearer to the colleges and hospitals in the city. And, as I had an address from Assessor RIBE to a M. BERTH, his quondam landlord, I went in search of this person immediately, took a room at his house, and

ordered my trunks to be carried thither that same afternoon.

I viewed the two hospitals, La Charité, and the Hotel Dieu; the former is neat; and the latter, which is very large, I afterwards visited daily, and hence had always an opportunity of learning something, either from the many surgical operations that are performed here, or else by attending the sick.

I next had the good fortune to become acquainted with two of my countrymen, who pursued the same studies with myself; this proved to be of considerable advantage to me, who being a stranger, could not otherwise so soon have been informed of the many opportunities this place affords for the improvement in the medical science. In the afternoon, among several churches we visited that of Notre Dame, from which the model of the Cathedral of Upsal was taken.—Most of these churches are built with cross ailes, and they are in general beautifully decorated. Three young girls stood before the altar in the church of the Hotel Dieu, and sang delightfully: this circumstance I have frequently observed since at other places.

*December the 2d.* The procession was performed at the Hotel Dieu, that is usually made there on the first Sunday of every month. The friars and nuns, who nurse the sick, were on this

this occasion clad in white, with black cloaks, and carried long candles in their hands.

My landlord reported my arrival, and gave in my address to the lieutenant of the police.

*December the 9th*, I attended divine service at the Swedish hotel. It was performed in the German language.

*December the 14th*, I viewed the convent of St. Genevieve, its library, cabinet of natural history, and fine gardens. The library is in the uppermost story, in the form of a cross, having book-cases all round the sides, and under the windows: the doors of the book-cases are of wire-work, and secured with locks. The books are all numbered. Between each book-case is placed the picture of some monarch or philosopher. The library is open on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays, from two till five in the afternoon, and books may be borrowed from it. The cabinet of antiquities, and that of natural history, are contiguous to the library, and contain several amphibious animals and fishes stuffed, mummies, minerals, shells, and corals, but especially a great number of antiquities, all locked up within wire-work. The garden is neat, and is prettily ornamented with box cut in different forms.

On *December the 24th*, or Christmas eve, I saw the celebration and pompous ceremonies of the

Catholic service in all the churches: this being performed in the night, the churches were well illuminated with a number of chandeliers.

That I might not suffer any time to pass away unemployed, besides visiting the hospital once, and sometimes twice a day, I engaged myself in anatomical dissections with M. Du MAS, surgeon to the Hotel Dieu. And while I attended the public lectures at the chirurgial college (*St. Côme*), the medical college, or *ecole de médecine*; the botanic garden, or *jardin royal*; and the lectures in natural philosophy at the *college naval*, I did not neglect to attend private lectures upon anatomy, surgery, and midwifery. The apparatus and method of teaching all these sciences, are as various as excellent: neither are they taught all at the same time, but successively, so that the professors, who give their lectures at different hours, may have numerous audiences, and the students not be perplexed with too many subjects at a time.

In the winter, anatomy is first read; then the chirurgial operations; afterwards chemistry and midwifery; towards summer, botany, pathology, and other branches of the sciences. Theory is always accompanied and illustrated by practice. And besides the public lectures, most of the professors and assistants deliver private ones, and that sometimes even gratis.

At most of the professors public lectures, their assistants, or *prevôts*, are present; and when the professor has lectures upon any particular subject, the assistant immediately demonstrates it practically.

Though medicine and surgery are so amply discussed in public lectures, as would seem to render private instructions unnecessary, yet private lectures are very numerous; of which the chief use appears to be not so much the improvement of the students in theory, as to afford an opportunity of assisting with their own hands in the operations relative to surgery and midwifery. I therefore immediately engaged myself with Messrs. Du BUT and Du MAS, to go through a course of chirurgical operations, and afterwards to perform them myself every day under their tuition; and with M. SALAYRES, to improve myself in midwifery, and the various modes to be pursued in difficult labours.

From the account given above, the reader may collect, that at Paris there is the most considerable medical college in Europe; and that no other place affords so many opportunities for improvement in this science. The medical students at Paris exceed 3000, a number unequalled at any other university.



The lecture rooms are, for the most part, built in a circular form, with benches gradually rising one above the other, and in the center and lowest part a table, at which the professor is seated, much in the same manner as at the anatomical theatre at Upsal. At the door there is always a guard to prevent noise and confusion, and to give more dignity and eclat to the act. No person is suffered to go in with a sword, or *couteau de chasse*, which would be inconvenient in such numerous audiences, not to mention more serious consequences. The gate of the hall is opened when the clock strikes; and in order to obtain a seat in some of the lower and more convenient forms, the pupils are frequently obliged to stand waiting at the entrance an hour before hand. Both when the professor enters, and when he finishes his lectures, a plaudit is often given by clapping of hands.

At the *ecole de medicine*, disputations are held every Tuesday and Thursday, when theses of half a sheet long are argued. The hall is at this time parted off. Without, a person sits at a table, dressed in black, and wearing a band, and distributes the theses. Within, the officiating professors are seated on benches lined with cloth, and in chairs. The respondent is seated by the side of the president, and like him clad in white linen.

linen robes. The opponents are dressed in black gowns and blue bands.

At *l'école de chirurgie* also disputations are held. The chairs are covered with laced velvet. Benches are placed all round, and chairs in the middle. All these formalities contribute to give dignity and solemnity to the act. A similar end is promoted by the professors delivering their lectures in their official robes, which are black, and ornamented with a white band. The French pronounce the latin so much like their own language, that at first it is difficult to understand them.

Incitements to diligence seem to be unnecessary, in a place where there are so many good opportunities for improvements in the arts and sciences; but yet they have not been forgotten. For this purpose, public examinations are held, where the students who most distinguish themselves receive gold and silver medals, and other rewards. On the 15th of February, I was present at a competition of this kind at St. Côme, where the pupils interrogated and responded to each other alternately. And in the month of March I attended an examination at the same place, when six professors put the questions. Here any Frenchman that pleased, except Parisians, might stand as a candidate. Those who are admitted to the *ecole pratique*, or who obtain the prizes

prizes at these examinations, enjoy afterwards the privilege of dissecting and performing the surgical operations on dead bodies gratis.

The *Hôtel Dieu* is the largest hospital in Paris, and perhaps in the whole world. The fund for its support is said to amount to six millions of livres, the greater part of which was formerly raised by voluntary contributions. The patients here are attended gratis, and their number is not limited. They are commonly carried hither on long litters, and their names entered at the admission-room. The entrance is through the church itself, to which an apartment is contiguous, having a row of beds, which, however, are not always occupied. At the bottom of this there are doors to other larger wards, which contain several rows of beds. A great number of the patients, especially the children, lie four in a bed. In the upper story the surgical patients are lodged; and the highest story of all is occupied by lying-in women, and by those who are in the last stage of pregnancy. The male patients are attended by friars, and the females by nuns. Their food is set on a table, and served out to them in basons. A close-stool covered over with cloth stands by each bed. At night the wards are lighted up with large lamps. When a patient dies, he is carried to the dead-room (*salle des morts*). Those who die before  
and

and after midnight are laid separately. Between ten and twenty persons die in general in the course of every twenty-four hours, and are sewed up in coarse unbleached linen. The number of patients generally amounts to about 3000, of whom 2000 are under the care of the physicians, and 1000 under the surgeons. The number of them on the 1st of March, was 3950; and the week following they amounted to 3978.

The hospital of *la Charité* is much smaller, but neater and more elegant than the Hotel Dieu. It contains about 200 beds, and has a dispensary of its own. Only a certain number of patients is received here, to whom M. Du Scu, the director, gives tickets of admission.

The hospital of the *Invalids*, for the maintenance of old and disabled soldiers, has one spacious ward for patients, and is situated near town. The chapel belonging to it is large, and has an elevated choir, which is elegantly inlaid with different sorts of marble; part of its floor is depressed, and here no one is permitted to enter but the King, on which account it is constantly guarded by sentinels, as are also the doors of the chapel; many of these sentinels are old crippled soldiers. Adjoining to this hospital is the *ecole militaire*.

The *Bicêtre*, or hospital for those that are afflicted with the venereal disease, is at a small distance

distance from town; and those who are received into it, must previously procure tickets of admission.

The botanic garden (*jardin royal*), which is under the able direction of M. THOUIN, is extensive, and divided into two long partitions, inclosed within hedges, and the beds or subdivisions are bordered with box. Towards the street stands the cabinet of natural history, which contains several apartments; in the first of these, different sorts of woods, barks, seeds, roots, and fruits, are kept in bottles, with the names affixed to them in French, the bottles being inclosed in cases with glass doors.

In the second room is a fine collection of *fossils* in cases, placed on inclined planes: here are also various petrefactions, and specimens of polished marble. The third chamber contains birds in glass-cases of three different sizes; their eggs and nests are placed on the lowest shelves: here likewise occur some corals and shells, with insects in square glass-cases. To the ceiling of the fourth apartment amphibious animals were suspended: here I saw a stuffed zebra, the skin of which had been brought from the Cape by M. DE LA CAILLE; also amphibious animals, fishes, insects, &c. preserved in spirits of wine. The room destined for anatomical preparations, was not yet quite finished. This collection is exhibited

exhibited to the public from two till five, on Tuesdays and Thursdays. In every room there is a sentinel, who gives admission to people of a genteel appearance.

The lowest part of the garden forms a kind of wilderness, consisting of trees of various sorts. On the left hand are orangeries and hot-houses. Before these is a terrace on which pots are set out in the summer, and several small partitions for plants, inclosed with yew trees (*taxus*). Above these, on a rising ground, are other hot-houses, and the gardener's dwelling-house, with a room for drying seeds. Behind the hot-houses and the orangery, on the same elevation, are walks and a grove, together with a hill, so high, that the whole city of Paris may be seen from it. This garden is open to the public, both for botanical purposes and for recreation. The hedges are formed of yew (*taxus baccata*), elm (*ulmus campestris*), holly (*ilex aquifolium*), box (*buxus*), lime trees (*tilia Europæa*), dogwood (*cornus mascula*), honeysuckles (*lonicera caprifolium*), the double blossomed cherry-tree (*prunus cerasus*), the judas tree (*cercis siliquastrum*), *lycium barbarum*, *coronilla securidaca*, the lesser maple (*acer campestre*), lilac (*syringa vulgaris*), &c. The trees planted in the garden were chiefly the cut-leaved Montpellier, and common maple (*acer plantancides*, *monspeffulanum*, and *campestre*),

*campestre*), the common and kermes oaks (*quercus ilex*, and *coccifera*), the common cypress (*cupressus sempervirens*), the Bermudian cedar (*juniperus Bermudiana*); yew, elm, lime, and horse-chestnut trees, the *cercis*, the *phillyrea*, both *latifolia* and *media*; the *pyrus cydonia*, or quince tree; and both sorts of *platanus*, or plane tree.

The water of the Seine, that runs through the city, is unwholesome, especially to strangers newly arrived. From the chalk it holds in solution, it has a milky colour, and is apt to occasion diarrhœas.

Large carts go about the streets in the morning to take away the soil, which the inhabitants have previously swept up close to the walls.

The outsides of the houses have for the most part a gloomy appearance, from the windows being placed near the inside of the walls. Before the windows of the second and sometimes the third story, there is often a little balcony with an iron railing, and the window opens inwards. Many of the floors are laid with bricks or stone, and consequently cold—to prevent their bad effects, the inhabitants wear at home large slippers lined with fur.

The beds, which are well furnished with clothes, are very high and large. The bolsters are

are cylindrical, and rather inconvenient to persons unaccustomed to them.

No streets are better lighted than those of Paris. The large lanterns suspended on cords over the middle of the street, project no shadow. Fruits and other necessaries are cried in the streets, as well as water, which is brought by men from the river for domestic uses.

The shoe-blacks make a tender of their services to the foot passengers, in every square, and almost in every street, which are extremely dirty all the year round, from the vast number of carriages passing and repassing, and from the kennels being in the middle of the streets. In Sweden such gentry would have no employment for three quarters of the year. In rainy weather the streets are scarcely passable for umbrellas, which are indispensibly necessary in a city where all the world follows the Japanese fashion of going bare headed.

Very small muffs were worn here by both sexes, so early as in the month of December. In the middle of January, when the cold is generally intense, some people carried pitchers with charcoal in them, to keep their hands warm. During a thaw, water rushes with such impetuosity down the streets that go sloping towards the river, as to render them impassable.



Auctions are often held in the open streets. The auctioneer did not make use of a hammer; but after two or three articles had been put up, he said *adieu*, and the money was paid down directly.

The tables in France are not always laid with knives and forks, which obliges the guests generally to carry clasp-knives about them.

The police is admirable; patrols are going both night and day, one close upon the heels of the other, to secure the peace of this large and populous city. In almost every street there is a commissary, who has a right to determine trifling disputes.

It sometimes happens, that people, either by accident or otherwise, die in the streets. And as it is impossible that all such persons should be known, they are carried to a particular house, and exposed to public view in a room with an iron grate before it, in order that the friends of the persons missing may know where to look for them, before they are buried, which is done within a certain time after.

The commerce of good offices is here carried to such a height, that a person who is obliged to be out in the night, will frequently find men with lanterns in the street, who, for a trifle, will light him home.

*Le Palais des Marchands* is a large elegant building, where all sorts of trinkets, &c. are sold. . On new year's eve it is most splendidly illuminated, and all their fineries are displayed.

*Luxembourg* is a fine palace, having a spacious court and garden, which, as well as the *Tuileries*, is open for every person to walk in, who has not a sword on. The gallery of pictures and drawings is open every Wednesday and Saturday, from ten till one o'clock. The history of MARY OF MEDICIS is placed on one side; and in the apartments on the other side, a great variety of other paintings.

Many of the convents are large, having their court-yards, and often beautiful gardens, open to the public.

*Vauxhall*, situated beyond the *Champs Elizées*, was founded and is kept in elegant order by some private gentlemen. On certain days there is a band of music, and every one that chuses it is at liberty to dance. Towards evening there is a display of fire-works. Admission is obtained by means of a ticket, which costs thirty sols.

Immediately after Christmas, the image of Christ, and that of the Virgin Mary with the holy infant, were placed all over the streets and houses, in little niches or cases, environed with crowns and tapers.

In Lent, when meat is prohibited, all the butchers-shops in the city are shut up. Provisions are dearer at this time than at any other, there being a great dearth of eggs and milk; and butchers' meat being only to be had at the slaughter-house belonging to the Hotel Dieu, to the very great emolument of this place. In the day time, during the carnival, the people amuse themselves in a thousand different ways. A bullock with gilt horns and otherwise decorated, is led round all the streets of the town, with a boy on his back. Many went masked along, on horseback, in coaches, or in chaises, in such fantastic dresses, and vast numbers, that a stranger might be easily induced to believe, one-half of the inhabitants had lost their senses.

Besides the diversions so much abounding at Paris, which entice such numbers of travellers to this splendid city, all the Swedes now residing here, and myself among the rest, had the honour of being presented to the then Prince Royal, the present KING of Sweden, and his brother, Prince FREDERICK ADOLPHUS.

But this joy was much damped by the news brought on the 1st of March, of his Swedish Majesty, ADOLPHUS FREDERICK's death, and of the subsequent illness of his Royal Highness Prince FREDERICK ADOLPHUS.

On the 26th of March, his Swedish Majesty departed from Paris for Sweden, in good health.

On the 29th, I took a walk to the *Bois de-Bologne*, a wood consisting chiefly of oaks, where the people assemble and dance.

At *Calvaire*, a high hill on the banks of the Seine, on the ascent of the hill the Passion of Christ is represented in seven acts, in seven different rooms, disposed two by two, in regular order. On the summit of the hill are placed three crosses and the holy sepulchre, with a church. It now being Easter, the cross was presented to the populace to be kissed, who pressed forwards in crouds to the altar, and to the priests, who presented it to them. In the mean time, two friars receive upon plates their offerings on the occasion.

On the 30th, I was invited by two of my friends, Messrs. VEBER and VOLSTEINO, to accompany them to the *Ecole Royale Veterinaire*, near *Charanton*. The number of pupils here amounted to near 100, who lived sometimes two or three together, in chambers on the upper story. On the lower story is, on one side, the anatomical theatre, which is very large; and on the other side a long room, with three rows of seats in it, for the public examinations. On this day was held one of these examinations (*concours*), of which there are four or five in a year.

The president and several of the deputies were seated at a long table, and on another smaller one were placed the anatomical preparations.—The president and assessors had paper before them to write their notes upon. The present subject was the mythology of a horse, which the students demonstrated two at a time, one putting questions and the other resolving them.—The two ablest competitors drew lots for the prize on this occasion.

During the examination their names were always mentioned. In the upper story was the museum, where excellent preparations of various animals were preserved within glass-cases. The director of this fine school lived in a large house adjacent to it. On one side of the yard was a smithy for the instruction of the students, which had two fire-places or chimnies, and two forges in each fire-place.

The Infirmary for diseased animals was divided into several apartments, which were placed in two long rows.

Here was also a small botanical garden, laid out for the cultivation of medicinal plants for the cattle, and furnished with a little hot-house.

The apothecary's shop too was very handsome. Those who boarded here paid twenty livres per month.

Among

Among the various sorts of sheep that I saw here, was a Turkish one, which, having had its left thigh amputated, walked with a wooden leg.

*April the 1st.* Stained eggs ornamented with figures scratched on them, were sold in the streets during the Easter holidays; and Lent being at an end, pigeons were brought in to the town, and butchers' meat was hung up for sale in the shambles.

On the 25th of April, M. LA FAYE presented to the academy of surgery a woman thirty-six years old, who, in the seventh year of her age, had the small pox, in consequence of which, by means of abscesses or gangrene, she had lost her tongue piece-meal. For two years after this she could not speak; but had since accustomed herself to it by degrees. There were now no traces of the tongue remaining, but only the glands or almonds of the throat projected a little: yet she spoke very plainly, and in singing likewise articulated her words distinctly. This she performed by shutting her teeth close together, and by applying the under lip against the upper.

*May the 2d.* To-day the French guards, who wear a blue uniform with white lace, and the Swiss guards, whose uniform is red, after having marched with a large band of music to

the church of *Notre Dame*, received their benediction for this year. On this occasion I went up into the steeple, which affords a most delightful prospect.

On the 14<sup>th</sup> of *May*, were celebrated the nuptials of the Comte de PROVENCE with the Princess of SARDINIA. All Paris was illuminated with candles and lamps, which were placed on the outside before the windows; and victuals and wine were distributed in the squares.

On the 25<sup>th</sup>, I visited the apothecary's garden, which, though small, contains several curious plants, and has at the bottom a grove for walking in. Free admittance to this garden may be obtained for twelve livres, and about six more in gratuities to the attendants, when the gardener presents the subscriber with a catalogue, by which the plants may be found that are not yet numbered.

On the 30<sup>th</sup>, the feast of the Sacrament, or *Fête Dieu*, was celebrated. The friars of all the churches paraded about their respective parishes, with *le bon Dieu* inclosed in a glass-box with a sun round it, and placed under a canopy, with music, drums, censers, and baskets of flowers. All the houses, as high as to the top of the first floors, were hung with tapestry of all sorts, which gave the streets so different an appearance, that a stranger could not without difficulty

difficulty find his way home again. In the streets flowers were scattered, and in different parts of them altars erected, upon which the priests mounted, in order to give their benediction to the street and to the houses. During the procession, money was collected for the purpose of releasing prisoners from the *petit chatelet*. On this occasion a great many ridiculous situations and absurdities are exhibited. Parents were seen to throw their children on the ground, that the procession might pass over them, yet without hurting them.

In the afternoon I saw the *gobelins*, or the magnificent tapestry which is manufactured here, and is always publicly exhibited on this day.—All the walls of the court yard were hung with them on the insides, as well as the apartments. They represented several histories from the Bible, as also from OVID and other poets. The figures were full of animation.

On the 12th of June, I paid a visit to the famous enameller, M. Roux, who makes eyes in enamel, representing all the disorders of that organ, as likewise artificial eyes, to such perfection, that they cannot be distinguished from the natural. The different colours of the eyes he imitates with pieces of enamel of various colours, which he procures from Venice, and afterwards mixes them up with different metals.



His apparatus, which, however, he does not show to every body, is as follows : On the table is fixed a brass plate, on which stands a lamp with a large wick. Under the table is a pair of bellows, which he works himself with his foot, and the mouth of which passes upwards through the table : here a glass-tube is fixed to it, which is bent towards the flame of the lamp, and by means of which he brings the enamel into fusion. Having fixed his materials to the end of a tobacco-pipe, he first begins the globe of the eye, which is made wider and wider in circles, and then brought into a smaller compass, till only an aperture is left for the cornea, which is formed in that place by the addition of blue enamel. The end of the pipe is then heated, and the cornea is first of all blown, and afterwards the rest of the eye-ball. With a stick of blue and white twisted enamel, several dots are then made within the outward rim of the cornea ; within this row is made a row of white dots, and within these another row of blue and white dots, all of which are melted together, and diffused over it by means of heat. After this some black enamel is laid on, to form the pupil, and on the outside of all a larger knob of fine and clear crystal glass, for the purpose of making the cornea transparent. All this is then wrought up by the flame into the natural form

of

of the eye, by blowing it outwards from within. Lastly, in order to get the pipe loose, the stick of crystal is very slightly fastened to one side of the cornea, and the pipe is taken away, and at the same time the globe of the eye has its proper shape given to it behind.

The proper size and the circular form is given to the cornea and to the globe of the eye itself, during the blowing, by means of a pair of compasses. From the bulb so much is taken off behind, that the whole fits exactly, and the edges are made smooth and even in the flame. Previous to the pipe's being taken away, the globe is blown out at the two sides, in order to form the two angles of the eye. All this being done, a crystal-glass is fixed very slightly to the edge of the eye, and the stick that was before fixed to the cornea, is taken off; the mark made by it is closed up by blowing on the part, and the eye put into a box filled with live coals and embers, in order to cool by degrees. This artist works with spectacles in a darkened room. Before the flame of the lamp he has a plate, the convex side of which is turned towards the flame, the plate itself being fixed on a stand.

Every month he distributes eyes gratis to such poor people as stand in need of them. People in less affluent circumstances are supplied with them at a cheaper rate than the rich, by whom  
he

he is well paid, the price differing from one to twenty-five Louis d'ors. The surgeons may have them of him for six livres a piece. Any person who has had the misfortune to lose one of his eyes, and wishes to repair his loss with one of enamel, may go to the artist, who will take a pattern for it from his remaining eye. A draught of the eye is required, or else a very accurate description may be sent him by the post, and he will make an eye according to the orders. In all such cases he takes the precaution of putting by in a paper, samples of those sorts of enamel which he has used, to make use of, if necessary, another time. According to the different colour of the *iris*, the colours of the enamel must be chosen; in like manner with respect to *radii*, points, *shades*, and vessels. The eyes vary in size, according to the difference of age; and sometimes he makes them with angles or little hooks. One of these eyes may be worn three months, and even half a year, when, on account of its being injured by the friction, it must be changed. For an eye that represents some disorder, he charges a Louis d'or, or at least twelve livres. The number of eyes of this kind amount to fifty and odd.

On the 2d of July, towards evening, the effigy of a man was carried about some of the streets in the city, and afterwards beheaded and burnt.

This

This was said to be done in remembrance of a man, who, many years ago, when in a state of intoxication, had assaulted, and run his sword through an image of the Virgin Mary, that he met with in his way just before a convent; for which he suffered the punishment which is still repeated in effigy, in commemoration of such a detestable action.

M. GEOFFROY, whom among others I visited, received me with the greatest politeness, and showed me his collection of insects. He had set them up all along the walls of a room in small glass-cases.

In one of the boats that run down the Seine, I took a passage to *Versailles*, and from thence to *Trianon*, for the purpose of seeing the royal botanic garden in this place, which is the most elegant of any that I have seen; and of examining at the same time the collection of plants of Messrs. RICHARDS, made by the younger of these gentlemen, in his voyage to *Majorca* and *Minorca*.

On the 18th of July, I went from Paris to *Rouen*, in order to take my passage in some vessel from thence to *Amsterdam*, and from thence to the East-Indies, in consequence of an offer made me during my stay at Paris, by Professor BURMANN, which I accepted with the greatest pleasure.

In my passage to Rouen, which I made partly in boats down the Seine, and partly by land, I went to see the vast and remarkable engine at *Marly*, which carries water up to Versailles for the space of several leagues, and over considerable eminences.

Having travelled by day and night, I arrived at *Rouen* on the 19<sup>th</sup>.

The large bridge constructed here on the Seine, which is of a considerable breadth, is formed of boats, and may be taken to pieces.

The mountain near Rouen appeared to have regular beds or strata of chalk and flint, each bed being of the breadth of about a hand, or somewhat more. These strata reached only as far as to the middle of the mountain, where they were succeeded by chalk. The flint is for the most part black, sometimes white, grey, yellow, or bluish, and at the same time exhibited many cavities and elevations. Though the chalk is thus interspersed with flints, yet stones are cut out of it for building. Near Paris the chalk appeared to be more mixed with petrefactions. The mountains near *Bouille* contained also flints, and near *Quillebauf* it consisted of chalk rubble, with small pieces of flints.

On the 9<sup>th</sup> of August, I embarked in a Dutch vessel. We fell gently down the river, frequently casting anchor, and sometimes following  
the

the tide at ebb. The ebb, the nearer one approaches to the sea, becomes longer and longer, inasmuch, that a great part of the land was left dry, and the ships lay aground, and stuck in the soft clay.

On all holidays the inhabitants of the villages were seen dancing and amusing themselves out in the fields. The girls had a particular kind of dress, consisting of bare stays with bows of ribbands behind, and on the sides of the petticoats; gold and silver lace about the head, with a piece of linen hanging down on each side of it.

The mountains, besides chalk and flint, seemed to consist more or less of light or dark layers of chalk, of the thickness of an inch, formed by the tide. This is very conspicuous in the elevations which are yet under water, and become visible only at the ebb; the colour of these strata is owing to the clay being dark beneath them; but the sediment, which the water deposits on its surface, is lighter, or of a yellowish grey. This affords an evident example of the manner in which the beds of mountains are formed, viz. during the ebb, which comes on slowly, the water deposits a sediment, by which means small elevations are formed like promontories, resembling steps placed one above another; before the time of flood, which comes

on rapidly, the sediment of each tide is become in some measure hard. The hills from Paris towards the sea, were for the most part of the same height as the *castle-hill* near Upsal: and bays were seen running into them, which sometimes shelved off gradually, and at other times were quite steep. Their steepness frequently proceeds from pieces falling down; this was clearly evident at low water from the small banks that are now forming for future generations.—Below the mountains, in some places, lay plots of level ground of different sizes, which the water had formerly accumulated by degrees, but had now left entirely; some of these were still bare, while others, though in a soft state, were already over-grown with grass and trees, and thus already formed into islands. Nearer towards *Havre de Grace*, the tide has formed near these islands, bays which resemble small harbours, and are in every respect similar to those that are seen on a larger scale nearer the higher mountains. All this clearly shows the formation of the mountains, as well as the decrease of the water. More towards the sea the flints appeared to be both in smaller quantity, and less mature, than higher up in the country; in the vicinity of the sea they were pale, were covered with a thicker grey coat, and seemed to be less hard. The flints are, no doubt, coagulated in  
and

and by the chalk, however dissimilar these two substances are separately considered. In bread, which, from impeded fermentation and cold, turns stony, one would scarcely suppose the hard part to be of the same materials with the rest, although it has only undergone the process of baking.

In going down the river a pilot constantly attended on board the vessel, to take care of the anchorage while in low water. On this occasion the vessel is frequently laid close to the shore, and in a small creek, where it lies on one side in the soft mud. Our pilot was imprudent enough on such an occasion to lay our vessel directly across one of these creeks, so that at low water it rested on its fore and aft ends; and as it had no support in the middle, it broke in two, and was afterwards obliged to be taken to Havre de Grace to be repaired. This shipwreck on dry land put me under the necessity of sending my baggage on board another vessel, in which I continued my journey to Amsterdam.

*Honfleur* is a little town at the mouth of the river, that has a fine harbour, at which we arrived on the 22d of August. The tide left a great deal of the bottom dry. Here shrimps (*cancer squilla*), were caught in a net fixed between two sticks, which the fisherman pushed before him.

From



From the wind the sailors get weak and red eyes; from the rolling of the ship, bandy-legs, and prominent posteriors; and from labour and handling of the rigging, hard and callous hands.

On the 30th of August, I arrived at *Amsterdam*, and was received with a hearty welcome by my patrons, the Professors BURMANNS.

In September the usual annual fair was held, which lasts three weeks, when booths are fixed in all the squares, and in many other places.

Whilst I was preparing for my long-intended voyage, I visited almost daily the phyfic-garden in the morning, and spent the evenings at Professor BURMANN'S house, among his collections and in his library. In the phyfic-garden I examined, at his request, all the plants in the parterres, to see whether the names affixed to them were proper. The plants were arranged according to the system of VAN ROYEN, and close by each plant was placed a painted stick, with a number on it.

I also went to see the academy of painting, the anatomical theatre and its preparations, the exotic animals at *Blue-John's*, and other curiosities; and early every morning I took care to visit the hospitals. *Blue-John's* (*Blaauwe Jean*) is a private house, where wine is retailed, and where various sorts of curious animals, birds, as well as beasts, sometimes very rare ones, from both

both the Indies and Africa, are kept in cages and exhibited. These beasts attract a great number of people to the house, and thus promote the sale of the landlord's wine; for the spectators are always obliged to buy one or more bottles of wine at a dear rate, though they are allowed to see the beasts gratis.

I had an opportunity of making acquaintance with a M. KLEINHOFF, who had been three years in the West Indies, and one and twenty at Batavia. At this time he lived at the distance of two day's journey from Amsterdam, upon his revenues; and gave me information in several particulars relative to the Indies.

I also became acquainted with a M. SCHELLING, who had been a long time in America, and was shortly to return thither in the quality of supervisor of the hospitals. Among other things he told me that the disease called *jassi*, or the *yaws*, to which the Americans were subject, was unknown in Europe, and was painful, chronic, and eruptive, causing a sensation in the skin like that which arises from the pricking of needles; it is cured by means of mercury. The leprosy he asserted to be very common in America: it makes its first appearance in the form of a small spot, which afterwards, by degrees, spreads all over the skin.— This spot is devoid of all feeling, even if burnt

with a red hot needle; and in process of time, the fingers and limbs fall off while the patient is at work, without his perceiving it. With good diet the disease may be concealed for a long time, and when the eruption becomes universal, it generally goes away. Sudorifics are of service, but mercury hurtful.

On the 4th of November, a professor of laws was introduced into the *Athenæum*, or academy, here; who made an oration *de jurisprudentia civili circa promovendam mercaturam*. All the professors were dressed in black, and wore cloaks, bands, and large wigs with flowing curls, of which two hung in front, and one on each shoulder.

Since the preceding year, when I stayed a few weeks at Amsterdam, and passed many agreeable hours in Professor BURMANN's library and cabinet of natural history, that gentleman had, during my stay at Paris, passed a great many encomiums on my knowledge in natural history, in the presence of some gentlemen at Amsterdam; and at the same time represented to them, how serviceable I should be to them, as lovers of curious exotic plants, if I could but have the opportunity of going, at their expence, to some of the northern parts of Asia, especially *Japan*, from whence we had no plants in Europe, although it was probable, that they would

would bear the climate as well as others lately brought hither in great numbers from North America.

These gentlemen, who spared no expence for their fruit and pleasure-gardens, listened with pleasure to this proposal, and resolved to furnish me with the means and recommendations necessary for a voyage to Japan. And as no nation, except the Dutch, is suffered to come into Japan, it was necessary for me both to understand Dutch and to speak it; to obtain this, I requested to be permitted previously to pass a couple of years at the Cape of Good Hope, and to be taken into the service of the East India Company.

The Dutch East India Company fit out their numerous ships at three different seasons. The largest fleet is ready in September, and is called the *Kermes fleet*; the second, which is less numerous, is ready before Christmas, and is called the *Christmas fleet*; the third, called the *Easter fleet*, sails about the time of that festival, and is the least.

As the first fleet lay ready in the *Texel*, only waiting for a fair wind, and the second fleet also was provided with all its officers, it was resolved, that I should be engaged in the capacity of surgeon-extraordinary in one of the ships then bound for the *Cape of Good Hope*, by

which means I should be more at my leisure on the voyage, without being under an obligation to do duty any farther than I myself should please. By this I afterwards gained the great and inestimable advantage, that upon my arrival at the Cape I could stay three whole years, without being obliged to attend the ship to the different places whither it was sent.

I was consequently received on board the *Schoonzigt*, and had the pleasure to see it commanded by a Swedish captain, M. RONDECRANTZ, from *Smaland*, who was born near *Calmar*.

The little time I still had to remain, I spent in informing myself, as much as possible, of the state of this powerful East India Company, as well as of the œconomy observed on board their ships, and also of the regulations of their factories in the East Indies.

On the 6th of December, the crew that was to go on board the fleet, passed muster, and took the usual oaths in the East-India-House. After this their baggage was brought on board. All their chests, which they buy new, have the mark of the Company burnt on them in the India-House, and are then brought on board in the Company's own craft. A soldier is allowed to have a little box about two feet square, to contain his scanty store. A sailor, who wants a greater

greater change of clothes, is allowed one as large again; but the officers may bring one or more large chests (besides baskets, bottle-cases, and casks of beer) as well for stowing merchandize in, as for provisions; though for the most part, besides these, they find means of conveying separate chests of clothes and provisions on board. In each ship there are above a hundred sailors, and from two to three hundred foldiers. A day or two previous to the crew's going on board, a drum is beat throughout all the streets, for the purpose of informing them of the time when they are to join the boats, in order to be transported on board the ships. On these occasions, if an officer lives in that street, they do him the honour of drumming violently, and for a long time before his door—an honour that always stands him in a few shillings, and draws a great concourse of people of all denominations about his house.

On the 10th of December, I had the honour of going with M. BEAUMONT, the director, in the Company's yacht to the Texel, where the ships, bound to different places in the East-Indies, lay ready, waiting only for the muster and a fair wind. I was amply provided with letters of recommendation to the Governor at the Cape, M. RYK TULBAGH, from M. RHEEDE VAN OUDSHORN, who, about Easter, was to go

to the Cape in quality of Vice-Governor; and from the burgomaster TEMMINK, as also from Professor BURMANN and his mother-in-law, to M. BERG, counsellor of police; and to M. NETHLING, secretary of the court of justice.

We did not reach the *Texel* before the next day.

On the 14<sup>th</sup>, I had the pleasure of being present at the muster in the *Nieuwe Roep* Indiaman. As soon as the officers had been called over, they received their instructions, their cabins were given them, and the ship's council was appointed. The sailors and soldiers were then mustered, and their abilities enquired into afresh, although they had been examined previous to their being received at Amsterdam. If they now were found to be not so well qualified as they ought to be, a circumstance which was frequently decided by their looks alone, and the testimony of a surly skipper, their monthly pay, contrary to prior agreement, and to all justice and equity, was diminished to the value of a gilder or more. As soon as the director had taken his leave, the whole crew went aloft into the rigging, and waving their hats and caps, gave three cheers. This was acknowledged by the same number of cheers from the yacht; the ship then fired her guns, and was answered by the yacht.

In the evening of this day, an unlucky accident happened on board the ship in which I was to sail. A soldier had his left foot torn off by the bite of a rope, near the capstan, in such a manner, that the tibia was separated at the joint, the fibula obliquely fractured, and the whole held together by the tendo achillis only. This disagreeable occurrence deprived me of the pleasure of spending my time on board the yacht, till all the ships had passed muster, with the Director BEAUMONT, who was a very amiable as well as sensible man, and was the occasion that I was obliged to go on board the Schoonzigt the next morning. The patient was then dressed, without our being able to find and tie up the artery, for which reason it was necessary to keep on the tourniquet; and, whilst preparations were making for the amputation of the leg, orders came for the patient to be carried to the hospital at Amsterdam.

We staid a fortnight longer for a fair wind, during which time I had an opportunity of making myself acquainted with the economical regulations observed on board, both with respect to the healthy and sick part of the crew. Each man singles out for himself a companion, in whom, during the voyage, he can place most confidence. The messes are so regulated, that seven men dine at a table, which has a



caterer to keep order at it. To the sailors as well as soldiers are distributed wooden-bowls, as being less subject to accidents on board of ship, than earthen vessels.

As the crew had been but a week on board, I expected, on my arrival, to find no patients; but found, to my great surprize, that several men were already ill; I heard also, that the number of sick and dead on board the ships which had been lying in the Texel since September last, was so considerable, that when we sailed, several ships, such as the *Groendal*, the *Huyster Mey*, the *Kroenbourg*, and the *Hoenkoop*, were obliged, for want of hands, to wait for a fresh supply, notwithstanding they had been sent out at first with more than three hundred men.

The causes of this epidemical disease, which I minutely investigated, I found to be multifarious. The air was at this time very heavy and moist, and the fog in general so thick, that nobody ventured to pass from one ship to another without taking a compass with him, in order to find his way back, as no light from any lamps or lanterns that were hung out could pierce through the fog. Till the ships get under sail, little or no order is observed, either in the oeconomy of the ship, or among the crew itself. But what very much, if not solely, conduces to the increase of maladies, is undoubtedly the

the great number of diseased soldiers sent on board by the kidnappers (*zeelverkoopers*) with bodies partly emaciated, and partly replete with scurvy and corrupted fluids. These men, unaccustomed to the manner of living on board of ship, and to the damp cold sea-air, soon contract putrid fevers, and infect the rest of the crew. This happens the sooner, if they are also ill provided with clothes or dejected in mind.

And as these kidnappers, the most detestable members of society, frequently effect the ruin of unwary strangers, by decoying them into their houses, and then selling them to be transported to the East-Indies, I have thought it my duty to make some mention of them in this place, as a caution to all such as may have occasion to go to Holland. These man-stealers are citizens, who under the denomination of victuallers, have the privilege to board and lodge strangers for money, and under this cloke perpetrate the most inhuman crimes, that do not always come to the knowledge of their superiors, nor can be punished by the hands of justice. They not only keep servants to pick up strangers in the streets, but also bribe the carriers (*kruyers*) who carry the baggage of travellers from the ships to the inns, to bring strangers to lodge with them; who, as soon as they arrive,

are

are generally shut up in a room, together with a number of others, to the amount of a hundred and more, where they are kept upon scanty and wretched food, entered as soldiers on the Company's books, and at length, when the ships are ready to sail, carried on board. The honest dealer, on the other hand, receives two months of their pay, and what is called a *bill of transport*, for 100, 150, or 200 gilders. In the two, three, or four months, during which they are shut up at the kidnapper's, they contract the scurvy, a putrid diathesis, and melancholy, (which break out soon after they come on board); and by their pale countenances, livid lips, and swelled and ulcerated legs, are easily distinguished from the others who are healthy and sound. A transferable bill for a certain sum of money is sometimes given by the East-India Company to persons enlisted in their service, as an advance of their pay, to enable them to fit themselves out; but this bill is not discounted by the Company, unless the person to whom it was given, serves to the full amount of the sum thus advanced. Thus if the person enlisted dies before he has served to the full amount of the bill, the deficiency is not paid. For this reason such a bill is always negotiated at a great loss, proportionate to the strength of constitution or health of the assignee, and to the time that

that he appears likely to live. In fact, it is seldom negotiated at more than half its nominal value. Many innocent people, often of decent family and in easy circumstances, are trepanned by these man-stealers, and must go as soldiers to the East or West-Indies, where they are obliged by the articles of their agreement to serve at least five years. Yet all do not fall into their hands in this unfortunate manner, but many having no other means of subsistence, go of their own accord to one of these traders in human flesh, who provides them with board and lodging on credit, and for his own security shuts them up, till they can be sent on board. It is unfortunately too true, that many persons are so unhappy as to fall in the manner above-mentioned into their snares; yet neither are these things done under the sanction of government, nor do they go unpunished when they are discovered.

Nevertheless, the directors of the East India Company can neither be defended, as not knowing of such scandalous practices that disgrace humanity, nor, indeed, be acquitted of favouring them at times. For as the company is often in want of men, and does not care to give better pay, they are obliged to overlook the methods used by these infamous traders in human flesh to procure hands; and if at the  
muster

muster any one should think proper to lay open his case and misfortune, the director, not over-scrupulous, never thinks such a one too good for the Company's service. So that the directors would be able to prevent all such illegal violence, if at the reception of their men, and especially at the muster of them on board of ship, they made a strict enquiry into particulars, or wished in the least to vindicate the rights of mankind. It is common to hear that these unfortunate persons have been deprived of their clothes and other property by the kidnappers, who in their stead have sent them out with two or three pair of worsted stockings, trowsers made of sail-cloth, 16lb. of tobacco, and a keg of brandy: of this scanty and certainly not very enviable property, the greatest part is frequently stolen from them on their arrival on board, so that they are afterwards obliged to run bare-footed and bare-headed in the cold, having scarcely sufficient to cover their nakedness.

The crew being thus badly clothed, dejected in mind, and forced by rough means to hard and severe labour, it is not surprizing that diseases should suddenly supervene, and be rapidly propagated. Out of twenty patients, at the beginning of the voyage, scarcely one is a sailor, but all of them soldiers from the kidnappers. Thus these dealers in human flesh undoubtedly occasion great  
loss

loss and injury to the Company with their wretched supplies. This the Company might prevent, if they established a house on their wharf, in which poor people, who were desirous of being engaged in their service, might be decently fitted out, and maintained till such time as the ships were ready to sail, and afterwards serve to the amount of what had been advanced to them, without, at the same time, enriching an infamous ruffian.

Theft can hardly be carried to a greater height, than it is on board an East Indiaman during the time it lies in the Texel. Chests are broken open in the night, and emptied of their contents, so that the owner has not a single rag left for shifting himself: hammocks and bed-clothes are stolen, insomuch that the owners are obliged to sleep on the bare boards of the deck: shoes and night-caps are purloined from the feet and heads of those that are asleep, and the sick have frequently their breeches and stockings stripped from off their bodies: so that those who slept, when they awake, and the sick when they recover, must run about in the cold bare-headed, bare-footed, and half naked.

As long as the ships are at anchor in the Texel, the medicine-chests must not be opened, but the necessary medicines are taken out as occasion requires. The patients are at this time kept

kept on the lower deck under the fore-castle; but as soon as the ship is out at sea, they are brought up between decks as long as the capstan is not used. For such patients as have no hammocks, a shelf is made of boards to sleep upon at one side, and at the other is placed one of the medicine-chests, the other being set just before the windlass, where during the whole voyage the patients are dressed.

The physician of the Company, indeed, Dr. FAMARS, had ordered, by way of preventing infection in the ships, that the attendants should hold a sponge filled with vinegar in their mouths, and wash themselves with vinegar; that the healthy should drink tamarind-tea, and take spirit of scurvy-grass; that the convalescents should have tincture of bark and fresh mutton; that the sides of the ship should be sprinkled with vinegar, &c.; but these and other precautions were not sufficient to put a stop to the prevailing contagion, which hardly ceased during the voyage, till almost all the half-rotten fellows sent in by the kidnappers were carried off.

On the 30th of December, at three in the afternoon, we set sail, and left the *Texel* with a favourable easterly wind, that had lasted, and even increased, for the space of twenty-four hours; Capt. MORLAND, of the ship *Bovenkerkerpolder*,

*kerpolder*, as first in command, having previously given the signal, by the firing of guns, for weighing the anchors. A great number of East India and other merchant ships bore us company. After the pilot, the custom-house officers, and others, had taken their leaves, and left the ship, and we had passed the third run or beacon, we fired our guns, and wished each other a happy voyage.

On *the 31st*, in the afternoon, we passed the Channel that separates England from France.

1772, *Jan. 3*, we had got out of the Channel into the *Bay of Biscay*, when the water, which hitherto had been green, now appeared quite of a blue colour, and the air was considerably warmer.

On *the 4th*, among other dishes, there were served up at night, at the officers' table, some pancakes, for which the domine or chaplain, as caterer, had given the flour out to the steward, and by mistake, or rather from gross stupidity, had taken almost one half of some white lead, which had been put into a pitcher, and set by in the cupboard, for the purpose of painting the ship; the extraordinary weight of which, however, did not excite any suspicion in him. The pancakes were thin, with brown spots here and there scattered over them, especially on one side, but otherwise white, and as dry as if there had



not been a morsel of butter put into them.—

The cook being suspected of having dressed them ill, and been too sparing of the butter, was called in, and severely reprimanded.—

Most of the officers at table, however, ate a pancake apiece, which tasted somewhat sweetish, but betrayed no marks of poison. The remainder were consumed by the purser and boys, so that in all twenty persons partook of them. The effect of the poison was this, that some of them immediately threw it up again, especially the boys, as having the most irritable nerves; others did the same in the night following, and during the whole of the next day. The white-lead, settled at the bottom of the vessel, was of a dark-grey colour. Though the verdigrise of some copper pan was now chiefly suspected, and the sea-sickness likewise came in for its share of the blame, yet at the sight of this sediment, it came into my head to examine it more narrowly. I therefore put a little of it on live coals, and with a blow-pipe melted it into lead.

At the same time I recollected, that the acid French wine which we drank at table, and which now rose on our stomachs, and tasted quite sweet, could not be so from the small quantity of sugar that was strewed on the pancakes, but might possibly have been rendered sweet by means of something of the nature of lead.

This

This, though I could not conceive how it was brought about, induced me to make the experiment above mentioned. Those who happened to vomit in the evening; got rid of the lead, and recovered perfectly; as was the case with all the boys that were servants in the ship. Nor had several of the officers; that vomited soon; any farther inconvenience from it. Probably they had got some of the pancakes that were first fried, which consequently contained less white-lead. Others, however, paid dearer for their repast; a circumstance which deserves to be related separately. The Captain, having vomited, was well for a couple of days; but was afterwards seized with a violent cholic, which could not be alleviated either by emollients externally applied, emollient draughts, or clysters, but continued for two days; after which a dose of laudanum was given in the evening, on which the cholic entirely left him, and never incommoded him afterwards. He was of a consumptive habit; and his cough kept away for several days in consequence of this accident. But nobody was more tormented than myself and the dominé. In the morning of the 5th, I first began to have retchings, which continued almost all that day, so that I had in all between thirty and forty fits of vomiting, from which about five spoonfulls of a brown sediment precipitated to the bottom of

the vessel. The pancake I had eaten was one of the uppermost in the dish, and consequently was one of those that were fried last, and thus contained a great quantity of white-lead, which, on account of its weight, had sunk to the bottom of the pitcher. At the same time I was seized with the head-ach and cholic, which latter symptom however, was not very violent. Already on the same day the gums swelled near the roots of the teeth, forming small knobs, as it were, that seemed to contain white-lead, and were very sore; the glands also swelled in the mouth, as well as those under the chin. The saliva was very tough, and the tongue brownish. By means of copious drinking, the vomiting was promoted and rendered easy, and an emollient gargle was used to allay the swelling in the mouth. On the 6th I was in a complete, but gentle, salivation, and my mouth was ulcerated, especially at the sides, a circumstance which was accompanied with a disagreeable stench. My teeth were covered with a yellowish slime. My urine was reddish. In order to carry the peccant matter downwards, I took a gentle dose of physic. On the 7th the salivation proceeded gently, and the ulcers in my mouth grew quite yellow. On the 8th I was a little better; but the night following, the whites of my eyes were inflamed, an inflammation which was dispersed with the greatest ease, merely by the friction of the eyelids.

lids. On the 9<sup>th</sup> the tears flowed copiously; were sharp and corrosive. The right-side of my face swelled, with a violent ear-ach, which was extremely troublesome, particularly in swallowing, so that it was with the greatest difficulty I could drink, but it was impossible for me to chew or swallow any thing solid. Towards noon a kind of red spots, of different sizes, appeared on my fingers, as if caused by cold, but which were not very sore: these vanished in a few hours, and made their appearance again in a couple of days. On the 10<sup>th</sup> the swelling of my throat abated, and the peccant matter, or particles of lead, moved from my head into my stomach, and caused fresh fits of vomiting. On the 11<sup>th</sup> this vomiting continued, with the appearance of a small quantity of blood. On the 12<sup>th</sup> the same, with more blood. I was now very low from the repeated vomitings. On the 13<sup>th</sup> I had only a nausea, and at times slight fits of the cholic. On the 14<sup>th</sup> my mouth and throat were so very dry, that they felt as if they were glued together, and the white-lead was perceived in my saliva. On the 15<sup>th</sup> I had the cholic again, with a stiffness in my knees, a symptom which was likewise experienced by four of the officers. On the 19<sup>th</sup> I had a head-ach and nausea, with great debility. On the 21<sup>st</sup> the cholic again, and flying pains in my right-arm, but fixed pains in my knees, under the soles of my feet,

and between the very bones of my feet, inso-much, that I could hardly walk. In this state I continued till the 22<sup>d</sup>; afterwards I was tolerably well, and by degrees regained my strength, till the beginning of February, when my pains returned, attended with a violent rheumatism, which forced me on the 9<sup>th</sup> of February to take to my bed, on account of a weakness in my knees, which increased daily. By way of cleansing my stomach, I immediately took an emetic. On the 16<sup>th</sup> I had a violent head-ach, and pains in my joints, with cholic, and even fever at noon and in the afternoon, when the pains were most violent. During all this time I took cooling medicines for several days, and in the morning an ounce of *elect. diapruni*, which occasioned a cholera that weakened me apace, even to faintness, but immediately gave way to a dose of laudanum. And afterwards, though I was able to quit my bed, yet I was constantly afflicted with a heaviness in my head, and weakness in my knees, which continued without any remarkable alteration till the 23<sup>d</sup>, when the heaviness in my head increased, and was accompanied with a pain in my right-ear. On the 24<sup>th</sup> my head ached violently, with hard throbbings on the right-side, and that to such a degree, that when sitting upright in my bed, or otherwise in motion, I was almost in convulsions, and was

under

under some apprehensions of an apoplexy. My ear-ach was also very violent, and at times I felt some symptoms of the tooth-ach, all on the right-side. I therefore ordered myself to be bled; and used the antiphlogistic regimen. On the 25<sup>th</sup> the same symptoms continued with almost unabated force, and I passed the night restless. On the 26<sup>th</sup> my ear-ach had entirely left me, and the throbbing in my head was much abated; but instead of these, I was seized with pains in all my joints, which in some of them were slight, in others again more severe, especially in my knees and elbows, so as to produce some degree of lameness. My cholic had abated, but a violent and momentary pain darted at times from my left kidney. When I lay on my back, I was troubled with an asthma (which was sometimes better and sometimes worse) and a dry cough. The symptoms (perhaps from the heat of the day) were always aggravated from ten in the morning till four in the afternoon, when my pulse likewise was high and intermittent. My stomach could not bear any thing acid mixed with my drink: as for instance, infusion of tamarinds, lemon-juice, &c. but only now and then a drop or two of *spiritus nitri dulcis* in my tea. The application of a blister to the nape of my neck did not abate my head-ach in the least. On the 28<sup>th</sup> the throbbing in my

head ceased, as well as my dyspnœa, though my head still continued to be as heavy as lead, and I had an obscure pain in my joints. Towards evening this pain increased, even in the shoulders, lasted the whole of the 29<sup>th</sup>, after which it became still more violent. On the 1<sup>st</sup> of *March*, and the following days, it abated, but the heaviness in my head, and the weakness in my knees, together with some degree of pain, caused by the particles of lead deposited there, continued for a long time, and would undoubtedly have impaired my health in a greater degree than they did, had I not arrived in such a delightful country as that of the Cape of Good Hope; where I could use a great deal of exercise, and receive refreshment from all the agreeable fruits, vegetables, and wines, which this country, in the hands of the industrious Europeans, produces.

The domine, or chaplain, was at first likewise seized with violent vomitings and cholic, his gums swelling, as did also those of the commander of the soldiers, and their mouths broke out into ulcers, which turned yellow, though the latter of these gentlemen had not such violent fits of vomiting, nor was so much tormented with the cholic. Towards the end of *January* the domine had a fresh access of the cholic, which

which was with difficulty removed by emollients, and a few days after returned with a perfect *iliac* passion; neither *rhubarb* nor decoction of *sena*, nor the usual acid clysters, nor purgative pills, could remove this obstruction; recourse therefore was had to a clyster of a decoction of tobacco, which at first had no effect, for which reason it was repeated; when a passage was procured; but the cholic pains and the vomiting did not cease, till a considerable dose of *laudanum* had been exhibited.

The cook's mate also, in the course of a few days, when his first fits of vomiting were over, was also seized with the cholic, which at first yielded to the usual remedies, but afterwards returned, and increased to such a degree, that on the 2d of February we were apprehensive that an inflammation of the bowels had taken place, as the patient was almost raving mad with the pain, and attempted to rip up his own belly: he was therefore bled, and a clyster was administered, which eased him a little; but the following day his cholic turned to the *iliac* passion. No passage could be procured by strong clysters, purgative pills, nor even by tobacco-clysters at first, till two or three of them had been administered in vain. Laudanum was afterwards given him to ease his cholic, but this did not assist him so well as at first, but only gave him ease for a



short time. On this account a blister was applied to the region of the stomach: this perfectly removed the cholic, but the patient was afterwards lame in one thigh, so as not to be able to walk, an inconvenience, however, which went away gradually of itself.

Though no life was lost in consequence of this unfortunate accident with the white-lead, yet, as I myself was the principal sufferer from it, it taught me to be more particular and careful with respect to my diet in the course of my travels afterwards.

*January 17.* To-day we made *Port Santo* on the starboard. The Dutch vessels, especially if they have been beating up and down a long time in the north-sea, in general make for *St. Jago*, in order to take in fresh-water and some provisions; though the water is said not to keep well on board. As we had a fair wind, we passed by this place, that we might not be retarded on our voyage.

On the 19<sup>th</sup> we had the lofty yellow and red mountains of the grand *Canary* on our right-hand, and *Fort Ventura* on our left.

On the 20<sup>th</sup> we got into the trade-wind.

On the 26<sup>th</sup> divine service was performed on board for the first time during the whole voyage, and consisted of prayers, singing, and reading in the Bible. Morning and evening prayers were afterwards

afterwards read several times, when the weather was fine ; but not often.

In the evenings and nights there appeared thousands of shining animals, like stars, in the track of the ship ; as also large balls which threw a light, like faint flashes of lightening, in at the cabin windows.

On the 29<sup>th</sup> we were in lat. 15°.

In the night of *February the 3d*, and the following nights, when we were in the 8<sup>th</sup> degree of latitude, it lightened without any thunder being heard. This was said to be a sign of wind, though it did not prove so then. We caught some fish, and some large birds, called *malmucks*. The heat grew every day more and more intolerable ; and lemon-juice with sugar was now an extremely acceptable and refreshing beverage.

On the 8<sup>th</sup> we saw an elegant water-spout. The column began below, near the water, in small scattered clouds as it were, from which it afterwards arose in the form of a slender arched chord with smooth sides, and when arrived above the middle of its height, grew thick by degrees, and terminated in a cloud. Its duration was but short, as it vanished soon after we descried it.

On the 21<sup>st</sup> the ship was followed by a great number of fishes, which have the last *radius* of the fin on their back, very long (*ballistes*).

On

On the 22<sup>d</sup>, a little before noon, we passed the line. The heat was now so great that butter was liquid, like oil, and the sealing-wax on letters was so softened, that when the letters were laid together, the impression of the seal was effaced. Flying-fish (*exocoetus volitans*) appeared now in great numbers: they flew generally in one direction, and sometimes, though but seldom, in contrary directions. A kind of large birds of a black colour were seen, flying very high. The scurvy now began to prevail more than ever. Our water, notwithstanding that quicksilver had been put into it, grew putrid, and began to emit a cadaverous smell, and generated maggots, so that it could not be drank but in tea or coffee; but in the course of a few weeks it purified itself, and after having precipitated to the bottom all its filth and insects, became sweet and palatable. In the mean-time, rain-water was collected more than once, notwithstanding it had been prohibited, on the supposition of its generating diseases, besides, that it tasted of pitch from the cordage of the ship. Ale was reported to keep, if two eggs were put into the barrel to dissolve in it.

On the 28<sup>th</sup> we passed the line again. As soon as we were come a little to the southward of the line, the wind increased by degrees, though it was frequently rather unfavourable, driving us  
towards

towards the American side above seventy leagues from the shore. The cold also increased daily, in proportion as we approached the southern pole.

On the 24<sup>th</sup> of March we were in the latitude of the *Cape of Good Hope*. Here we caught dolphins, and ate them.

On the 26<sup>th</sup>, the large birds, called *malmucks*, which are brown and white underneath, passed us in great numbers, which was considered as a sign of our not being far from shore. When tired, they sat themselves down to rest upon the waves. They did not appear on the following days.

On the 28<sup>th</sup>, a plant of the species called *trumpet-grass* (*fucus buccinalis*) was seen floating on the water, which was a sure sign of the vicinity of the Cape, from the shores of which it is frequently torn off, and carried out to sea by the waves.

The number of patients, which ever since the beginning of the voyage, had been very great, began now considerably to decrease, though not till very many lives had been lost.

The diseases most common on board were spotted fevers, putrid fevers, of a bad sort, catarrhal fevers more or less of a malignant nature; rheumatisms, erysipelas, scurvy, large and malignant ulcers, abscesses, coughs, diarrhoea, dysentery, the venereal disease, &c. The sailors that stood

stood at the helm, and often perspiring profusely, did not take care to avoid catching cold, frequently fell sick. Still, however, diseases were more frequent and fatal among the soldiers, whose juices were corrupt and fainted.

Attendants were appointed, according as they were wanted, for the sick, to give them nourishment and medicines, to help them to get in and out of their hammocks, and to see that the convalescents on deck kept up in the fresh air.

Seldom did any fever terminate with a regular or good crisis; for the patients would either lay quite naked, or else quit their beds when in a perspiration, steal out of them to drink cold water, or to besprinkle themselves with it.—Hence various metastases supervened in the form of dreadful abscesses in their arms, hands, legs, and cheeks, some of which turned to gangrenes, and others exhausted the patients to death. Some of the sick were, more or less, afflicted with deafness. If the metastases affected the thighs, a violent pain in these parts was the consequence; if in the eyes, the patient could hardly see; if in the feet, it would produce a dropsy in the legs.—Some few were seized with the *variola spuria*. As to the symptoms of the fevers, several patients were taken with an obstinate vomiting, while others were afflicted with as obstinate a diarrhœa. In the malignant kinds of fever, a furor frequently

quently supervened; but in one or two of the patients, a mild and harmless delirium acceded, in which they sung during the whole of the last twenty-fours before they died.

During the voyage we had constantly about a hundred and fifty patients on the list, till we had passed the line, and the most infirm and disabled part of the crew were carried off by death.

With a view to the prevention of diseases during the voyage, orders were given that the ventilators should be constantly kept in play; and that special care should be taken not to suffer any disorderly fellow to sleep in the day, and get drunk at night; and, in order to introduce fresh air between the decks, that the air-sail should be kept constantly hanging through the main-hatchway. In fair weather the crew were kept upon deck, whither also their chests and hammocks were brought to be aired, whilst the ship was cleansed, smoked with juniper-berries and gunpowder, and sprinkled with vinegar. Besides these precautions, the sailors were encouraged to give themselves up to sports and mirthful amusements; to wash and keep themselves very clean, as also to dry their clothes, and change them frequently.

The patients were visited twice a day by the surgeon, viz. at eight in the morning and four in the afternoon, when the first dressing was performed.

formed. The names of such patients as were able to walk to the medicine-chest were set down on a board, together with the medicines to be given that day. Next, those who were confined to their beds were visited; after which the surgeon made his report to the captain, or the officer of the watch, if any died on the preceding night, as also of the number and diseases of the patients. The names of the deceased are taken down on a slip of paper, and a list is also made out of the sick, and delivered to the boatswain, that they may not be called upon watch.

The surgeon prescribes the diet of the patients, and the purser is to make provisions for it accordingly. Such as are extremely ill are indulged with some soup, or other dishes that come from the officers table. What may be wanted besides the medicines, or for the preparation of them, such as fresh water, sugar, vinegar, oil, lemon-juice, Spanish and white French wine, saltpetre, geneva, and the like, is put down upon a list, which is delivered to the first-mate.

When the surgeon has made his report of the death of any person, the mate of the watch immediately orders his chest to be brought upon deck, and distributes his clothes among those who have occasion for them.

The

The surgeon keeps an account of the sick, with the medicines prescribed for them, as well as of the deceased, which list is delivered to the governor at the place of the ship's destination.

When the ship is in harbour, and any one dies on board, a jack is hoisted half-way up the staff, in consequence of which a coffin is sent in a boat to bring the corpse on shore; but if a man dies when the ship is out at sea, the corpse is sewed up in a hammock, laid out for the space of a few hours before the main-mast, and then thrown overboard with some ballast of sand or lead at the feet, that it may sink.

When a man makes his will, it is signed by the boatswain, the gunner, and a few others.

The ration or allowance of certain articles, such as oil, tamarinds, lemon-juice, butter, cheese, &c. which ought to be distributed once a week, or, at any rate, once in a fortnight, is frequently given out but once in a month or five weeks, just as the captain and first-mate chuse, or find it to suit their purpose. Hence it comes, that either several articles are embezzled ~~and~~ from the men, which the officers above-mentioned afterwards dispose of, or else that the men get more at once than they have vessels to keep it in, or can stow in their small chests among their clothes and rags; not to mention, that when they get a larger ration than ordinary they



they are lavish of it at first, and afterwards have nothing left. It frequently happens also, that either the whole or some part of it is stolen from such as are not possessed of cunning enough to enable them to secrete it properly. The allowance of meat, however, and salt-pork, is more frequently and more regularly distributed. Of vinegar, oil, salt, and pepper, the crew in general have as much as they stand in need of; but half a pound of butter only is allowed to each man per week, and three pounds and a half of bread.

The cook receives for every man, on Tuesday, a pound of salt-pork, on Thursday butchers' meat, on Friday stock-fish, on Sunday peas and meat, and sometimes, by way of change, barley-groats, peas and beans, potatoes, red-cabbage, and various kinds of onions, together with horse-radish and carrots, and sometimes fresh-meat or salt-pork, are also distributed among the crew. As soon as the ship was in the open sea, every man received three whole cheeses, of a few pounds weight.

The company sends out stockings likewise, and clothes made of coarse and thin cloth, which are delivered out upon credit to such as chuse to avail themselves of this privilege; this distribution is made at the captain's pleasure, to those whom he favours, and not always where it is wanted.

On the 30th, several large birds appeared in sight, and by their arrival gave us to understand that we approached nearer to the Cape. Clothes were now, for the second time, distributed among such of the soldiers as, had been hitherto half-naked.

On the 7th of April, *besantjes*, or Portuguese men of war (*holothuria physalis*) were seen sailing on the water. \*The large malmucks now also appeared in greater numbers, and a contrary wind prevented us from approaching nearer to the coast.

On the 10th, the effects of a deceased sailor were put up at auction before the mast. The sum amounted to sixty-eight guilders, one-half of which was given to the poor in Holland, and the other half to those at the Cape, without any regard being paid to the legal heirs of the deceased. At four in the afternoon a ship was seen, as also a little blue and white bird, of the size of a swallow, hovering over the water. Two whales (*balenæ*) passed us. Already the water, in consequence of its increasing shallowness, changed from black to green; a certain indication to the sailor of the vicinity of land.

On the 11th, land-birds were seen, which are distinguished from the sea-fowl by their slower flight, and by their fluttering more with their wings. Towards ten o'clock *Table Mountain*

began to show its head, and the water was extremely green.

On the 12<sup>th</sup>, we were overtaken by a south-easterly wind, which prevented us from gaining the harbour, and obliged us to beat up and down for a few days at sea.

On the 14<sup>th</sup>, we saw whales spouting, the seals (*phoca*) sporting, and trumpet-grass (*fucus buccinalis*) floating in great abundance. Upon this last the land-birds would often sit down to rest.

On the 15<sup>th</sup>, a considerable number of sea-fowls were seen swimming before the harbour.

On the 16<sup>th</sup>, we arrived safely in the road in *Table Bay*, dropt our anchor, fired our guns, and with mutual joy congratulated each other.

Immediately on our arrival, the superintendent over the ships came to us from the town, accompanied by a surgeon; the former to fetch off the letters and papers for the company, and the latter to get information with respect to the number of people that had died during the voyage, and of those that were still indisposed. The number of the latter was now not very great, but that of the former amounted to a hundred and fifteen, of which ten died before we left the *Texel*, and two had unfortunately fallen overboard. The other ships in our company suffered

ferred a still greater mortality, viz. the *Hoenkoop* one hundred and fifty-eight in all, of whom one hundred and thirty-six died while we were in the Texel. The *William V.* lost in all two hundred and thirty men, and the *Jonge Samuel*, of Zeeland, one hundred and three.

We were hardly come to an anchor, before a crowd of black slaves and Chinese came in their small boats to sell and barter, for clothes and other goods, fresh meat, vegetables, and fruit, all of which our crew were eager to procure.

In the road we found, among others, a Swedish ship, which had arrived but a short time before at this southernmost point of Africa, and had brought my friend, Professor SPARRMAN.

On the 17<sup>th</sup>, I went with the captain on shore, and took a lodging at M. HENDRIK FEHRSEN'S house.

Being safely arrived at the *Cape of Good Hope*, my first care was to wait on the lieutenant-governor, Baron JOACHIM VON PLETTENBERG, and the other gentlemen of the regency, to whom I was recommended, in order to deliver to them the letters I had brought with me. And as the respectable and universally-beloved veteran, Governor TULBAGH, had, in consequence of age and gout, on the 11<sup>th</sup> of August in the preceding year, exchanged this life for a better, I delivered the letters directed for him to Baron

PLETTENBERG, who received me with the greatest kindness, and promised to assist me in my design of travelling into the interior part of the country, during the term of my residence in that quarter of the globe.

Whereas in my native country, to the northward of the equator, the most delightful of the seasons, spring, was now approaching; here, to the south of the line, winter was stealing upon us, so that I could not as yet, or for several months to come, travel to any advantage through the interior parts of the country, but must wait till the beginning of September. The intervening months I employed in informing myself of the internal oeconomy and institutions of the Company, and examined the plants and animals in the environs of the town, and in the neighbouring mountains, making also short excursions into the country, which I was in hopes of penetrating deeper into afterwards, and of viewing it with a curious and observing eye.

The *Cape of Good Hope* is the extreme point of Africa, and of the *Old World*, to the southward, and is probably the most capital promontory in the whole world.

BARTOLOMEW DIAZ, a Portuguese, was the first who discovered this promontory in 1487, and King *Emanuel* gave it the name of the Cape of Good Hope. VASCO DE GAMA visited it next

in 1497, by order of the same monarch. According to the observations of M. de la CAILLE, it is situated in lat. 33 deg. 35 min. S. and in long. 35 deg. 2 min. E.

The ships that anchor in *Table Bay*, in a considerably extensive road, are somewhat above a mile distant from the town.

The day after our arrival our sick men were taken to the hospital, attended by the surgeon's-mate; and afterwards the soldiers, under the conduct of their commanding officer, who was to serve in the capacity of serjeant after his arrival on shore.

The town is very regularly built, from the shore along the declivity formed by the *Table Mountain*, and its streets cut the quarters at right angles, the whole being bounded at the back part by *Table Mountain* (*Taffelberg*), to the westward by *Lion Mountain* (*Leuweberg*), and towards the east, in some measure, by the *Devil's Mountain* (*Duyvelsberg*). So that it is most open towards the southern and eastern sides.

In disembarking, one is not incommoded here by the shutting of toll-gates or by custom-house officers. The town has neither walls nor gates, and yet enjoys a perfect security in a land of savages.

The houses are all of brick, white-washed, and one, seldom two, but very rarely three stories high, and covered in for the most part with flat roofs of brick-work, or a kind of grass indigenous to this country (*restia testorum*) laid upon very low frame work. On account of the violence of the winds that prevail here, the roofs cannot be tiled over, nor raised higher. The house of the lieutenant-governor, and the company's warehouse, were the only houses that were three stories high.

The domestics here do not consist of Europeans, but of black or tawny slaves from *Malabar*, *Madagascar*, or other parts of *India*. These, in general, speak either broken Portuguese, or else the Malabar, seldom the Dutch language, and learn various trades, by which they bring their masters considerable profit, especially such as are taylor, carpenters, bricklayers, or cooks. The slaves are let out by the month, week, or day, during which term they are to earn for their masters a certain fixed sum *per diem*. The male slaves wear their own hair, upon which they set a great value, wrapped up in a twisted handkerchief like a turban, and the females wreath up their hair and fix it on their heads with a large pin. Trowsers constitute the other part of their dress; and as a token of their servile condition, they always go barefoot, and without a hat.

Previous

Previous to the company's sitting down to meals, either dinner or supper, a female slave brings a wash-hand basin and towel, to wash their hands, which is also done on the company's rising from table. In the houses of the wealthy, every one of the company has a slave behind his chair to wait on him. The slave has frequently a large palm leaf in his hand, by way of a fan, to drive away the flies, which are as troublesome here as they are in Sweden.

As well within as without the town, neat and excellent gardens are laid out, both for fruit and culinary vegetables, being watered by the streams that run down from the mountains. Among these that extensive and beautiful garden belonging to the company distinguishes itself, like an old oak amidst a thicket of bushes. It is from these gardens that the stranger, on his arrival, meets with his first refreshments; and from their superfluous stock the Dutch and other ships are supplied with stores for their voyage. The garden-seeds must be brought every year fresh from Holland, as they otherwise, almost all, degenerate in time, excepting the seeds of cauliflowers, which are brought to great perfection here, and on that account exported from hence to Holland, where they gradually degenerate.

Apples, pears, and other European fruits, are mellowed and riper, but have not that flavour



which they have in Europe, neither will they keep long. Nor are the peaches produced here equal in goodness to those of the south of Europe. They are sometimes dried like pears, with or without their stones.

The trees imported from Europe, such as oak (*quercus robur*), the white poplar (*populus alba*), and others, shed their leaves in the winter, as they do in their native places, whereas the African trees do not part with their's. It is not long, however, before they recover their leaves again. This circumstance is singular enough; first, because the cold here in winter is not more severe than it is in Sweden in the autumn; and in the second place, because they shed their leaves to the southward of the equator at the very time that they put them forth to the northward of it. The lime-trees (*tilia Europæa*) do not thrive well, on account of the violent winds that rage here; and the same may be said of the hazel (*corylus avellana*), cherry-tree (*prunus cerasus*), gooseberry-tree (*ribes grossularia*, & *uva crispa*), currant-tree (*ribes rubrum* & *nigrum*), all of which degenerate, and seldom yield any fruit.

The myrtle (*myrtus communis*) grows to the height of a tree, though its stem is neither thick nor stiff, nor does it throw out many branches. For this reason it seems to be proper, and indeed, is frequently used, for forming  
high

high hedges, in a country subject to violent winds, as its supple stem bends to the storm.

The foot of the mountain, or the hills round the town, consisted of a red flame-coloured clay, which proceeds from the water's running down the cracks, and tinging the earth with its acid, charged with ferruginous particles. Higher up on the hills, lie scattered without order, stones of all sizes, that have been rolled down from the mountains.

Among others I visited M. AUGE, the gardener, who has made many, and those very long, excursions into the interior part of the country, and has collected all the plants and insects, which the late Governor TULBAGH sent to Europe to LINNÆUS, and to the Professors BURMANN and VAN ROYEN. And as he still continued his journies yearly into the country, he sold to strangers, as well herbals as birds and insects. It was of him that M. GRUBB, the director of the bank in Sweden, purchased that fine collection of plants, which was afterwards presented to Professor BERGIUS, and so well described by this latter gentleman in his book of the *Plantæ Capenses*. M. AUGE's knowledge of botany was not very considerable, nor did his collections in general extend much farther than to the great and the beautiful; but, in the mean time, we are almost solely indebted  
to

to him for all the discoveries which have been made since the days of *Hermannus*, *Oldenlandus*, and *Hartogius*, in this part of Africa.

The citadel is situated on the sea-shore, below the city to the eastward, and is surrounded with high walls and deep ditches; there is room enough in it for the governor, though he never lives there, as well as for the major, the other officers, and the soldiers. At sun-set the great gate is shut, when all the soldiers, that have not leave of absence, are summoned by beat of drum, and their names called over in each company. The little gate is kept open till ten o'clock, when the soldiers, who are absent, without having previously obtained leave of absence for the night, are summoned by a bell, and their names are called over; the gate is after this not to be opened till the morning, except in case of necessity, such as to fetch a midwife. A surgeon always sleeps in the castle.

The first thing a soldier must provide himself with, is his own uniform; this he receives of the company, but must serve to the amount of its value. Every third year the company orders a number of new uniforms to be made for the use of the militia, and at no other time. If it should so happen that the quantity ready-made should not suffice for recruits that arrive during  
this

this interval, they must for some time do their duty in their own clothes, and frequently in the jackets of the *zeelverkoopers*, or kidnappers, who have sent them thither.

Soldiers, who have received in Holland what is called a bill of transport, receive no pay till they have served to the full value of it. This takes at least a year and a half, or more; during which time they only receive a little subsistence-money and service-money. What more they may want for subsistence and clothes, they must earn by any trade that they may happen to have learned, or by doing duty for the others on their leisure days. A soldier who has learned a good trade, may earn half a dollar a day, and pays to him that does duty for him four schellings. They have also an opportunity of making something by washing for others. A soldier may indeed obtain double subsistence-money; but then, two guilders per month are deducted from his pay, for what they term subsidy-money.

The soldiers go upon guard every other or every third day, and consequently have a day or two to themselves. The same guard continues for twenty-four hours together, and consists in the smaller posts of a corporal and three men; but in the greater, of a serjeant and twelve men. When a man has been upon guard two hours, he is relieved, and exempt from duty,  
till

till four hours more are expired, when he goes upon guard again.

A soldier is obliged to serve five years, exclusive of the time taken up in the voyage, during which term he is not at liberty to return home; but by the favour of the officers, considerable deductions may be made from this term, insomuch, that sometimes a soldier returns by the same ship that brought him. Sometimes a soldier is also metamorphosed into a sailor for this purpose.

When his agreement is at an end, he may either return home or renew it; if he chuses the latter, which is generally done for three years at first, his pay is increased two gilders more per month; this term being expired, he may engage for two years more, and then receives a fresh augmentation of two gilders per month; but in case of his continuing in the service after that term, his pay is augmented no more, unless, indeed, he is advanced. A soldier, if he has received any education, may be advanced to be a corporal, serjeant, or officer, to be an assistant in a factory, or to be surgeon, if he has learned that art in Europe.

There are several means by which a soldier may be released from the obligation of doing duty. The most common way is by what they call a furlough; in this case he is exempt from  
all

all duty, and at full liberty to get his livelihood in what manner soever he is able, or by any trade that he may have learned. For this he pays four dollars per month, and to the adjutant of the company one shilling, in which case he receives his monthly pay. Of the men belonging to the garrison, there were now about one hundred and fifty that had furloughs. The profits of the furloughs are distributed among that part of the garrison that does duty, and are called service-money; a soldier receives eight or nine, a corporal twelve, and a serjeant sixteen shillings; the remainder is divided between the officers. The furlough-money is to be paid duly, the last day of every month, into the hands of the chaplain, whose duty it is to receive it. In time of war these furloughs are not given, but every one must then do duty. The governor takes from among the soldiers as many as he chuses, to work gratis for him; the major takes four and twenty or more; the fiscal two, the book-keeper one, and so on. These then are either to work for the above-mentioned gentlemen, or to pay them their furlough-money. The greater number there is taken of these men, the heavier does the duty fall upon the rest of the soldiers.

The soldiers receive their pay of the lieutenant of the company every four months; which for this reason is called the *good* month.

If any person in the town or country wishes for a foldier, either as a teacher for his children, or to work in his shop, he may get one by the means just indicated; but if such foldier has taken up a bill of transport in Holland, this must now be repaid to the value of about eighty dollars, for which the fellow must serve till it is paid off: if in the mean time he should die, the loss will be on the side of the tradesman.

Sailors may in the same manner take out furloughs, by paying to the purser eight dollars per month.

A perfect immunity from service, as well as erasure from the paymaster's books, may indeed be also obtained; but on no other consideration than that of being held disqualified for the company's service.

There are others, called *lichten*, who neither do duty, nor have any furloughs, nor receive any pay, and are always at their full liberty in time of peace; but when once they enter into the service again, they must serve their five years out, for which they agreed.

Prayers are read in the citadel every morning and evening by a chaplain. On Sunday a sentinel is placed before the church-door, but within the church-door a foldier would scarcely be tolerated.

Before

Before the citadel, in a large convenient place, are laid the wine and water casks that come from the ships to be repaired; as likewise a great quantity of planks and spars. In order to prevent any thing from being stolen, a sentinel is placed here in the night-time. This post is not unprofitable, when the soldier happens to catch a young fellow engaged in close conversation with some female friend; in which case he must make the soldier a compliment of a few dollars to avoid being taken into custody, and discovered, or, at all events, incommoded and disturbed in his *menûs plaisirs*.

If a soldier falls sick, he is taken to the hospital, where he has medicines and his diet gratis, till he recovers, but he receives no pay, except his share of the furlough-money. Yet, if his disease is of a venereal nature, even this is withheld from him. If he does not chuse to go to the hospital, he is at liberty to go elsewhere, though then he is obliged to pay his own physician, his attendants, and other necessary expences, out of his own purse, but receives his pay and subsistence-money.

Chimnies are not used in this country, nor are they wanted; and to stoves they are utter strangers. Yet I have known a family or two that had a fire-place in their hall, though rather for pleasure than for any other occasion they had



had for it. The ladies have generally live coals in a kind of covered chaffing-dish or stove, which in winter time they set on the ground under their clothes to warm them.

The cold is severest in the months of August or September, especially on mornings and evenings, when it rains or blows hard. The wind feels very piercing on account of the thin clothing that is worn here. The winter at the Cape resembles the months of August, September, and October in Sweden.

The mothers in this country seldom put their children out to nurse, but suckle them themselves, for which reason they have, in general, easier labours.

There are a few families have descended from Blacks in the female line, for three generations back. The first generation proceeding from an European who is married to a tawny slave, that has been made free, remains tawny, but approaching to a white complexion; but the children of the third generation, mixed with Europeans, become quite white, and are often remarkably beautiful.

The slave-house of the Company is adjacent to the garden, and contains a great number of slaves, who work in the garden and on buildings, carry burdens from the ships, &c. Those that are sick here have a surgeon to attend them.

them. The company brings the greatest part of its slaves from Madagascar, whereas private persons buy their's of the officers belonging to the ships, as well Dutch as French, that are on their return home from the East Indies, seldom of the English, and never of the Swedish.

Before the ships weigh anchor, all the convalescents are selected out from the hospital, and distributed on board the ships.

The officers of the ships, during their stay here, sell to great advantage several European commodities, such as wine, ale, tobacco-pipes, coarse and fine hardware, clothes, shoes, glass, and household furniture; the European hams, beef, sausages, tongues, herrings, stock-fish, salmon, and cheese, with some other articles, were also in great request.

Whereas the foreign ships, that stop here, lie in the roads a short time only to take in provisions, and then resume their voyage, the Dutch ships are obliged to stop a great while, in order to take the convalescents on board, who after all come thither in a very indifferent state of health. The Dutch have also occasion for a greater number of sailors to work their ships than other nations, as their rigging is made after the old fashion, with large blocks and thick cordage, heavy and clumsy in every respect.

The company's garden is always open to the public. It is nine hundred and ninety-six paces long, two hundred and sixty-one broad, and has forty-four quarters, which are separated from each other by hedges, consisting, for the most part, of oaks or bays (*laurus nobilis*), several yards in height. I observed here, that a *royena villosa*, that grew beside one of these oaks, had fairly perforated one of its branches through the very trunk of the oak, in which it now grew like a parasitic plant. In like manner I observed in another garden, in which a seat had been fixed between two trees, that the bark of one of the trees had grown over the seat, like a fungus (*boletus*), and held it fast. In the menagerie were several rare and uncommon animals, and particularly great numbers of birds.

Male and female slaves though belonging to different masters, frequently cohabit together, by permission of their owners, in which case the children always become the property of him who is the owner of the female slave. Though the man, that cohabits with the woman slave, be a freed man, or even a European, still their offspring are slaves. So that the bonds of wedlock among slaves are but loosely contracted, and easily broken through. A master has the right of chastising his slaves with a whip, but has no power over their lives, as this belongs to the magistrate.

If

If a slave is too severely treated by his master, he may complain to the fiscal; and if it then appears that he has been ill used, the owner is made to pay a considerable fine. If a slave lifts up his hand against his master or mistress, or any white man, he is punishable with death.

A slave can give no evidence; nor has he the power of bearing, much less of having in his possession, any kind of fire-arms: by these means the slaves, who always greatly exceed the Europeans in number, are kept unarmed. As soon as a slave is enfranchised, he wears shoes, stockings, and a hat, as a mark of his freedom.

In the months of April, May, and June, when the ships lie in the road, the naval officers frequently put up at auction such commodities as they wish to dispose of at this place: for this they pay five per cent. to the fiscal, who receives five dollars for every chest brought on shore, for which five guilders only were paid in Holland. All European merchandizes are sold here at thirty, fifty, and one hundred per cent. profit.

The winter months are reckoned here from the middle of May till the middle of August, during which time ships must not enter Table-Bay, on account of the stormy north-westerly winds that prevail then, and might drive them on shore; but they are obliged to anchor in *False-Bay*.

Ratans split very thin, and fastened together with strings, so as to roll up easily, are much used here for window-blinds. They are also employed for making baskets, bottoms of beds, and seats of chairs.

The thick bamboo canes, though hollow, are very strong. They are used for making the sides of ladders, and as perches to carry burdens on; of the more young and slender stems are made fences, to set up on the tops of walls and of wooden pales.

The seed-vessels of the silver-tree (*protea argentea*) serve for fuel; the *restio dichotomus* (*bessem riet*) for brooms.

Kukumakranka (*gethyllis*) is the name given to the legumen or pod of a plant, that grew at this time among the sand-hills near the town, without either leaves or flowers. This pod was of the length of one's finger, somewhat wider at top than at bottom, had a pleasant smell, and was held in great esteem by the ladies. The smell of it resembled in some measure that of strawberries, and filled the whole room.

On the clay-hills near the shore before the citadel, I observed people digging up the earth, which was mixed with a great many sea-shells, and putting it into baskets. This they washed till nothing but the shells remained. In like manner I saw them carefully gather the larger shells.

shells thrown up by the sea on the beach, and lay them up in large heaps to dry. These shells they burn to lime for building. For this purpose they make a pile of billet and bush-wood, within which the shells are laid and burned. In *Robben Island* a great quantity of shells are collected, and made into lime for the company's service, by the criminals exiled there. In the whole country there is no other lime to be found, nor any mountains containing either chalk or lime-stone.

Poets are said to be born so; but the Dutch here, and indeed all over the East-Indies, may be said to be born merchants; for in case the father does not trade, but carries on some handicraft business, his wife, daughter, or son must; and this is always done in a particular way of their own, and often without any regular system. There is scarce one regular merchant to be found; but every body carries on trade, and keeps a certain species of goods only, at a certain time of the year, by which he endeavours to gain the most he can.

Two winds in particular prevail here throughout the year, and are frequently very violent, viz. the south-east wind in the summer, and the north-west in winter. When the east or south-east wind begins to blow, it drives the clouds against the mountains, and away over them,

which occasions a kind of drizzling rain up in those regions; the clouds are afterwards dispersed below the summit of the mountain; and when the clouds are carried off, the wind may continue indeed, but then it is always accompanied with fine dry weather.

The town has but one Calvinistical church, which is tolerably large and handsome. The Lutherans have not hitherto been able to obtain permission to erect one, though their number here is very large; the Calvinistical church is served by two clergymen, who live in the town, and are well paid.

The hospital is ill situated, and much out of repair, infomuch; that a new one will shortly be erected on a more extensive and convenient plan. The patients here are not remarkably well taken care of; on account of the small portion of medical skill possessed by the person who superintends the hospital; though the company spares for no expence with regard to them. I was informed, that the company pays 200 ducatoons per annum, or something more than 600 gilders, for the article of almonds only, for the patients, of which, perhaps, they do not get one. Every half year, the moiety of this sum is paid down, an exact calculation having been previously made, how many thousand of almonds may be had for that money, according to the then current

rent price. So that the sum is always the same, though the quantity of almonds varies with the price; and the patients always receive the same quantity, that is, little or nothing. For every one in the hospital, that goes through a course of mercurial friction for the venereal disease, the surgeon receives eight dollars; and the patient must pay two dollars for his medicines, as it is not thought proper that he should be cured of this disease gratis.

Several streets in the town are adorned with canals filled with the water that comes from the superimpending mountains. But the bringing of the water by means of wooden pipes, from the same mountains down to the great bridge in the harbour, at the side of the citadel, where the ships unload, is of greater importance; as the ships boats may conveniently lay along-side of it, and fill their casks with the purest water.

The small-pox and measles are the most fatal distempers here; for the prevention of which they make the same provisions, as is done in other places against the plague. Consequently, as soon as a ship has anchored in the road, a surgeon is sent on board of it, to examine whether any body in the ship is at that time infected, or during the voyage has been infected with either of these diseases. In the latter case, no one from the ship is suffered to come on shore; but the com-



mander is advised to go to some other place with the vessel ; which, in the mean time, is furnished with whatever it may stand in need of. When at any time the small-pox is carried thither, every one flies in haste to the interior parts of the country. This infectious disorder, I observed, and some French ships, which they took for enemies, were the only things that at this juncture could inspire these rich farmers and burghers with fear, and make them shift their quarters. They were not yet become rational enough to adopt inoculation. In 1713, the small-pox was first brought here by a Danish ship, when it made a dreadful havoc among Europeans as well as Hottentots, only three houses having escaped. The Hottentots died in such multitudes, that their bodies lay in the fields and highways unburied.

In 1755, this disorder appeared for the second time ; and in 1767, in April, for the third and last time, being in like manner brought by a Danish ship. The last time the measles prevailed in these parts, they were the more destructive, as the surgeons sent out by the governor, from ignorance of the disease, treated it perversely. It is much to be lamented, that the account given of the medical practitioners of the Cape for some time past, should so exactly tally with that transmitted to us  
by

by KÆMPFER, in his *Amoenit. exot.* Fascic. 3<sup>o</sup> p. 534 & 535; of the surgeons in the East, Indies.

The town is adorned with three large squares; in one of these stands the Protestant church; it likewise has a fountain in it, which furnishes the inhabitants of the town with water; in the other is the town-hall; and the third is lately laid out for the convenience of the country people who bring their goods to market, and in this is to be built the watch-house for the firemen.

On the shore itself several batteries of different sizes are erected for the defence of the city. The citadel is intended to protect them as well against internal as foreign enemies, but the batteries more particularly against the ships of a foreign power; and, in fact, these can do no more execution in the road than the citadel possibly can do. There were now, though in rather an indifferent state of repair, the *great battery*, the *little battery*, the *new battery*, the *bones*, and the *line-guard*.

In the beginning of July, I made a day's excursion to *Mount Pearl*, in company with Dr. LE SUEUR, who was sent for to see a patient that had been ill of a fever, and had now such a weakness in his joints and ligaments, that he could not lift his hands to his mouth, and his knee-

knee-pans were so loose, that he had lost the use of his legs likewise. Dr. LE SUEUR was a native of the Cape, but had studied in Holland, and taken his degrees at Groningen.

In many places the roads were intersected by large rivers, which were now so swelled by the heavy rains, that the water almost came into the carriage; the current being at the same time very strong.

The land in these parts was very poor, being merely loose sand, under which lay the solid rock, consisting of brown ferruginous clumps, composed of clay, vitriolic acid, and slate. In these meagre plains, nevertheless, *phylicas*, *ericas*, and *proteas*, grew in abundance.

At Paarl the cold is felt more sensibly in the mornings and evenings than at the Cape, and the hoar-frost frequently damages the vegetables in the gardens. The easterly winds are said to be very powerful here, and in summer time to blow the grains of wheat out of the ear.

Butter is churned every day in the summer, and every other day, or every third day, in the winter. They usually pour luke-warm water into the churn, in order that the milk may coagulate the better.

The houses are generally situated at the foot of the mountains, from whence water runs down

down to them. The want of water in other places, and the consequent poverty of the soil, must be considered as the reason why this country, so excellent in other respects, cannot be very closely inhabited. The African soil is intrinsically meagre ; but its fertility, which is so much cried up by many, must be ascribed to the excellence of the climate ; for those spots where water and a little mould are to be found, and which consequently are capable of cultivation, produce a rich harvest of corn, delicious fruits, and excellent wines. The chief object of the farmer, when chusing a spot for his abode, is to find an earthy soil in the vicinity of water.

Every peasant builds his own house, sometimes of brick, sometimes only of clay, lime, and sand. Every one of them possesses a great number of horses, oxen, cows, sheep, goats, ducks, and geese, which in the day time are driven out on the hills, and tended by a slave, and driven home again at sun-set. At night all these animals sleep in the open air, each species separately, in a place fenced in by a mud-wall. This is said to be very detrimental to the wool of the sheep (the *ovis laticauda*). It was pleasant in the highest degree to see the lambkins, which are kept, while they are young, in the house, go in the evenings, to meet their mothers on their return home. As soon as they  
heard

heard the voice of their dams at a great distance, the little hungry creatures began to cry out and run towards them; but if they could not see their mothers distinctly, they would immediately run back again. When their dams approached still nearer, their cries increased, and the lambs ran full speed to meet them, and followed them home again. The wool of these African sheep, which have large tails, is none of the best, and is not employed either in the manufacturing of cloth or for any other important purpose, much less is it exported. M. HEMMING, however, had, a few years before, a piece of cloth woven from it large enough to make a complete suit of clothes.

I frequently observed the shin-bones of sheep used, both in town and country, either for setting round the trees in the streets, or for dividing the parterres in the flower-gardens, where they had a very pretty effect, the end of the ginglymus articulation being placed uppermost.

Wolves were caught by an easy and ingenious method: a square or oblong house was erected, either of brick or only of clay, of the height of six feet or more, without any other covering than a few wooden bars. In the front a low opening is left, with a trap-door before it. In the house is laid a bait, tied to a rope that is fastened to a peg. This peg is brought through the

the lower part of the back wall, and stuck into a piece of wood, which hangs down the wall on the outside; to the upper part of this piece of wood is fixed another rope, that passes over the top of the house, and is fastened to the trap-door, which it thus keeps suspended over the aperture. The wolf having entered the house, pulls the bait, and at the same time pulls out the peg from the piece of wood, when the trap-door falls down, and makes the wolf prisoner.

The stile of building in the country, among people in good circumstances, is nearly similar to that in town, viz. first there is a hall at the entrance of the house, and before this is a long gallery; on each side of the hall is a room; and on one side of the gallery is the kitchen, and on the other a bed-chamber. People of inferior circumstances had a gallery, with a chamber on each side of it, and the kitchen behind. The poorer sort had huts of clay, with doors and windows almost pervious to the weather.

The water that runs down the mountains to the farms that lie below them is frequently conducted by art to different places, such as to artificial fountains, or to gardens, for the purpose of watering them in time of drought, or to fish-ponds, to supply them with water.

Such

Such waters as accumulated in the plains below the mountains, and formed rivulets, which at times were so deep in certain places, as to make ferries or boats necessary for passing them, the farmers rendered useful to themselves, by damming them up, in order to make them overflow their vineyards planted on their banks; when the water gently running off from them, manured the soil, and rendered it fertile.

The vineyards near Paarl flourished amazingly, and vines were seen here fifty years old. A vine was said to bear so early as the second year after it was planted, but to yield a full vintage in the third. All the vines here were kept low, in order to make them produce large clusters.

In this place a church was erected and provided with a Calvinist minister and a clerk. Divine service, however, is not performed every Sunday; but when the minister is gone on a journey, sick, or otherwise hindered, the clerk reads to the congregation some portion of the Bible.

The farmers, or colonists, all through the country are, as well as the inhabitants of the city, all bürghers, and are consequently obliged to be always in readiness, in case of a war, to defend their country. For this purpose they are divided

divided into companies, and certain persons among them appointed their officers.

On the sudden approach of danger from any enemy, the whole body of the inhabitants may be summoned by the firing of guns and hoisting of flags. For this purpose cannons are planted at proper intervals, and at the side of each stands a flag-staff, to give signals in case of the approach of an enemy, or of any great fleet belonging to a foreign power. In such case, seven guns are fired from the Lion's Head. The cannon on the banks of *Zout Rivier* is next discharged, which is repeated by another placed at a greater distance, then by a third, and so on; the flag being always hoisted before the firing of the gun, by which means the alarm is soon given throughout the whole country.

As an antidote against the bite of serpents, the blood of the turtle was much cried up, which on account of this extraordinary virtue, the inhabitants dry in the form of small scales or membranes, and carry about them when they travel in this country, which swarms with this most noxious vermin. Whenever any one is wounded by a serpent, he takes a couple of pinches of the dried blood internally and applies a little of it to the wound.

Surgeons, apothecaries, and others, when they cannot find in this country the usual and genuine medicinal



medicinal plants, look for others that somewhat resemble them, either in their flowers, leaves, smell, or general habit, and then give them the same names. The physician, who hears this *quid pro quo* mentioned, must not let it puzzle or mislead him.

The leaves of the *Calla Æthiopica*, a plant which grew even in the ditches about the gardens near the Cape, were said to serve for food for the (*yzer-varken*) or porcupines.

The root of the *arctopus echinatus*, which grew both near the Cape and in other places, was of a soft texture, and contained a very white and pure gum, which was used in the form of a decoction, as an excellent purifier of the blood, and likewise as a remedy in the gonorrhoea.

The root of the *bryonia Africana* served the country people for an emetic; infused in wine or brandy it proves an excellent purge, especially if a piece of bread be eaten after it.

The *geranium cucullatum*, a fragrant plant, was used as an emollient, inclosed in small bags.

Of the leaves of the *borbonia cordata* the country people made tea.

The *montinia aeris*, though it is of a very acrid nature, was said to be eaten by the sheep.

The

The Hottentots eat the fruit of the *brabeium stellatum*, a large shrub that grows near brooks and rivulets, called *wilde castanien* (wild chestnuts), and sometimes used by the country people instead of coffee: the outside rind being taken off, the fruit is steeped in water to deprive it of its bitterness; it is then boiled, roasted, and ground like coffee.

The gout and dropsy were common diseases in this country, proceeding from the great quantity of wine that was drank, and the very varying and cold winds.

The fields were by no means so thickly covered with grass here as they are in Europe where the grass-turf, with its great variety of flowers, forms the most beautiful carpet; but the grass grew very thin, shewing the bare sand between the blades, so that one could not with any pleasure lie down on it to rest one's self.

The barley, after it had attained to a considerable height, was mowed once or oftener, and given to the horses as fodder. It was said, that it might be cut in the month of August, when in the ear. I frequently saw bundles of it brought to town in this state to market. The barley in this country is cultivated chiefly for the use of horses; a few bundles of it being cut every evening, after the horses are come in

from grass, and laid in the stable, or else out in the yard, where these animals are tied up, for their night-provender.

Beer is never brewed in the country, where the people, when thirsty, drink water, tea, coffee, or wine; but a brewery has been established near Cape Town. The Cape beer, however, is never remarkably good, but generates wind in the stomach, and soon turns sour. This is the reason why they are obliged to import their beer from Europe; the Dutch, Danish, and English beer, which they sometimes drink in small quantities at their meals, being held in particular esteem.

The vineyards must be dug every year, and the ground turned, yet without disturbing the vines. In manuring them, the old earth is dug away from around the vines, and so that a hole is left in which the manure is laid. If a vine dies, a branch of an adjoining vine is bent down into the hole, where it soon strikes root, and is afterwards cut off at the top.

A widow at the Paarl had three Hottentots in her service; they spoke with much delicacy and softness, clacking lightly and rapidly with their tongues both before and while they pronounced their words. Their complexion was brown, but by no means inclining to black, being

ing more like that of a sun-burnt European. The apparent brownness of their complexions, in fact, proceeded more from the great quantity of stinking grease with which they besmeared themselves than from nature. The girls were fond of smoking tobacco, which they did with a pipe so short, that the bowl of it came close to their lips. Their hair is of a singular nature, being quite black, and twisted up together like short wool, so as to resemble the nap upon frieze, the interstices between each lock being quite bare.

On my return to the Cape, I saw, towards the end of June, a body of Hottentots, men, women, and children, to the number of nine and fifty, brought up about one hundred and fifty miles from the interior part of the country, where they had committed various acts of violence against the colonists. They had been taken by a Hottentot captain, of the name of KEES, in the cleft of a mountain, where they had concealed and fortified themselves against a party of peasants and soldiers ordered out against them, and had for a long time defended themselves, by rolling large stones down upon their enemies. In two villages they had carried off the cattle, killed the inhabitants, plundered the houses, and taken possession of several fire-arms. They did not deny their crimes,

but asserted that they acted so in their own defence, the Europeans making every year fresh encroachments upon their lands and possessions, and forcing them continually farther up into the country, whence they were driven back again by the other Hottentots, or else killed. These Hottentots were *Bosbiesmen*, of a dark brown complexion, some of whom were naked, wearing only a band round their waists, which covered the pudenda before. Others wore, hanging loose over their shoulders, a sheep's skin, the ends of which scarcely met before, the upper part going, like a calash, over the head. The women had their little ones hanging behind on their shoulders; and girls eleven or twelve years of age had already children. The women were adorned with ear-rings, and broad rings of metal round their wrists. Their mouths and cheek-bones were very prominent, so that they bore the strongest resemblance imaginable to apes. After these Hottentots had been confined for some time at the Cape, they lost their colour, and became almost white.

On the 28th of June, the Javanese here celebrated their new-year. For this purpose they had decorated an apartment in a house with carpets, that covered the cieling, walls, and floor. At some distance from the farthest wall an altar was

was raised, from the middle of which a pillar rose up to the ceiling, covered with narrow slips of gilt paper and silk alternately: from above, downwards, ran a kind of lace between the projecting edges. At the base of this pillar were placed bottles with nosegays stuck in them. Before the altar lay a cushion, and on this a large book. The women, who were all standing or sitting near the door were neatly dressed, and the men wore night-gowns of silk or cotton. Frankincense was burned. The men sat cross-legged on the floor, dispersed all over the room. Several yellow wax candles were lighted up. Many of the assembly had fans, which they found very useful for cooling themselves in the great heat necessarily produced by the assemblage of a great number of people in a small space. Two priests were distinguished by a small conical cap from the rest, who wore handkerchiefs tied round their heads in the form of a turban. About eight in the evening the service commenced, when they began to sing, loud and soft alternately, sometimes the priests alone, at other times the whole congregation. After this a priest read out of the great book that lay on the cushion before the altar, the congregation at times reading aloud after him. I observed them reading after the Oriental manner, from right to left, and imagined it to be

the Alcoran that they were reading, the Javanese being mostly Mahometans. Between the singing and reading, coffee was served up in cups, and the principal man of the congregation at intervals accompanied their singing on the violin. I understood afterwards, that this was a prince from Java, who had opposed the interests of the Dutch East-India Company, and for that reason had been brought from his native country to the Cape, where he lives at the company's expence.

On the 30th of June I visited *Paradise*, and other farms belonging to the company, and situated below *Table Mountain*. *Rondebosch* is a villa belonging to the governor. On this eastern side, along *Table Mountain*, the south-east wind does not blow so hard as at the Cape, for which reason also both trees and shrubs grow here. Among other trees, the pine (*pinus sylvestris*) was conspicuous by its elegant crown. Wild vines (*wilde druiven, vitis vitifera*) made a distinguished figure at this time with their red berries, which resembled cherries, and were eatable.

In the beginning of July, I set out on an excursion on foot, for a few days, to *Constantia* and the neighbouring farms. In some places rivulets ran across the road between the vallies down from

from the mountains, and at this time they were difficult to pass.

Ferruginous stones (*eiser klippen*), or stones containing iron, were found here, as well as nearer to the Cape.

I observed the clouds to be driven in contrary directions, the lower clouds coming from the south-east, and the upper being carried towards the same quarter.

The domestic animals, which otherwise are kept in the open air throughout the whole country, were here sheltered under a shed, that was open in the front.

On my return to town, I had the opportunity of seeing a Chinese burial. In their burying-ground at a short distance from the city, small ratans are stuck up, fastened together with cotton-thread, so as to form an arch or a vaulted roof over the tomb.

In a large hog that was killed, were found several round worms (*lumbrici*), which was said to be a common case here with these animals.

*July the 21st*, I took a walk to *Paarl* and *Stellenbosch*.

From the Cape the horizon, on the land side, appears bounded by high mountains, that stretch across the whole country. The plain between the Cape and these mountains, which is one day's journey long, is for the most part an



uncultivated tract of sand, and destitute of water, which for the most part is no where to be met with but near the smaller scattered hills, which lie about as it were insulated, and without any very evident connexion with each other. A traveller who has not been provident enough to bring water with him, has no other resource for assuaging his thirst in this burning heat, than strictly to examine, whether any black shepherds are to be found attending their master's flocks in the neighbourhood, who may either have water themselves, or may be able to inform him where to find it. In the winter season, however, on account of the frequent rains, large tracts of this plain lie under water.

The name of *kapock-bird* was given to a very small bird, that forms its nest (which is as curious as it is beautiful, and is of the thickness of a coarse worsted stocking) from the down (*pappus eriocephali*) of the wild rosemary-tree (*wilde rosmarjn*).

In the months of April and May the seed is put into the ground; but in June and July the earth, which often has lain fallow for several, sometimes ten, twelve, and fifteen years, is ploughed up. The larger bushes are previously pulled up by the roots, and the smaller ones left for the plough; all the bushes are then collected

collected, and burnt on the field, which are richly manured by the ashes.-- The spots on which the combustion has been performed, always produces a thicker and more luxuriant grass than usual; so that such places are easily distinguishable in a meadow by the high tufts of grass. The wheat here was said to yield, in general, at the rate of eight and ten, but frequently fifteen, twenty; and twenty-five to one; whereas in many other places again, the produce is still more abundant. I was even told, that at one farm, fourteen bushels of seed had produced about fifty-five quarters of grain.

The *ant-eater*, or *aardvarken* (*myrmecophaga*), digs large holes in the earth, in which in the day time he lies secure from his enemies. The country was full of such holes. This animal was said to be so strong, that several oxen together would not be able to drag it out of its retreat. It digs very expeditiously. The flesh of it is eaten, and especially the hams, when hung up and dried. It lives on several sorts of ants, especially the large red ones, which build their hillocks of clay, and are very common, increasing every year.

The daughters of the colonists are sometimes with child by their fathers' black slaves. In this case, in consideration of a round sum of money, a husband is generally provided for the girl, but  
the

the slave is sent away from that part of the country.

Hospitality is carried to a great length among the farmers throughout all this country, inso-much that a traveller may, without being at any expence either for board or lodging, pass a longer or shorter time with these people, who with the greatest cordiality receive and entertain strangers. On the contrary, a stranger finds it very dear living in town, where he is obliged to pay at least a dollar, if not a dollar and a half per day, for his board and lodging.

The farmers in general make four regular meals a day, viz. breakfast at seven, dinner at eleven, their afternoon's luncheon at four, and supper at eight.

A soldier here is not at liberty to marry, lest, as in this case he must live with his wife out of the citadel, he should run in debt in the town, and, in consequence of this, incur the usual punishment, which is transportation to Batavia. Nevertheless, it would be much better that a soldier or corporal should be at liberty to marry, and, receiving his pay, do his duty, and on those days when he is exempted from duty, earn his livelihood by teaching, or by some trade; and, although many, as daily experience evinces, for want of this regulation, fall into bad courses, and ruin themselves by connexions with black women;

women; not to mention, that a married soldier, in case of a war supervening, always fights for his country, his wife and children, with greater courage and spirit than another; yet, in defiance of reason and common sense, all such men are obliged to quit the service and become free citizens. This freedom, however, they do not obtain but on condition of entering again into the company's service, if necessity should require, and this in the same capacity as that in which they left it.

Though the town is entirely under the company's jurisdiction, and consequently is subject to the governor and fiscal; yet, in what concerns the management of its particular affairs, it has its own mayor and aldermen, with other necessary officers.

The burghers, both in the town and throughout the whole country, are enrolled as militiamen for the defence of the colony, being divided into several companies of foot and horse, and commanded by officers from among their own body. They meet every year to do their exercise, and in the town they go upon the municipal guard, &c.

The dead are buried without either clergyman, prayers, or the ceremony of throwing earth on the body.

The

The ceremonies of marriage and baptism must always be performed in the church; private baptism, in case of necessity, not being suffered.

Slaves are very seldom enfranchised: the free blacks are not permitted to go upon the municipal guard; but in time of war they are obliged to throw up batteries with their spades, which are their weapons. They are commanded, however, by one of their own body. The slaves, whom each master of a family must drive before him out of his house himself when required, against the enemy, are also formed into companies. The burghers, as well as the servants of the company, are then stationed each at his post. All the civil officers are stationed within the castle, and others at the batteries in different places.

In the *month of August* the winter drew near to its end, and the fields began to be decorated with flowers; it therefore now became necessary for me to think of such preparations as would be useful and requisite for me in my approaching long journey into the interior part of the country, a journey, relative to which a promise had been given me, that I should make it, in a great measure, at the company's expence.

I therefore provided myself with necessary clothes, as well as with boxes and bags, for collecting

lecting roots and seeds, with boxes and pins for insects, a keg of arrack for preserving serpents and amphibious animals, cotton and boxes for stuffing and keeping birds in, cartridge-paper for the drying of plants, tea and biscuits for my own use, and tobacco to distribute among the Hottentots, together with fire arms, and a large quantity of powder, ball, and shot of various kinds. Shoes for the space of four months were no inconsiderable article in this account, as the leather prepared in the Indies, is by no means strong; besides, that it is quite cut to pieces, or soon worn out, by the sharp stones that occur every where in the mountains.

My equipage consisted of a saddle-horse; a cart covered with sail-cloth, like an ammunition-waggon, and three yoke of oxen, by which it was to be drawn through the whole of the journey. My travelling companions were **AUGE**, the gardener, who had before made eighteen journies of different lengths into the country, and was now to be my sure and faithful guide; **M. IMMELMAN**, a youth, the son of a lieutenant in the army, together with **LEONHARDI**, a serjeant, who undertook this tedious journey for the sake of shooting the larger animals and birds; and lastly, two domesticated Hottentots, one of whom was to drive, and the other to lead our oxen.

Every

Every one that travels in this country, performs his journey pretty nearly in the following way. A large waggon, worth from one hundred and twenty to two hundred dollars, and covered with a large tilt of sail-cloth, is commonly drawn by five or six yoke of oxen, which are driven by a man with a long whip, but led through the rivulets and by the farms. The horses are but weak in this part of the world, and find no where in Africa either pasture or water; consequently they cannot be used for long journies. Nor are horses employed for carrying any wares on their backs up to town from the farms that lie near it, but there are some few wealthy persons that now and then put two or three pair of them into a waggon for short journies. Still, however, they are made use of all over the country for riding on. When farmers, that live far down in the country, go up to the Cape, they generally take five or six spare oxen with them, for the purpose of changing cattle in a journey which lasts several weeks. The whip is an instrument which might seem to command respect not only from the oxen, for whose service it is principally destined, but from every one else.

Thus equipped, I set out with my company from the Cape on the *7th of September* for *Jan Befs Kraal*, a small grazing farm belonging to the

the company, and situated by the sea-side, where we arrived at eleven o'clock.

All over the sandy fields the *protea hypophylla* was seen creeping and procumbent, with its leaves standing up erect on each side of it. Near *Eland's Fountain*, (or Elk's Fountain) a plant of this species was seen standing upright like a bush, much resembling the former, but with broader leaves.

We proceeded on our journey till twelve o'clock, when we came to another farm belonging to the company, called *Riet Valley*: afterwards to MOSTERT'S Farm, and lastly, passing by *Brack Fountain* we came to *Groene Kloof* (the Green Valley), a considerable grazing farm belonging to the company, at the distance of eight hours journey from the Cape. In this pleasant place we remained a whole week, as well because we found a great deal to collect here, as because that, in consequence of the refraction of the sun-beams from the burning sand, I was unfortunately attacked with a very violent inflammation in my eyes, which I did not easily get rid of.

The country has indeed been much inhabited and cultivated by the European colonists, but as yet no mile-stones have been set up, nor have the farms and rivers every where received suitable names. The farms are frequently called



after their owners, and the distances between places are measured by the time required to travel over them in a waggon drawn by oxen, which answers pretty exactly to a sea-league per hour. All this occasions travellers a great deal of trouble, and is the cause that I am obliged to call the places, which I passed in my travels, by the Dutch names, by which they are known on the spot.

The sandy and low plains, which we traversed, abounded at this time in bulbous plants, besides others which were now sprung up in consequence of the heavy rains that had fallen during the winter, and which with their infinitely varied flowers decorated these otherwise naked heaths.

The roots (*bulbi*) of the *iris edulis*, when boiled and served up at table, tasted much like potatoes.

The African flowers vary greatly as to colour, especially on the upper part, and are more constant on the under part.

Flamingoes (*phœnicopterus ruber*) were seen in abundance, wading every where in the ponds and puddles, in which were found also ducks and snipes (*scolopax capensis*). In the plains were heard among the bushes the kor-rhaan (*otis*). The *baantje* (a small bird), and deer of various kinds were seen running about, such

such as harte-beests (*capra dorcas*), steen-boks (*capra grimmia*), divers (*capra* —), as well as the stately ostrich, distinguished by its black feathers from its grey females.

A clay, impregnated with sulphur, was shown me, which is to be found near a fountain hard by *Paard Mountain*.

The seed-vessels of a species of *Euphorbia*, pulverized, were used for poisoning wolves.

Here I saw, for the first time, the *oleum Ricini*, or castor oil. The seeds were said to be boiled in water, and the oil is skimmed off as it rises, which is taken, in as large a dose as that of a tea-cup full, for a gentle purge. The leaves of the shrub dried, and applied round the head, were affirmed to be serviceable in the head-ach.

On the 14th, we passed *Oranie Fontein*, or *Orange Fountain*, and *Uyle Kraal*, or the *Owl's Kraal*, in our way to *Thé Fontein*, or *Tea Fountain*, a journey of six hours; and afterwards passing by *Elk's Fountain* (Eland's Fontein), got to *Saldabna Bay* the next day.

The farmers on this side of the Cape have neither vineyards nor much arable land, but instead of these plenty of cattle. Butter is made here every day, in a churn like a pump; and the butter-milk, excellent as it is, is thrown out to the calves and dogs. Indeed, they scarcely

allow their milk to cream beforehand. As to household furniture, they were in great want of it.

We left our saddle-horses at a farmer's house ; after which we crossed the harbour in a vessel to the Company's Post, where we staid several days.

Here was plenty of game, consisting of antelopes, ducks, and other animals.

The expressed juice of the sow-thistle (*sonchus oleraceus*) was used for cleansing and healing ulcers.

The black juice of the cuttle-fish (*sepia*) mixed up with vinegar, was used for making ink. This animal has real eyes, consisting of a cornea, choroidea, and a crystalline lens, with all the humours usually found in the eye.

Among the servants I found ELISAEUS HYPHOFF, who was in the capacity of a cook here, and was the son of M. HYPHOFF, director of the bank in Stockholm.

The *albuca major* grew in this neighbourhood tall, straight, and elegant. Its succulent stalk, which is rather mucilaginous, is chewed by the Hottentots and other travellers, by way of quenching their thirst.

There were a great many sand-banks in the harbour, which were seen at low water.

Grass grew on the islands in abundance ; but there were neither sheep nor oxen in them.

While I was botanizing, I found a dead tiger near the shore. He had probably been eating some poisonous plants, and afterwards went in quest of water, before he fell down.

On the islands without and round about *Saldabna Bay*, seals (*phoca*) were caught in abundance, from the blubber of which a good and useful oil was prepared. The skins of the smaller sort of these animals are used only for shooting-bags and tobacco-pouches. The large seals, I was told, would weigh fourteen or fifteen hundred weight. With respect to these creatures, a disagreeable accident had happened here lately: a soldier was sent out to shoot them, and having wounded one of them, which lay as though it were dead, he went to open a vein in order to draw off its blood, as the oil is supposed to be the better for this operation, when on a sudden the seal caught hold of his hand, which the soldier pulling back in haste, his thumb was bitten off, and the tendon drawn out to a great length.

From *Saldabna Bay* we returned to *Thé Fontein*, and at a farm there had an opportunity of seeing with what dexterity the peasants perform the castration of their oxen, fifty of which, two years old, and one at three years, went through this operation in one evening. The cord of a whip was fastened round the horns, and a rope round one of the hind-legs. The animal being

by this means thrown down on one side, its four legs were tied together. They then cut with a knife on the exterior side through all the integuments quite to the testicle; after this they laid hold of the testicle and scraped the funiculus, continually twisting it at the same time, till the testicle came away.

Great complaints were made of the feed-vessels of the *rumex spinosus* (*dubelties*), which grew very common here, as the sharp prickles of them cut the feet of the slaves and others, who walked bare-footed.

In wet years, the *pharnaceum mollugo* (*muggekruid*) grows copiously here, and is said to make the cattle, that feed on it, very fat.

Difficult as it is to come within reach of it, we at last shot a *korbaan*, a bird which in its flight cries *kok-karri*, *kok-carri*.

The *secretary bird* (*falco secretarius*), made its appearance frequently, with its beautiful head and long legs; it runs very fast, and lives on the serpents it catches. I was told, that its young are not reared without difficulty, as they are very apt to break their legs. Yet I saw at *Constantia* an old bird that was tame. They lay two or three eggs, and are said to build their nests with twigs upon bushes. They are almost always found solitary, and in no great abundance.

The black berries of a bush called *Kraijebosch*, or crow-bush, were greedily devoured by the crows at the Cape.

On the 25th, we left Thé Fontein, and ferried over *Berg-Rivier* (Mountain River).

The root of Anise (*anys wortel*) was eaten here roasted, and tasted well; it is either roasted in the embers, or boiled in milk, or else stewed with meat. The farmers sometimes make their slaves dig up a large quantity of them, which they sell in town.

The root of the *gatagay* is likewise roasted in the embers and eaten, but has a bad and disagreeable taste.

Wherever we went, we observed a black-beetle (*trichius laticollis*) occupied the whole day throughout in rolling large balls of dung with its hind-feet, and constantly going backwards. With its fore-feet it digs large holes in the sand, and also throws the sand on one side with its scutellum. It probably lays its eggs in these balls, which it afterwards buries in the sand. More than once we observed two of the insects here spoken of assisting each other in rolling away one of these balls.

The oats brought hither from Europe are now looked upon as the worst of weeds in this country, as the grains are easily shaken out of the ears by the violence of the winds that pre-

vail here, and sowing themselves, choak up all the other corn. It is to no purpose to lay a piece of land so spoiled fallow for several years, for when the field comes to be ploughed up, the oats, having lain unhurt in the ground, shoot up afresh.

They gave the name of nightingale (*nachtigall*) to a bird, which in its notes and gestures imitated several other birds.

The oppblazers (*pneumora*) a kind of grasshopper, were caught in the evening. After sun-set they begin to make a singular noise, by rubbing their barbed hind-legs against their empty and transparent stomach. It was supposed that this sound was heard at a great distance. As I perceived that these, like many other nocturnal insects, were fond of light, I ordered a large fire to be made in the field, near which they were caught, while they were marching up to it. Their whole body is, as it were, a bladder, and so empty, that these creatures cannot be carried about stuck through with a pin, like other insects.

Nests of finches (*loxia*) made of the stalks of grass, curiously interwoven, hung on the branches of trees over ponds, with a long and narrow neck, by which the bird used to enter. This neck prevented the birds of prey from getting at the young ones, and the water, over which the  
nest

nest hung on low shrubs and bushes, kept off foxes and other beasts of prey.

The cattle were liable to various grievous distempers, of which they sometimes also died.

The bloody sickness (*blaar* or *bloodziekte*) is a disease of the cattle, in which the veins all over the body are extremely turgid. Letting of blood and violent exercise were said to be serviceable in this distemper. The flesh of such beasts as die of it, is not eatable.

The spongy sickness (*sponsziekte*) begins in this manner; first a foot swells, and then by degrees the whole body. This disorder sometimes lasts three days, but at other times proves fatal in a few hours. If the foot is taken off immediately, the creature's life may be saved. The flesh of such an animal likewise is not eatable. This distemper, in my opinion, can proceed from no other cause than the bite of some serpent, a kind of reptile, which, in this warm quarter of the globe, is but too common.

The lame distemper (*laamziekte*) is, when the cattle are unable to stand. It comes on gradually, and is slow in its progress. After the death of the animal the bones of its legs are found to be quite empty, and without marrow; instead of which they are filled with water.

The horned cattle, as well as horses, are afflicted with the strangury, or a retention of their



urine, after feeding on the *euphorbia genistoides*, which contains a milk that does no injury to the stomach and bowels, but corrodes the bladder, and especially obstructs the urinary passages. If the penis is pressed, this viscid matter is squeezed out. The peasants therefore either press it out, or with a straw push it back again. When the cattle are supplied with good and fresh water, this disease cannot get the upper hand; but in summer, when the water is thick and impure, so that it cannot dilute the peccant matter, the cattle die.

On the right side of Groote Berg-rivier (or great Mountain-river) was seen *Ribeck-castle*, which is a high and large solitary mountain; and to the left, *Picket-berg*. We passed by the *Honing-bergen*, and in the evening arrived at a farm belonging to one GRILING.

On the 26th we crossed the river called *Four and twenty river*, and came to the farm of *Arnhem*, from thence to little *Mountain-river*, and farther through *Roode zands-kloof* (*Red sand valley*) to *Wafersland* or *Roode Zand*. The cleft, through which we passed from the sandy plain, that lies low towards the Cape, but gradually rises till it comes to *Roode Zand*, is one of the few chasms left by the long ridge of mountains, through which it is possible for a waggon to pass, though, perhaps, not entirely without danger.

In

In some places it was so narrow, that two waggon could not pass each other. At such narrow passes as this, it is usual for the drivers to give several terrible loud smacks with their long whips, which are heard at the distance of several miles, so that the waggon that arrives first may get through unimpeded, before another enters it.

As soon as we had passed the mountains as far as to Roode zand, the country appeared much higher than the side from which we came. At one end this country is bounded by high mountains, called *Winter-boek* (or Winter-corner) because their tops, almost the whole year throughout, are covered with snow; at the other end it is open, with a range of mountains projecting into it, and forming an angle, called *Mostertsbok*, and grows wider and wider the nearer it approaches to the south.

We took up our lodging with a man of the name of DE VET, a descendant of one of the French families, which came with the first colonists that settled in this part of Africa, to lay out vineyards, and plant fruit-trees.

*Tintirinties* is a name given to a species of *Ornithogalum*, with a white flower, from the sound it produced, when two stalks of it were rubbed against each other.

In order to give our cattle time to rest a little, and, in some measure, recover their lost flesh,

we passed almost a fortnight at this agreeable place, during which time we had the opportunity of drying the plants and seeds we had already collected, and of visiting all the hills and mountains in the environs.

On the 28th, therefore, we set out on an excursion across the cataract and the mountains, to a fadler's, named SWIEGER, and the next day went on to a man of the name of OLIVIER, with whom we left our horses, and ascended the mountain on foot.

On the 1st of October, we made an excursion over *Mount Wissen*; on the other side of which was a tract of land, or rather a cleft in the mountain, narrower than *Roode zand*, but about four times higher. From this eminence, *Table mountain*, near the Cape, was seen; and by reason of the coldness of this place, and the backwardness of the summer, the plants flowered here at least one month later, than in other parts of the country. Snow frequently falls here to the height of three feet, which lies several days, but higher up on the mountain, a still longer time. Behind this valley, mountains were seen, and behind these, still higher ridges of other mountains, on the other side of which, the *Bokkewelden* or Goat-fields, were said to be situated. In this narrow, lofty, and cold tract of land, there were several grazing farms, but no corn

corn was cultivated there, as this latter commodity could not be transported from thence over the mountains. It took us up a full hour to pass the mountain on horseback.

Being returned to Roode-zand, the much celebrated Snake-stone (*Slange-steen*) was shown to me, which few of the farmers here could afford to purchase, it being sold at a high price, and held in great esteem. It is imported from the *Indies*, especially from *Malabar*, and costs several, frequently 10 or 12, rixdollars. It is round and convex on one side, of a black colour, with a pale ash-grey speck in the middle, and tubulated, with very minute pores. When thrown into water, it causes bubbles to rise, which is a proof of its being genuine, as is also, that if put into the mouth, it adheres to the palate. When it is applied to any part that has been bitten by a serpent, it sticks fast to the wound, and extracts the poison; as soon as it is saturated, it falls off of itself. If it be then put into milk, it is supposed to be purified from the poison it had absorbed, and the milk is said to be turned blue by it. Frequently, however, the wound is scarified with a razor, previous to the application of the stone.

I was informed that the Hottentots, when bitten by a serpent, immediately go in search of a road, with which they rub the wound, and thus effect a perfect cure. They have also the art of extracting

extracting the poison, by causing another person to apply his mouth to the wound, and suck it, after scarifying the flesh all round it with a knife.

A serpent (*Coluber* scut. adb. 197. squam. caudal. 124) was found here, called the *Boom-slang*, or (tree-serpent) on account of its being frequently found in trees. The length of it was eight feet; *supra totus fuscus, squamis linea elevata carinatis; subtus totus flavescens.*

The *tulbaghia alliacea* (wilde knofflook, or wild garlic) the root of which smells very strong of garlic, was reported to be a charm for serpents.

With the poison of serpents, and the juice of the *Sideroxylum toxiferum* (gift-boom, or poison-tree) the Hottentots poison their arrows, which they use against antelopes and wild buffaloes, as also against their enemies.

The scrota of sheep are sometimes served up at table, roasted, and tasted very well, but were apt to rise on the stomach.

The *aponogeton distachyon* (waater uynties, or water lilies) grew in many places, in shallow puddles of water, very plentifully, and from its white flowers that floated on the water, exhaled a most fragrant odour. The roots roasted, were reckoned a great delicacy.

*Cucumbers*, which were cultivated in the gardens, were served up at table, by way of dessert, being

being pickled first in salt water, and afterwards in vinegar, with Cayenne pepper.

From a decoction of the *solanum nigrum* (or deadly nightshade) and the *sonchus oleraceus* (or sow-thistle) which were found growing wild near almost every farm-house, were formed, with wax and lard, some excellent salves, for healing of wounds and ulcers of all kinds, remedies which were as common as they were approved.

The swallows (*hirundo rustica*) were now, in the months of September and October, extremely busy in the mornings and evenings in building their nests, and that in the very houses of the farmers, the doors of which are seldom shut; sometimes, though very seldom, they fix their habitations in the clefts of rocks. They build their nests here of clay, which they work up with their bills, and carry in small scraps to their habitations, which thus become daily more round and complete. The swallows, which constantly return hither at this time, migrate every year from hence, as they do in Europe, without the country people being able to ascertain whither they retire during winter.

A report that was very general at Roo-de-zand, struck me with the greatest astonishment, and excited my curiosity in the highest degree. The inhabitants all assured me with one voice, that there was a bush to be found on the mountains,

on which grew various wonderful products, such as caps, gloves, worsted stockings, &c. of a substance resembling a fine plush. I importuned almost every body in the neighbourhood to procure me, if possible, some of these marvellous products, and I resolved not to leave the place till I should have unriddled this mystery. In the course of a few days, I had several of the leaves brought me down from the mountains, which were covered with a very thick shag or down (*tomentum*) and very much resembled white velvet. The girls, who were used to the management of these leaves, began immediately, with singular dexterity and nicety, to strip off this downy coat, whole and entire as it was, without rending it. After it had been taken off in this manner, it was turned inside outwards; when the green veins of the leaf appeared on one side. Accordingly, as the leaf was more or less round or oval, divers of the above-mentioned articles were formed out of it, the shape being now and then assisted a little by the scissars. The stalks of the leaves furnished stockings and ladies' fingered gloves; the smaller leaves, caps. So that the matter was not quite so wonderful, as it was wonderfully related. But in the mean time, it remained still for me to find out to what plant these leaves belonged, and this forced me to climb up myself the highest summits of the mountains,

mountains, where they grow. The plant, indeed, was not scarce in those places, but it cost me a great deal of trouble before I could find one in flower, or in seed, and when I did, I was convinced that this plant belongs to the genus of *bupleurum* (*bupleurum giganteum*). The downy coat, resembling fine wool, being well dried, was also used for tinder, and answered the purpose extremely well.

Röode-zand has a fine church, and its own appropriate minister. To this parish, all who live farther down in the country must necessarily belong; though they scarcely come more than once a year up to church, on which occasion they generally bring their children with them to be baptized.

On the 6th, having made here a fine collection of plants, birds, and seeds, and our cattle being perfectly refreshed, we left this beautiful spot, and penetrated into the country over several rivers, such as *Hartebeest's rivier*, (where we took up our lodging for the first night with MICHAEL DE PLOI), *Hex rivier*, *Breede rivier*, and so on to *Matties valley* and *Brandsteeg*, and crossing *Mattjes kloof*, arrived at the house of PETER DE WETT, near the hot bath, where we rested a day for the sake of using the bath, and of visiting the neighbouring mountains.

Before



Before we reached DE FLOR's house, near *Hartebeest's rivier*, we passed by a mountain, called *Slangenkop* (serpent's head), which may, perhaps, be considered as the most remarkable in its kind. It stands separated from the other ridges of mountains, like a large solitary rock, and is not very high. On one side of it is a large and deep crevice, which makes this rock remarkable, as every autumn almost all the serpents of the neighbourhood creep into it, and assemble together, in order to remain there secure and unmolested, during their torpid state. Towards summer, when the heat begins to set in, serpents of many different kinds, and frequently coiled up together in large knots, are seen coming out from this hole, in order to spread themselves afterwards all over the fields, each to its respective place of abode, and, by means of proper food, to recover the flesh which they have lost in this retreat.

The *colutea vesicatoria* bruised, was used in diseases of the eyes. The *pyrus cydonia*, (or *quince-tree*), grew here, being planted out for hedges.

The *Hot-bath* has its source at the foot of the mountain, on the east side of the ridge, in a sandy soil. The springs are seven in number, one of which is very large, compared with the others. The second or uppermost, is of a middling size, to the southward of which the first is situated, and the third close by it. Below these

these is a fourth, and the fifth is situated a few yards farther off, and between these two the sixth, which does not spring up in any one regular place, but bubbles up alternately out of several places. The lowermost is the largest, and boils with great force. The water is quite boiling hot, so as even to be fit for scalding animals in. The smoke is seen to rise as it were out of a pot boiling over the fire, and continues so to do in the stream that runs down from it, to the distance of two musket-shots. The sides and bottom of the channel have no sediment; but a green conferva grows in it. The stones that lay in the channel, and at this time were elevated a little above the surface of the water, were nevertheless covered with a grey coat, and in the channel a soft stone was found, which might be scraped with a knife, and was used instead of chalk. A piece of blue woollen cloth did not change its colour in the water, neither did blue sugar-paper, a sign that the water contained no acid. By sugar of lead it was no otherwise affected than that it acquired the colour of milk, and with powder of Peruvian bark it became rather brown. The vein runs always equally strong, without increasing or diminishing; yet the water was said to be hotter in summer. Linen may be washed in it, without being coloured by it, and meat may be boiled in

the usual manner in the bath itself, without acquiring any disagreeable taste; all which proves the purity of this water.

From the springs, the water, in running down, gathers together into several cavities of different sizes, in which people may sit down to use the bath. Over two of these pits small huts were erected for the convenience of the company; and to these cold water could be brought at pleasure from a stream that ran down from the mountains. Indeed, it would be too venture some to go alone into this bath; as the heat of the water, which increases the palpitation of the heart, drives the blood into the extremities, and the veins of the lower parts of the body, which are in the bath, become so expanded, that the blood is derived in too great a quantity from the head, and one is in danger of falling into a swoon in a quarter of an hour. Sometimes both nausea and vomiting supervene.

Among the invalids, who were here at this time for the benefit of their health, were two who had a peculiar claim to our pity. The one was a countryman, who had a malignant ulcer in his stomach, in consequence of being gored by a mischievous ox: he could not take any thing into his stomach except a very small quantity of the bath water, as he vomited continually. The other was a slave, who had a large fleshy

fleshy excrescence on his right shoulder, which had pushed the arm out of joint before; this was occasioned by a smart blow on the shoulder-blade, that he had received by a fall.

The *mesembryanthemum edule* grew here in abundance, and especially in the sandy plains, and was called Hottentots figs (*Hottentots vygen*) the fruit when ripe and peeled, tasting tolerably well; it varies greatly in the colour of its blossoms, which are sometimes red; at other times, carnation, yellow, or white.

On the 9th of October we passed over *Maurice's Heights* to *Korée*. From this hill the mountain, in one of its sloping sides, was seen to consist of slate (*schistus scriptura candida*) in laminas, but very brittle and unfit for writing upon. On the other side of this eminence were seen also the *Carrow Plains*, which are very dry, sterile, and bare of grass, being covered with a great number of succulent plants only, and bushes.

The prickly bush of the *arduina bispinosa* now bore ripe berries, which were said to be eaten by the Hottentots.

I had here an opportunity of seeing the same operation performed upon a great number of lambs, as I had before seen done with respect to oxen: the farmer himself castrating them with a small knife, with which he laid open the scro-

tum. The testicles then were drawn out successively, and very dexterously separated.

In this place, where the farms stand closer together than elsewhere, the sheep were marked, and particularly in the ears. When it rained any great length of time, the sheep grew stiff, and some of them died. In consequence of this, they were also attacked with the dropsy (*ascites*), which the peasants cured by tapping them in the belly.

The sheep are sometimes shorn in this country, though the wool is seldom made use of; but the sheep-skins are frequently given to the slaves unshorn.

The *zygophyllum morgsana*, a handsome shrub, now adorned the hills with its blossoms, and appeared to be very proper for arbours.

A place or fold, where sheep as well as horned cattle were inclosed in the open air, was called a *kraal*. This place was always near the house. It was surrounded either by a mud-wall or by very prickly bushes. For the purpose of letting the cattle in or out, an opening was left, before which was placed a gate or door. In these parts, where there was plenty of wood, these *kraals* were inclosed by felled trees, consisting of the *mimosa nilotica* and *arduina bispinosa*, the most prickly of any almost in all Africa.

) Africa. These fences keep off wolves, foxes, and other beasts of prey, as well in consequence of their breadth, as by their prickles.

The *mimosa nilotica*, while it is cutting down, may sometimes happen to fall upon a man, and its prickles to enter deep into his body, on which occasion they may chance to break off, and stick fast in it.

The antelopes eat the leaves of the *mimosa nilotica*, and frequently the prickles of it run into their feet, without doing them any injury.

In the crevices of the mountains a great number of *dasses* (*cavia capensis*) were found, which were generally supposed to have the menstrual flux: and the sand-hills to the right harboured near the summit of their sides a deep white sand, which was driven about by the wind.

In a river, which had a small creek, and in this a deep hole, I saw in miniature the manner in which Nature forms whirl-pools, or *maelstroms*. Above the hole, the froth and other impurities were carried round in a direction contrary to that of the current, and were drawn down in the centre.

On account of the flooding of the rivulets we were obliged to remain here a few days; and from hence we took our route on the 14<sup>th</sup> over the river *Koree*, which we crossed twice, and afterwards passed over *Sand River*, which

is frequently dried up, to *Riet Fontein* (*Reed Fountain*) and farther over CLAS VOGT's *Rivier* to a farm which at this time belonged to one LE ROUX.

The *viscum capense*, a parasitic plant, was seen disseminated every where on the branches of trees (especially of the *rhus*) by means of its berries, which the birds are fond of.

On the 15th, passing by GERT's house, we crossed a very deep river, in our way to PHILIP BOTA's: and went from thence past DROSKI's house to JACOB BOTA's.

Here they showed me a specimen of cat-silver (*mica argentea*) found in the mountains, which was mixed with a transparent and irregularly crystalized calcareous spar; as also a kind of bitumen, which the country people were pleased to call *desses-p*—; supposing it to be the inspissated urine of the great mountain rat (*cavia capensis*) that is found there. I was informed that this bitumen was to be found in great abundance in the cracks and crevices of the mountain, especially at one large projecting *krants*, or summit. The bitumen was very impure, and known to the country people on account of its great use in fractures.

The branches of the wax-shrub (*myrica cordifolia*) the berries of which are covered with a fat substance resembling bees-wax, were put whole

whole into a pot of boiling water, in order to melt and skim off the wax. It resembles grey impure wax, is harder than tallow, and somewhat softer than wax. The farmers use it for candles, but the Hottentots eat it like a piece of bread, either with or without meat.

On the 17th, passing by *Bruynties Rivier* and *Leeuwe Rivier* (Lion River) we came to *Keureboom's Rivier*, which is so named from the trees (*sophora capensis*) which grow near it in abundance.

An infusion of the root of *asclepias undulata* was used as a remedy for the colic.

*Crystals of gypsum*, which were said to be found in the mountains of Africa, were used for cleansing ulcers, when pounded and sprinkled upon them.

On the 18th we passed *Puspas Valley* and *Rivier*, and arrived at *Zwellendam*, the residence of one of the company's land-drosts, whose jurisdiction extends over all the interior part of the country that lies beyond this spot, and whose office is in some respect, though not absolutely, similar to that of the governor of a province.

The acid berries of the *sagara capensis* were used both here and in other parts of the country in the colic.

After dining with the land-drost, M. MENTZ, by whom we were received with the greatest



hospitality, we continued our journey across the broad river, known by the name of *Buffeljagt's Rivier*, to one of the company's posts, called *Riet Valley* (Reed Valley), where we stayed several days, to arrange the collections we had made, and to repair our wretched carriage, which had been shattered to pieces by the strong and mountainous roads; a cart so small, old, and crazy, that probably nobody, either before or after us, can boast of having made, in such a vehicle, so long and dangerous a journey into this mountainous country.

The plains now began to abound more in grass, and looked something like meadows.—The mountains which had followed us, as it were, all the way from *Roode Zand*, now terminated gradually in large declivities like steps, and hills. In the same proportion, likewise, the herds of cattle became larger, and occurred more frequently; while the vineyards and corn-fields, which, however, were not wanting as yet, grew more and more scarce.

We were told that infectious distempers frequently prevailed among the cattle here, and that the *brandziekte* was not uncommon. It was described as first attacking the lungs and liver, and then the other parts of the body; in consequence of which the flesh became so soft and tender,

)-tender, that there was hardly any cohesion left between the fibres.

Not far from this farm of the company's, which particularly furnishes it with large timber, in a cleft in the mountains, stood a large wood, called *Grootvader's Bosch*, or Grandfather's Wood. To this we made an excursion, with a view of becoming acquainted with the indigenous trees of Africa. After passing by a farmhouse called *Rietkeul*, we arrived at *Duyvenboek's Rivier*, at a spot which had obtained the name of *Helle* (or Hell) on account of the mountain at this part forming a very deep valley. The forest was very thick and lofty, but unfortunately the trees at this season had neither blossom nor fruit on them, to satisfy my curiosity.

*Camassie-bout* was a very fine sort of wood, used for the borders of chests of drawers, and of other pieces of furniture.

*Stink-bout* (stink-wood) which resembles the walnut-tree, is a tall tree, and is used for making writing-desks and chests of drawers.

*Geel-bout*, or yellow wood (*ilex crocea*) is a large tree, the wood of which is very heavy, more or less of a pale yellow colour, and is used for making tables.

A *rock crystal* that was found here was shown to me, of the length of the little finger, and pointed at both ends.

A spe-

A species of pepper (*piper capense*) that was found in abundance in the wood here, was called by the country people *staart pepper* (or tail-pepper) and used by them as a spice.

We left our cart at the company's post, and in the place of it procured a large waggon tilted over with sail-cloth, together with ten fresh oxen, to continue our intended expedition to the Coast of Caffraria.

Not far from this farm there lived a few Hottentots, who were sometimes employed in the service of the farm and the company. They were quite mad after brandy and tobacco, and seemed to place their whole delight in filth and stench. Their bodies were besmeared all over with grease, and powdered with the powder of *bucku* (*diosma*); and to show us respect as strangers, they had painted themselves besides with red and black streaks. The women wore a triangular piece of skin, and the men a bag or pouch, on the fore-part of their bodies, for the sake of decency. Round the neck, arms, and waist, they were decorated with strings of blue, white, red, and motley coloured glass-beads in several rows. Some of them wore rings of iron, brass, or leather round their arms. A sheep-skin thrown over their hips, and another over their back constituted the whole of their apparel. The tobacco-pipe was continually in their mouths. They subsist upon their cattle,  
and

and upon bulbous roots, which they are very ready at finding out and digging up in the fields.

For want of clocks, the colonists always measure time by the course of the sun.

On the 23<sup>d</sup> and 24<sup>th</sup> we passed over *Krakous Rivier*, and *Krakous Heights* (*Krakous Hoogt*) and at noon arrived at *Vett Rivier*, and afterwards crossing this river, passed by several farm-houses.

In these plains the aloe-tree (*aloe perfoliata*) from the leaves of which the gum aloe distils, grew in greater abundance than I ever observed it to do in any other place.

The sheep here were feeding on various poisonous plants, such as the *rhus lucidum*, *lycium afrum*, &c.

On the 25<sup>th</sup> we visited MARTIN LAGRANS, at *Palmit Rivier*, a farmer, who had as many fowls as supplied him with a hundred eggs every day.

From thence crossing *Zoet-melks Rivier* (New-milk River) and passing by *Zwarte Valley*, or Black Vale, we came to a farm called *Wel te Vrede* (Well satisfied) near *Valse Rivier* (or False River).

Hard by *Zwarte Valley*, to the left, the rock plainly appeared to contain iron.

On

On the 27th, passing by *Groote valley*, or the Great valley, and crossing the broad river, called *Goud's river*, we arrived at DANIEL PINARD'S.

Here, we were informed, the *Rabies canina* and *vulpina* had prevailed.

I observed that the peasants here practised a curious method of clearing their poultry-houses from vermin. These houses are constructed of clay, almost like large ovens; and when they are infected with vermin, the owners have nothing more to do, than to put a little straw into them, and set it on fire, in order to be rid of these unwelcome guests.

On the 28th, we passed by a large rock, which, on account of its harbouring bees, has obtained the name of the *Honey-rock* (*Honing klip*) and reached a farm-house, situated near *Attaquas kloof*. The *Honey-rock* yields, at a great distance, a remarkable echo, that repeats several syllables successively, on which account, it was an object of attention to us in this place.

The wood of the olive-tree (*olea capensis*) which was white and very heavy, served to make chairs of.

It is, true, *wheat* was not sown here in great quantities, but the soil was said to be so fertile, and the roots of the thinly sown corn to branch out so much, that every grain always produced several ears. They assured us that they had frequently

quently counted twenty, nay, as far as eighty ears, that proceeded from one root. This I conceived to be scarcely credible, and in order to gain more accurate information on this subject, I undertook to count them myself in the field; when I found, that from one single grain of wheat, a great many ears had frequently sprung up, though the number of those that I examined, did not amount to more than one and forty.

The Hottentots we had hitherto met with in our expedition, had either been brought up by the Europeans, or in the neighbourhood of their farms, and consequently were often much altered from their natural state. Those we visited now, and especially after this period, lived mostly at a greater distance from the Europeans, had sometimes villages and families of their own, and presented themselves to us more and more in a state of nature, that is to say, in the state in which we were desirous of becoming better acquainted with them.

A century ago, it was much easier to search into, and get acquainted with the peculiar manners and mode of living of this people, at which period they dwelt nearer the Cape, were more numerous, and enjoyed their pristine liberty. Now, the way to their abodes is very long, their societies small, their manners and way of life  
much

much altered, and the whole nation under great restraint.

Some of those that lived as servants with the colonists, spoke Dutch tolerably well. When the farmers first settled in this part of the world, they found the Hottentots to be very much afraid of gunpowder and fire-arms, not being able, as they expressed themselves, to form the least idea of their arrows, meaning their balls, of which, after they were shot, they could not discern the flight; nor of their screws, which they could not pull out again, as they could nails.

We heard frequent mention made of a Hottentot, who had died a few years before, and who, in consequence of having been tossed by a wild buffalo, had lost the whole of his lower jaw, notwithstanding which, he had lived twelve or thirteen years after the accident. He could not speak a word; as for his victuals, he pounded them between two stones (which are commonly used by the Hottentots, instead of a pestle and mortar) and then crammed them down his throat with his fingers. He made, likewise, shift to smoke tobacco, by holding his hand over the aperture. At last he had the good fortune to shoot the very buffalo, which had brought this disaster upon him.

The leaves of the *Atrageus visicatoria* were used by the country people in this and other places,  
instead

instead of *cantharides*. Bruised, and applied to any part of the body, in the space of half an hour, they raise a large blister, which keeps open a long time. The root also cut into slices, and applied to any part of the body, draws so powerfully, that if it lies on all night, the sore will keep open for a month. This plant grew chiefly near the precipices of mountains; and is used in rheumatic and other pains.

All along from *Roode-zand*, we had now proceeded nearly due south-east, through a country surrounded on both sides with mountains, of which, the ridge that lay to the right of us was now at an end, without reaching as far as the sea-shore. The ridge we had on our left, stretched still farther on, so that as we wished to penetrate deeper into the country, we were under the necessity of crossing it.

Such a passage may be effected through *Attaquas kloof*, a vale of such a length, that it requires almost a day's journey to pass through it.

On the 29th, we took a resolution to send our waggon this way, with Mr. IMMELMAN, and to make a round on horseback ourselves, through the verdant and woody country of the *Hautniquas*, (which lay to the right of us, and extended quite to the sea-shore) and afterwards to cross the mountains



mountains in another place, and join our waggon in *Lange kloof*.

With this view, passing by *little* and *great Brack-rivers*, we came to *Zout fontein*, a farm, belonging to a man of the name of VIVIER; afterwards we rode through a woody dale, and past a colony, where we saw only a few Hottentots tending the cattle, and at last arrived at *Klein fontein*, or the little fountain, near *Wittel's rivier*.

The following days we continued our journey past two or three colonists' houses, to GEORGE BOTA, at his farm of *Sandvliet*, near *Keerom rivier*, where we rested ourselves a little. In our road we caught a yellow serpent, six inches long, and not venomous, under some stones.

Of the bark of the *Anthyllis*, the Hottentots have the art of making ropes, by means of which they ascend trees, as by a ladder, when they want to get honey out of them. For this purpose, they first tie a noose round the trunk, in which they put one foot, then they fasten another noose higher up, and when mounted in that, untie the former, and so on.

Roads, that can be properly so called, are not to be found in all this southern part of Africa; yet the way which people in general take, when they travel, is pretty well beaten in the neighbourhood of the Cape; farther down in the country

try indeed, very often not the least vestige of a road appears. Therefore in plains that are either very extensive, or covered with under-wood, it may easily happen that a traveller shall lose his way; so that he ought to be well acquainted with, and accurately observe the marks, by which he may get into the right road again. He must see then whether there be any sheep's dung in the fields, which shews that there is a farm-house in the vicinity; and likewise, whether he can discover any herds of cattle grazing, or any corn-field.

The country here, in general, consisted of extensive plains, full of rich pasture, interspersed with hillocks, and valleys, that abounded in wood and water.

The trees in the woods were large and tall, but for the most part crooked and misshapen, and at the same time covered with moss, like those in the northern regions.

The Hottentot women here, wore a little cockle-shell (*nerita bistrio*, and the *cypræa moneta*) by way of ornament, both on their caps, and round their wrists, in the form of bracelets. Their cap is a slip of buffalo leather, of a hand's breadth, without any crown, ornamented on the outside with these shells, in various rows, according to the different taste and wealth of the owner.

The Hottentots of this place had a custom, which is not general with this nation, of wearing a bag of leather, that hung by a strap over their shoulders, quite down on their hips. At the lower end it was ornamented with thongs of leather, like fringes, to which were tied shells, that made a rattling noise. This bag served to keep various articles in.

Other Hottentot women wore on their heads a striped conical cap, made of several narrow slips of black, white, and brown lamb-skins, in their natural state, sewed together. These caps were also, sometimes, decorated with glass beads, fixed on them in various forms, or hanging down, like strings of pearls.

Round their arms and legs they generally wore rings of ox-hides, which I had here the opportunity of seeing made. The slips, cut from the hide, were beaten till they were quite round, and both the ends stuck so fast together, that it could not be perceived where they were joined. These rings they afterwards forced over their feet, wearing, especially the women, such a number of them, as to cover half the leg, or more. I have also sometimes seen them wash, and afterwards grease these rings.

In the eggs of ostriches, as I was informed, a stone was sometimes found, which was set, and used for buttons.

There

There are instances of an European's having married a Hottentot woman; who has then been baptized. But it has more frequently happened; that a colonist, without regular marriage, has had several children by a Hottentot mistress, and that these children have been baptized when they were several years old.

In many places I observed the land to have been set on fire for the purpose of clearing it; though in a very different manner from what is done in the north. Divers plains here, produce a very high sort of grass, which being of too coarse a nature, and unfit food for cattle, is not consumed, and thus prevents fresh verdure from shooting up; not to mention that it harbours a great number of serpents and beasts of prey. Such a piece of land as this, therefore, is set on fire, to the end that new grass may spring up from the roots. Now if any of these places were overgrown with bushes, these latter were burned quite black, and left standing in this sooty condition for a great length of time afterwards, to my great vexation, as well as that of other travellers, who were obliged to pass through them.

Almost every day we were wet to the skin, in consequence of deluging showers of rain, which were sometimes accompanied with thunder. Though at this season they have always fine weather near the Cape, it appeared as if winter

and the rainy season had not yet taken leave of this part of the country. The rain was the more troublesome to us, as, besides that we had no opportunity of getting shelter here, and the short intervals of sun-shine were not sufficient to dry us when wet to the skin; the ground, likewise, especially of the hills, was now so wet and slippery, that our horses, being, according to the invariable custom of the country, unshod, stumbled continually, and in many places we were in great danger of breaking our arms and legs.

On the 2d of November we were overtaken by some remarkably heavy showers, when we crossed *Quaiman's drift*, a river, which like many other rivers here near the sea, rises and falls with the tide; and after passing through several woody vales and rivers, at length arrived at *Magerman's kraal*, a colony or grazing farm, belonging to FREDERICK SEELE.

More weary and wet, or in a worse plight, we never could have been, and worse we could never have been accommodated than at this place. No European dwelt here, but a black female slave, acted in her master's absence as mistress of the house, and had the superintendance over a great herd of cattle, and over the Hottentots that tended them. The house was an oblong cottage, constructed of timber, and daubed all over with clay. In this, I and my companions, with a great

a great number of Hottentots, were obliged to pass the night, happy to have some kind of shelter from the rain, wind, and cold.

As in the course of the few days since we had left our waggon, we had made some collections, and therefore could not possibly stow every thing upon our horses backs, we were under the necessity of taking three oxen from the house above-mentioned, to carry our baggage, and three Hottentots to lead them.

Oxen are much used in these parts, when tamed and broken in by the Hottentots, to carry burdens. These oxen have a hole through the cartilage of their nose, in which is put a stick, at both ends of which are fastened straps, like a bridle, by the help of which the oxen are guided.

In different places we observed pits dug, like those in which wolves are usually caught, and in which, when well covered over by the Hottentots, buffaloes and wild beasts are taken.

The Hottentots always carry a javelin or two (*assagays*) with them on their journeys. These *assagays* consist of an iron-spear hollowed out on each side about six inches long, with or without an iron shaft, which is sometimes round and smooth, and sometimes grooved. This spear is fastened with thongs of leather to a slender round stick, five feet long, made of the *Affagay wood* (*Curtisia faginea*), and tapering towards the end.

With these lances, which they throw with great dexterity to the distance even of 100 paces, they defend themselves against their enemies and wild beasts, and are able to kill with them, buffaloes, and other animals.

Instead of China-vessels and calabashes, poverty had taught them to use the shells of the tortoises, which frequent the bushes in the sandy plains, particularly the *Testudo minuta* and *geometrica*.

From their frequent besmearing themselves, as well as from the heat of the climate, the Hottentot women have always very flabby breasts, that hang down very low. And therefore, at the same time that they carry their infants on their back, they can with the greatest ease throw the breast to them over their shoulder. These in shape and size sometimes very much resembled calabashes; but among the curious sights that attracted our notice in this solitary place, was a Hottentot girl, whose breasts were so long, that they hung down as low as to her thighs, and were the largest that I ever saw among this people.

Here also I learned a curious way of baking bread speedily without an oven. The flour was kneaded up with water in the usual manner to dough, of this afterwards a thick cake was made, which was laid in the embers, and covered with them, so that in consequence of the heat communicated

municated to it, it was soon thoroughly baked; but the ashes that adhered to it made it so dirty, that they were obliged to scrape it before they could eat it.

The Hottentots always sit before the fire, squatted down upon their hams, on which occasion the women constantly lay the covering of their modesty, which here is worn in the form of a square, underneath them. The huts in these parts were formed of wooden stakes, round, and were convex and low, and covered with straw mats, in the form of a hay-stack, with a small aperture in the front, where the fire is made.

At the dawn of day, on the 3<sup>d</sup> of November, we set out again on our journey, and crossed several rivers, such as the *Krakakou*, *Ao*, *Koukuma*, and *Neisena*. The woods we passed through were narrow and full of prickly bushes. We could find no other passage through them than the tracks of the Hottentots, so that we were obliged almost to creep on all fours, and lead our horses by the bridle. AUGÉ, the gardener, having travelled this way before, was now our guide, and we had left the Hottentots with our oxen behind us. In the afternoon we arrived at *Koukuma Rivier*. We forded over one of its branches, and intended to pass through a thicket to a farm which we discovered on an



eminence on the other side of this thicket, belonging to one HELGERT MULLER; but we had not advanced far into the wood before we had the misfortune of meeting with a large old male buffalo, which was lying down quite alone, in a spot that was free from bushes, for the space of a few square yards. He no sooner discovered AUCE, who went first, than roaring horribly he rushed upon him. The gardener turning his horse short round, behind a large tree, by that means got in some measure out of the buffalo's sight, which now rushed straight forwards towards the serjeant, who followed next, and gored his horse in the belly in such a terrible manner, that it fell on its back that instant, with its feet turned up in the air, and all its entrails hanging out, in which state it lived almost half an hour. The gardener and the serjeant in the mean time had climbed up into trees, where they thought themselves secure. The buffalo after this first achievement, now appeared to take his course towards the side where we were approaching, and therefore could not have failed in his way to pay his compliments to me, who all the while was walking towards him; and in the narrow pass formed by the boughs and branches of the trees, and on account of the rustling noise these made against my saddle and baggage, had neither seen nor heard any thing

thing of what had passed. As in my way I frequently stopped to take up plants, and put them into my handkerchief, I generally kept behind my companions, that I might not hinder their progress; so that I was now at a small distance behind them.

The serjeant had brought two horses with him for his journey. One of them had already been dispatched, and the other now stood just in the way of the buffalo, who was going out of the wood. As soon as the buffalo saw this second horse, he became more outrageous than before, and attacked it with such fury, that he not only drove his horns into the horse's breast and out again through the very saddle, but also threw it to the ground with such violence, that it died that very instant, and all the bones in its body were broken. Just at the moment that he was thus occupied with this latter horse, I came up to the opening, where the wood was so thick, that I had neither room to turn my horse round, nor to get on one side. I was therefore obliged to abandon him to his fate, and take refuge in a tolerably high tree, up which I climbed.

The buffalo having finished this his second exploit, suddenly turned round, and shaped his course the same way which we had intended to take.

From the place I was in, and the eminence I had gained, I could plainly perceive one of the horses quite dead, the other sprawling with its feet and endeavouring to rise, which it had not strength to do, and the other two horses shivering with fear, and unable to make their escape; but I could neither see nor hear any thing of my fellow-travellers and companions, which induced me to fear that they had fallen victims to the first transports of the buffalo's fury. I therefore made all possible haste to search for them, to see if I could in any way assist them; but not discovering any traces of them in the whole field of battle, I began to call out after them; when I discovered these magnanimous heroes sitting fast, like two cats, on the trunk of a tree, with their guns on their backs, loaded with fine shot, and unable to utter a single word.

I encouraged them as well as I could, and advised them to come down, and get away as fast as possible from such a dangerous place, where we ran the risk of being once more attacked. The serjeant at length burst out into tears, deploring the loss of his two spirited steeds; but the gardener was so strongly affected, that he could scarcely speak for some days after.

Thus we went back to the very spot from which we set out, and after passing over some very tiresome hills, arrived at the place of our destination;

destination ; but as the serjeant could not cross the river without a horse, I took him up behind me, and after having left him my horse, walked on to the house.

Here my first care was to dispatch some Hottentots to the thicket, to take the saddles off the two horses, which hereafter might be of service. These Hottentots armed themselves with lances, their usual weapons, and informed us that they had before observed that one solitary buffalo haunted that wood, which, as they said, was so spiteful, that he had been driven away from the herd by the other buffaloes, and was obliged to live alone.

No European was to be found in this place, there being none but Hottentots, nor any other but than those which were inhabited by the Hottentots themselves, and which, on account of the vermin they harboured, no European, even in a case of the greatest necessity, could ever think of lodging in.

We were therefore obliged, with a straw mat under us, a saddle under our head, and a fire at our feet, to pass the night in the open air. Fortunately for us, the sky was very clear and serene ; but at the same time the cold was so great, that we could not sleep, being obliged every hour to rise and warm ourselves all over before the fire, for the purpose of making which we had had the foresight to order a sufficient quantity

quantity of logs and brush-wood to be brought to the hut the night before.

Hemp (*Cannabis sativa*) was cultivated here by the Hottentots in a very small inclosure. This is a plant universally used in this country, though for a purpose very different from that to which it is applied by the industrious European. The Hottentot loves nothing so well as tobacco, and with no other thing can he be so easily enticed into a man's service; but for smoking, and for producing a pleasing intoxication, he finds this poisonous plant not sufficiently strong, and therefore in order to procure himself this pleasure more speedily and deliciously, he mixes his tobacco with hemp chopped very fine. It is surprising, that this nation, although, before the arrival of the Europeans it had no intercourse with the rest of the world, and consequently was ignorant of the use of tobacco, should, notwithstanding, become so distractedly fond of this poisonous plant; and that for it and brandy they could be induced to sell to the Dutch a considerable portion of their land near the Cape; a transaction which has cost them so dear, both with respect to their liberty and to the land of their fore-fathers.

On the 4<sup>th</sup> we quitted this place, and in the evening reached PETER PLANT's farm, called *Melkbout Kraal*, near the *Deep River*.

The

The serjeant was obliged to put up with an ox by way of nag for two days, as no horse was to be found hereabouts; this answered tolerably well, though it was very fatiguing, as well on account of the breadth of the ox's back, as because he could use no stirrups.

On the 5th we crossed *Pisang River*, to go to JACOB BOTA's farm, called also *Pisang Rivier*.

This farm, which was entirely a grazing farm, was situated not far from the sea-shore, and a whole society, consisting of more than fifty Hottentots, were here in the service of this farmer, lived in his vicinity, and were supported by him. The harbour here was very wide and beautiful.

The farmer himself was not at home, having set out for the Cape that very day; but an old faithful Hottentot was in the mean time our kind and attentive host, and gave us all necessary assistance.

My two fellow-travellers, not having yet got the better of their terror, and wearied out with the many crosses they had met with in the course of their journey, now resolved here to set bounds at once to their dangers and their curiosity, small as this latter was, and to make the best of their way back from hence to the Cape, where they might get more wine to drink, and be less liable

liable to be frightened by buffaloes. But when I represented to them what a cowardly appearance this would have, and that they had made but a small collection as yet, likewise that we were separated from our waggon, our other fellow-traveller, and the rest of our baggage; adding besides, that though they should accompany me no farther, I was nevertheless determined to pursue my journey, they were at last persuaded to alter their resolution.

However, I let my doleful companions rest here for a few days, while I visited the sea-shore, and the adjacent mountains, which were covered with shrubs and bushes of various kinds, and particularly with the *Arduina bispinosa*, so that in several places they were impenetrable; and in these I was frequently so much entangled, that I was obliged to crawl for a long way on the tops of the stiff bushes, which with their sharp prickles tore my hands and clothes quite to tatters. The bare-footed Hottentot who accompanied me, was so much lacerated and so bloody, as to be a real object of compassion; but in my search after plants, having lost my way in the thicket, we had no other resource left. At the foot of the mountains were flat rocks, on which seals lay sleeping in the sun; a circumstance, whence the mountain has its name of *Robbeberg* (or Seal Mountain.)

It projects a great way into the sea, like a peninsula, and is covered with small sea-shells (*Conch.e.*)

The *Robbeberg* is a singular mountain, and different from any other that I have seen in Africa. Its middlemost stratum is a very firm concretion of round and irregularly-shaped pebbles, and indurated lime, about four fathoms broad. It perfectly resembles a piece of masonry. The uppermost stratum appeared to me to be a brownish rock. The lowermost is sand-stone. On another side of the mountain there is a heap of indurated sand, which the water has scooped holes into. In some places the sand had concreted with clay in a tubular form, and large masses of it had fallen down. The flat foot of the mountain, towards the sea, had various holes in it of different sizes, some of them as round as if they had been turned, and others oblong. On one side, the lowest stratum was a whitish-grey quartz, that was greasy to the touch. The mountain had, moreover, long clefts and crevices, in which hung a number of thick stalactites, covered with a fine down-like substance, which was sometimes quite green. The sand-stone was of a very fine grain.

The *Strelitzia*, with its yellow flowers and blue *nectarium*, grew near this spot, and was one of the most beautiful plants, of which the bulbs  
were



were procured to send to Europe. The Hottentots were said to eat the fruit of it.

The Hottentots were at no great pains in dressing their victuals. Buffalo's flesh was merely cut into slices, and then smoked, and at the same time half broiled in the embers over a few coals; this was eaten without bread, though, perhaps, it was in the first stage of putrefaction.

It is a custom among the Hottentots, that if a cow is barren, she must be killed; but in this case its flesh is eaten by married people only, and not by those that are single.

Grease is the great dainty of the Hottentots, which they are not only fond of eating, but can also drink without finding any inconvenience from it.

The small huts of the Hottentots are at times so full of vermin, both of the hopping and creeping kind, as not to be habitable by them; they are then forced to remove them to another place, a removal which does not take a very long time, neither is it particularly expensive. I have seen it performed with the greatest agility and dispatch. First, a few withies were fixed in the earth, and bent in the form of arches to determine the height of the hut, and give it a rotund figure. These are afterwards covered with rushes, or mats made of rushes, (*Cyperus textilis*) which keep out both wind  
and

and rain. All round the bottom dung is laid, to make the hut tight and close in that part.

*Su Koa* (Potteslaan) was the name given by the Hottentots to a drum they sometimes used to beat to their music. Over a pot with water in it was extended a sheep-skin, which had previously been well soaked, and was tied round the edge of the pot with a leathern thong. The fingers of the left hand being placed near the edge, and the thumb in the middle, they beat with the two first fingers of the right-hand upon the other edge, which produced a dull heavy sound, that had nothing pleasing in it. To this wretched music a Hottentot would dance in the following manner: holding in his right-hand a string fastened to the roof or wall, and remaining on the same spot, he hopped first on one foot, and then upon the other, all the while beating time with them. During this he writhed his body in various curves, and threw his head from one shoulder to the other in a semicircular direction; all the while singing, and all this to a certain modulation. One of these dances will sometimes last a considerable time, and throws the dancer into a violent perspiration. They always wipe the sweat off their faces with a fox's tail.

I observed several things for which the Hottentots had no words in their own language, such as *coffee*, *houfings*, company (*compagnie*).

The women carried their infants on their backs under the sheep-skin, which they call a *krofs*; the child was fastened by a leather strap that went round the mother's and its own neck, and was farther secured by another strap that passed over the *krofs* under its posteriors, the mother all the while attending to her business as usual.

Some of the women here wore strings of glass-beads round their legs, others had the dependent sides of their *krofs* ornamented with beads, which, among other things, they receive of the farmers for their wages. Others had a tortoise-shell hanging at their backs, in which they preserved either their tobacco or bucku (*diosma*). For want of clay tobacco-pipes they use wooden ones.

The farmers themselves, for want of proper vessels, were often obliged to keep their milk and honey in leathern bags.

The fields hereabouts were full of wild buffaloes, so that it was not uncommon to see a hundred or two of them in a herd. They generally lie still in the thickets and woods in the day time, and in the night go out into the fields to graze.

The house in which we were lodged was roomy and large, well constructed of clay, with doors, and with shutters before the window-holes, as glass windows could not be easily procured from so great a distance as the Cape. The whole roof  
in

in the kitchen was hung with thick slices of buffalo's flesh, which, being dried and smoked, they ate as hung-beef.

Buffaloes were shot here by a Hottentot, who had been trained to this business by the farmer, and in this manner found the whole family in meat, without having recourse to the herd. The balls were counted out to him every time he went a shooting, and he was obliged to furnish the same number of dead buffaloes as he received of balls. Thus the many Hottentots that lived here were supported without expence, and without the decrease of the tame cattle, which constitute the whole of the farmer's wealth. The greatest part of the flesh of the buffalo falls to the share of the Hottentots, but the hide to that of the master.

The Hottentots dressed the buffaloes hides in the following manner: the hide was stretched out on the ground by means of stakes, after which warm ashes were strewed over it, and the hair scraped off with a knife or spade.

For want of the shoes usually worn in other places, which could not be procured so far up in the country, and which frequently even the farmers at the Cape cannot afford to buy, they generally wear here what are called field-shoes, which the country people usually make themselves, in a way peculiar to them, for the most

part of buffalo leather, sometimes of neats leather, and sometimes, though more rarely, of the striped hide of the zebra.

It was pleasing to observe with what cordiality the Hottentots, as well those who lived upon the farm, as the strangers who had accompanied us hither, offered each other the regale of the tobacco-pipe. Having set themselves down in a circle, the pipe went from one to the other round the whole company. Each man taking a few large whiffs, at last gets his mouth full of smoke, a small part of which he swallows, and puffs out the remainder through his nose and mouth.

From the woods of *Houtniquas* the peasants, who live near the district of *Muscle Bay*, sell both rough and cut timber, notwithstanding the length and roughness of the road; but from hence the farmers have nothing else to carry to market, except oxen for slaughter, and butter. If any kind of navigation were set on foot either from this coast or from *Muscle Bay*, the carriage would be easier, and the commodities, especially the timber, cheaper; but this has as yet either not been thought of, or else, perhaps, it has not been deemed of any use.

Our crest-fallen serjeant having now in some measure recovered his spirits, and procured the loan of a saddle-horse here, we resumed our journey

journey on the 10th of *November*, travelling up the country, and towards the mountains, in hopes, on the other side of them, of meeting with our waggon, and better fortune. Passing by another farm, belonging to *Boſa*, we went through two rivers to *Malagaſs kraal*; and afterwards proceeded up *Keureboom's rivier* to *Jackall's kraal*.

At *Keureboom's rivier*, *Houtniquas land* terminated on this ſide, a land abounding in graſs, wood, and buffaloes. We farther rode over the mountains, and all along them beyond *Keureboom's rivier* to *PETER JAGER's farm*.

Here we were refreshed, thirsty as we were, with Hottentots ſack-milk, as it is called, which, perhaps, few travellers, unleſs urged by extreme thirſt, will be able to prevail on themſelves to taſte. It is a very acid, cool, and refreshing milk, remarkable as well for the veſſel in which it is kept, as for its great age. I had formerly imagined, that the ſour milk of Norrland (in *Sweden*) which is ſeveral months old, was the oldeſt milk in the world, but I now found that the Hottentots ſack-milk might at leaſt be conſidered as grand-mother to the Norrland milk. The veſſel in which it is kept, is the hide of an antelope (*Eland, Capra oreas*) which is ſewed up cloſe together, and hung up againſt the wall. Other hides were ſaid to be not ſo fit for the purpoſe. In one of theſe ſacks thus hung up, new

milk is put, which turns sour and coagulates. Every day more new milk is poured in, which likewise soon coagulates, as the sack is not cleaned out for the space of several months at least, and frequently not for a year or two.

The Hottentots seldom churn any butter; and when they do, it is only to besmear themselves with. The *Maquas Hottentots* are said to churn in the following manner: new milk is poured into a leathern bag, which two Hottentots holding by the ends, shake the milk in it from one end to the other, till it coagulates.

On the 11th, we passed over the very lofty mountains that lead to *Lange Kloof*, in our way to farmer MATTHEW ZONDAG'S. Watry clouds hung all over the mountains, by the piercing vapours of which, though it did not rain, we were wetted quite to the skin. The sides of the mountain that we passed over, were sometimes so steep, and the path so narrow, that we did not cross it but at the hazard of our lives, and shuddered when we looked down the precipice. The country on the other side, or *Lange Kloof*, was very elevated, in comparison with that from whence we came, and consequently the mountains there were low, when compared with the dreadful height which they exhibited on the other side, towards the sea coast.

At

At this farm they made soap from a ley, prepared from the *Canna bush* (*Salsola apbylla*) which was boiled a long time and inspissated; when mutton suet was added till the mass acquired a proper consistence. It was then poured out, and formed into long squares.

On the 13<sup>th</sup>, we paid a visit to PETER FRERE, a man, who was a great hunter of elephants, and had made long journies, as far as into the country of the Caffres. Among other particulars, he informed us, that the Hottentots cannot count farther than five in their own language.

On the 16<sup>th</sup>, going from this man's farm here, called *Misgunst* (or Envy) on the banks of *Diep rivier* (or the Deep river) we passed by another farm of his, near *Aapies rivier*, in our way to *Klipp-drift*, and afterwards across *Krakeel rivier*, to MATHEW STREIDUNG'S.

Here I saw a great number of tombs, consisting of small heaps of stones. I strictly enquired after their origin, but no European could give me any account of them. An old Hottentot informed me, that the inhabitants of this tract had died of ulcers, in great numbers, which gave me no small reason to conclude, that this place had been well inhabited, and even populous, and that it was the small pox which had made this extraordinary devastation.



On the 17th, after passing PETER NICKERT'S farm called *Onverwagt*, we went over *Waageboom's rivier*, to HENRY KRUGER'S.

The wild Turkey (*Tantalus*) which now began to make its appearance, was said to quit the country during the winter, and to return in the months of September and October.

The *Meloë chichorei*, with its many varieties, devoured the beans, and other products of the gardens.

In *Lange kloof* it is very cold in the winter, and snow falls, just as at the back of *Witsen mountain*.

On the 18th, we arrived at THOMAS FRERE'S, near *Kromme rivier* (or Crooked river).

The country as far as here, gradually sank lower and lower as it proceeded towards the seashore, so that *Lange kloof* was far more elevated than the country about *Kromme rivier*.

On the 19th we arrived at *Essebosch*, a fine forest, in almost a plain and level country. It had rained the whole day, and it continued pouring during the evening and night, so that being wet to the skin, we were under the necessity, four of us, to crouch under the tilt of our waggon, in expectation of better weather in the morning. The Hottentots, who accompanied us, were obliged to take shelter under the waggon, as it was quite impossible to keep up any fire.

On the 20<sup>th</sup>, fair weather and sun-shine; but as we could not get at any dry clothes, we were obliged to let those we had on, dry on our bodies in the sun. We now rode on to *Diep rivier*, *Leuwe bosch rivier*, and so on to *Zee-ko rivier*.

Here we were informed, that lions were sometimes seen in the mountains, and that they had formerly resorted thither in great numbers; but were now mostly extirpated.

The Bread-tree (*Zamia caffra*) is a species of palm, which grows on the hills, below the mountains, in these tracts. It was of the height and thickness of a man at most, very much spread, and single. I have sometimes seen from one root, two or three stems spring. It is out of the pith (*medulla*) of this tree, that the Hottentots contrive to prepare their bread. For this purpose, after scooping out the pith, they bury it in the earth, and leave it there for the space of two months to rot, after which they knead it, and make it into a cake, which, in their usual slovenly and filthy manner, they slightly bake in the embers. I observed that the tree stood in dry sterile places, between stones, and grew slowly.

At *Kromme rivier*, a shell-fish (*Solen filiqua*) was said to be found in holes in the banks, which it is impossible to catch by digging after it; but the

the method of fishing for it was, by running a stake into it, and then drawing it out.

The ridge of mountains, which at *Roode zand* we had on our left hand, and afterwards in *Lange kloof* on the right, and which were continued quite from *Witsenberg*, now terminated here before it reached the sea-shore; whereas the ridges on our left hand were continued farther, and had the *Carrow plains* behind them.

The berries of the *Guarri bush* (*Euclea undulata*) had a sweet taste, and were eaten by the Hottentots. Bruised and fermented, they yield a vinegar, like that made from Pontac.

The *Craffula tetragona*, as being somewhat of an astringent nature, boiled in milk, in the quantity of a handful, is used as a remedy for the diarrhœa.

On the 22<sup>d</sup>, we arrived at JACOB KOCK's, near the mouth of *Sea-cow river*, not far from the sea shore, a man whom we now visited for the second time in the course of our journey.

The interior coat of the stomach of sheep dried, pulverized, and taken inwardly, was said to excite vomiting, and to be serviceable in fevers.

The blood of a hare was asserted to be a cure for the St. Anthony's fire, if rags dipped into it, and then dried, were worn upon the body, but not applied to the part affected.

Many

Many people here likewise concurred in assuring us, that the blood of a tortoise, used externally, as well as internally, was of the greatest service to such as were wounded by a poisoned arrow.

At this place we staid several days, as well with a view to regulate and put in order what we had already collected, as to investigate all the neighbourhood, and likewise to give rest and pasture to our weary and emaciated cattle.

During this time, however, we made a journey on horseback to *Cabeljauw rivier*, and from thence to *Camtour's rivier*, which is very broad and deep, and by which also *Looris rivier* empties itself into the ocean.

Hottentots and Caffres lived promiscuously near this river, as on the frontier of the two countries, the real Caffraria beginning several miles farther up in the country.

The Caffres that lived here, were taller than the Hottentots, more undaunted and valiant, better made, blacker and stronger. They wore round their arms, by way of ornament, rings, either of iron or ivory, and were armed with javelins, which they knew much better how to manage than the Hottentots did. The ivory rings were half an inch in breadth, and they generally wore several of them on each arm.

Their

Their dances were extremely curious. Two or more of them placing themselves side by side, or back to back, balanced themselves on their toes, striking the ground now and then with their heels; during which, they moved every limb, and almost every muscle, especially their eyes, forehead, neck, head, mouth, and chin, keeping time in every motion. The music to this dance was a rough screeking kind of singing, accompanied sometimes with a whistling noise, to produce which, they drew their lips on one side, shewing their teeth, from between which the sound issued. The women kept running about all the while, singing and jumping to the same time, with a continual motion of their head and limbs.

In the tip of one ear they had a hole, in which was stuck a porcupine's quill.

We were shewn here ear-rings of two different shapes, made of copper, mixed with silver, which they said they had obtained from nations living farther up in the country.

Here too we saw baskets wrought by the Hottentots, that were so tight and close, as to hold milk or water. Bottles also made of the bladders of the rhinoceros, were used for the same purpose.

The Caffres, as well as the Hottentots, have in each village, or horde, a chieftain, on whom they

they frequently bestow the appellation of captain, and who is their leader in their hunting expeditions, and against their enemies.

These nations, though destitute of fire-arms, nevertheless kill buffaloes and wild beasts with their javelins, called assagays. When a Caffre has discovered a spot where several buffaloes are assembled, he blows a pipe, made of the thigh-bone of a sheep, which is heard at a great distance. In consequence of this, several of his comrades run up to the spot, and surrounding the buffaloes, and at the same time approaching them by degrees, throw their javelins at them. In this case, out of eight or twelve buffaloes, it is very rare for one to escape. It sometimes happens, however, that while the buffaloes are running off the premises, some one of the hunters, who stands in the way of them, is tossed and killed, which, by the people of this nation, is not much regarded. When the chase is over, each cuts off his share of the game that is killed.

Besides the wild animals they may chance to take in hunting, the Caffres, who inhabit the most delightful meadows that can be imagined, along the coast, possess large herds of tame horned cattle. Their oxen are commonly easy to be distinguished from others, as they cut them in the lower part of the neck, in such a manner, that long slips of skin hang down from it; they likewise

likewise do the same with respect to their ears, and force their horns to grow in various singular forms. The company got formerly from them and the Hottentots, a great number of cattle, fit for slaughter, in exchange for tobacco, brandy, glass-beads, and bits of iron; but now this is seldom the case, although this traffic is prohibited to all the farmers.

The Hottentots, in the service of the colonists, frequently use tobacco-pipes of clay, though these are so short, that the bowl of the pipe comes into contact with their lips. They are short, because in the carriage of them to so great a distance from the Cape, they are apt to break. But otherwise, both Caffres and Hottentots, use a pipe, either made of a long, slender, and hollow stick, with a hole near one end of it, in which is put another hollow stick that is short, and has at top a cylindrical stone, which is hollowed out, and is the bowl that holds the tobacco; or instead of the long stick, an antelope's horn, viz. of the (*Capra oryx*) near the pointed end of which is bored a hole; in this is put a short hollow stick, and upon that the stone bowl. In smoking, they stretch their mouths over the wide end of the horn, and draw in a few large whiffs. The smoke they keep some time in their mouths, and then swallowing a part, puff the rest out again. The pipe then passes

on to the next, and so goes round the whole circle. When strangers come to a kraal or village, they are always treated with the tobacco-pipe, which circulates in due form from one to the other.

The Hottentots had boiling vessels of burnt clay, of their own making.

The beans of the *Guajacum afrum*, though a poisonous shrub, are boiled and eaten by the Hottentots. Their water they keep in the intestines of animals. The women, who carried their children on their backs, gave them suck under their arms, by bending the little creatures heads down to the breast.

Sea-horses (or Sea-cows, *Hippopotamus*) were still to be seen in great numbers in *Camtour's river*; though many of them have been shot of late, and consequently their number has been greatly diminished. The processus mamillaris of this animal was said to be an effectual remedy for the stone and gravel. We wounded indeed several of these huge beasts, but could not kill them; neither did any of them come up the following night, though we staid there till the next morning.

A few Hottentots who had pitched their tent here, for the purpose of consuming a sea-horse that had been shot some time before, lived in the



the midst of such a stench, that we could hardly pass by them without being suffocated.

A great number of the Caffres accompanied us back to *Sea-cow River*, and displayed various specimens of their arts, probably with a view of getting some of our good tobacco, to which they had taken a particular fancy.

We were told here, that a colonist had been bitten in the foot some time before by a serpent, of the species called *Ringbals* (or Ringneck) as he was walking along in the grass barefoot, as is the custom here, in default of shoes and stockings, which the peasants seldom wear, except when they go up to Cape Town or to church. I informed myself accurately of the symptoms produced by the bite. It seems the man was several miles distant from home when he met with this accident. He then immediately dispatched his slave to his house to bring him a horse with all speed, on which he went home, after having bound up his leg tight, in order to prevent the poison from spreading upwards. On his return home he grew so sleepy, that his wife could not without great difficulty keep him awake. He also became quite blind in an instant, and remained so for the space of a fortnight. His leg was swelled to such a degree, that the flesh covered the bandage over, like a sheath, inso-much that it could not easily be removed. An  
incision

incision was made round the wound with a knife, and the foot washed with salt-water. He drank new milk copiously, and that to the quantity of several pails full in a night, but cast it all up again. After this the serpent-stone was applied to the wound. By means of this he gradually recovered; but still, though it is now several years since the accident happened, he has pains in the part on any change of weather, and at times the wound breaks completely out again.

The cattle, which constituted the farmer's wealth in these plains, were subject to several, and those peculiar, diseases.

The *Tung-ziekte* is a disease of the cattle, in which vesicles or bladders break out on the tongue, discharging a thin ichorous matter. In consequence of this distemper the cattle cannot eat, but grow lean, and sometimes die. The farmers are accustomed to rub the bladders off with salt.

The *Klaw-ziekte* is a disease, in which the hoofs of the cattle grow loose, so that they cannot walk. It appears to proceed from the summer heats, especially if the oxen have been driven on journies in the day-time. This distemper is esteemed here to be infectious. It is certain, that it attacks one ox after another successively, so that I have seen whole droves affected with

it; but it seems to me rather to proceed from some common and general cause, than from infection. At first they are lamed by it, and afterwards become unfit for journies. This disease, however, leaves them in general of its own accord in the course of one or two weeks.

I saw some Chinese hogs here belonging to different farmers.

A yellow *Chrysomela* devoured, and did great damage to, the culinary vegetables in the gardens.

In the beginning of *December* we directed our course back again, after we had refreshed our oxen, and visited the country farther up than it has as yet, on that side of the Cape, been inhabited by Europeans.

In our journey up *Langekloof*, I observed at one farm, the no-less convenient than advantageous contrivances of the husbandmen to apply the rivulets that ran down from the mountains, to the watering of their vineyards and gardens. The water is always conducted over these lands in a channel to the more elevated parts, from whence they let down little rivulets or streams between the vines and the beds. When there is no occasion for watering, these streamlets are stopped up with a little earth. By the same methods water was carried to mills, fish-ponds, and other places.

On

On the 6th we returned to MATTHEW ZONDAG's, and on the 7th arrived at *Wolfekraal*; on the 8th, having crossed *Keureboom's Rivier*, we proceeded to *Diep Rivier*, and on the 10th came to *Gans Kraal* (Goose Kraal). Behind the low mountains lay *Camenassie Land*.

The sickles for reaping corn were jagged at the edge like a saw.

The *Lycyperdon carcinomale* grew here on the ant-hills, the brown powder of which was said to be used in cancers.

On the 10th we came to *Ezelsjagt*; on the 11th to *Dorn rivier* (or *Thorn river*) afterwards to *Groote Dorn rivier*, keeping always to the right, and leaving *Attaquas kloof* to the left.

On the 13th we crossed the barren *Carrow plain*, and paid a visit to GERT VAN NIMWEGEN.

The sheep here ate the tender leaves of the *Mimosa nilotica*.

The *Meloë cichorei* did great damage to the apple-trees and other vegetables in the gardens, the leaves of which they consumed entirely.

A *Mesembryanthemum*, with a white flower, was chewed by the Hottentots, for the purpose of quenching their thirst, after it had been suffered to putrify, and been properly prepared.

A species of *Coccus*, called *Harpuys*, that was found on the branches of trees, was said to prove mortal to sheep.

On the evening of the 14<sup>th</sup>, we arrived at GERT CLUTE's farm, at *Slange rivier*. (Snake river) which lay so deep in the cleft of a mountain, that I should suppose no one would expect to find a habitation there.

All this tract of land was exceedingly dry and meagre, the husbandman's cattle consisting only of sheep.

On the flat rocks that projected from the sides of the mountains, we observed a great number of tigers, which were more common here, than I have ever seen them in any other place.

The soil was a clay, impregnated with salt; and every where on the hillocks, and on the banks of the river, the salt was crystalized by the heat of the sun, in like manner as I had observed it to be on the hills near the Cape.

We had now a dreadful, long, dry and barren plain to cross, which is scorching hot in the day time, and which, in consequence, its want of water could afford us no place for baiting. We therefore employed a great part of the day in baiting, and in the evening, when it began to be a little cooler, in resuming our journey, we passed several large rivers, the banks of which were covered with wood, but which were now quite dried up; and at length we arrived in the morning to a deserted house, situated on the side of the mountains to the left.

Here

Here we saw quickset hedges of the *Aloë succotrina*.

On the 15th and 16th we continued our journey, proceeding to the farms of *Welgevunden*, *Watervall*, and *Muysen'kraal*.

On the 17th we came to a farm belonging to one SMEDT; and on the 18th, after crossing the mountains, we went through *Platte kloof*.

As we proceeded farther on the 20th and 21st, we passed several farms in our way to the company's post at *Riet valley*.

While we baited here, we paid another visit to *Grootvader's bosch*, where various sorts of trees are felled for the use of the company. I hoped now to find several trees in blossom; but the season was not yet far enough advanced.

The *Calodendrum*, however, was then in blossom, the honeyed juice of which I perceived beautiful butterflies sucking, without my being able to reach either the one or the other. But by the help of my gun, which I loaded with small shot, and fired in among the trees, I got some branches with blossoms on them.

On the 24th we crossed *Brede-rivier* and *Rivier Zonder end* (or the River without end) which latter is very deep, and therefore has a ferry for the accommodation of travellers.

Continuing our journey on the 25th and 26th, we passed the company's post at *Tigerhook*, and then proceeded along the *Rivier Zonder end*, to

another post of the company's, *Zoete melk's valley*.

The country was already grown very arid, in consequence of the scorching summer heats and the high and drying winds.

*Pforalea pinnata* (*Pinnwortel*) was a plant, of which the country people in many places complained, as being the worst weed in the gardens, on account of the roots striking deep and firm in the ground, and consequently being difficult to eradicate.

A blue *Chrysomela* devoured and damaged the corn.

In a diagonal direction across *Platte kloof*, lay the *Elephant's* (*Olyfant's*) warm bath, which I had not now time to visit.

The increase of the summer heat had caused the flies to multiply in such numbers, as to be even extremely troublesome at most of the farms. In order to diminish the number of them in the house, small boughs were hung up to the roof, and sprinkled several times in the day with new milk; and when the flies had settled on them in great numbers, a long bag was set under them, into which they were shaken down. The bag was then twirled round, so that the flies could not escape.

The *Secretary-bird*, which is a great destroyer of serpents, after having trod them under his feet,

feet, and beat them with his pinions, so that they cannot hurt him, devours them. This bird eats not only flesh, but roots also.

Wild chesnuts (*Brabejum stellatum*) are so eagerly devoured by the wild boars, that they seldom or ever leave one on the ground to spring up, unless it should chance to fall between stones.

On the 27th we arrived at the warm bath of *Zwarte Berg*, or what is called the bath *agter de berg* (i. e. behind the mountain).

The spring arises from a hillock at the foot of the mountain, to the westward of it; and chiefly from two sources. The water is moderately warm, and deposits a great quantity of a light yellow ochre at the bottom of the channels in which it runs. The hillock consists of an iron ore or a ferruginous lava; and is heavy, black, shining, of a very close texture, and strikes fire with steel. The very road is black, owing to the dust of the broken ore, which lies upon it like soot. The water has a chalybeate or inky taste, but by no means sulphureous. It became black on mixing Peruvian bark or blue vitriol with it; and white with sugar of lead. The patients here use the water both for bathing in, and at the same time for drinking, though without any regulations or proper diet. The water is carried by a channel from its source into a boarded hut, where there are a few steps, on



which the patient may sit as deep in the water as he chuses. The company has caused a brick house to be built here, the care of which they have left to an old man. The few rooms that are here for the accommodation of the patients, are parted off by means of sail-cloth into many small cabins; some of the patients live in their own tents or waggons, and others lodge at the farm that is situate at the bottom of the hill. The bath is used the whole year throughout, but most in summer, or from August to February. The mountain above it is called *Zwarte-berg* (or the *Black-mountain*).

On the 28<sup>th</sup> we left this place, and came to a farm belonging to one BADENHORST, where they were extremely busy in threshing out their wheat. Barns for laying up the corn are neither to be found, nor indeed are they wanted in a country, in which at this season of the year, there is nothing to be apprehended from rain, so that the farmers can keep their corn in a stack in the open air. The great heat makes the straw so brittle, that it crumbles to pieces, and therefore cannot be touched at any other time than in the morning and evening, when the air is become somewhat cool. For threshing, they prepare in the open air, a plain and level spot, which they fence in with a low and round wall of clay. Here they scatter the corn loosely about, and then turn in  
a number

a number of horses, either loose, or, as is more frequently the case, joined together in a team, in order to tread out the grain. In the center of this area stands a man, who holds the foremost horse by a halter, and on the outside of it another man, who, with a long whip, drives the horses continually round, and keeps them in a hard trot. Thus the straw is trodden quite to chaff, and rendered totally unfit for thatching. In this manner, half a dozen men, with a few horses, are able to thresh out clean in one day 120 bushels of wheat. Oxen are seldom used for threshing, as their dung would spoil the corn.

Having left this place, we crossed *Booter-river*, where we saw the sea-shore, and passing by *little Houtboek*, went over *great Houtboek* and *Hottentot Holland's kloof*. This mountain is very high, and on the Cape side there is a road over it, that on account of its precipices has a most dreadful appearance. This, and the road however, that goes over *Roode Zand*, are almost the only, at least, the most common roads, by which all the inhabitants of the country must pass with their large and heavy loaded waggons. At the foot of the mountain lie several pretty farms, which, any more than the mountains and the sea-shore, I did not leave unvisited.

Here

Here we kept New year's day, and, together with almost all the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, went down to the sea-side to pass the whole day in mirth and pleasure.

Here we found thrown up by the surge, the *Trumpet-grass* (*Fucus buccinalis*) in which they blew like a trumpet.

Finally, having spent a whole day in crossing the very level and extensive sandy plain that lies between *Hottentot Holland* and the Cape, we arrived at the town on the 2d of January 1773.

My first care after my return to the town, was not only to look over and put into order the collections of animals, plants, and seeds, that I had made during my four months journey; but likewise to get them ready for being sent to Europe by the homeward-bound ships. Therefore, after having well dried the seeds, spread out the plants, and glued them on imperial paper, packed up the birds and insects in cases, planted the live trees, and laid up the bulbous roots in boxes, I sent considerable quantities of each to the botanical gardens at Amsterdam and Leyden, by several of the homeward-bound Dutch vessels. What I had still remaining, I divided into different parcels, and packed up for my patrons and friends in *Sweden*, especially the Archiaters and Chevaliers LINNÆUS and BÆCK, Professor  
BERGIUS

BERGIUS and Dr. MONTIN; these I had an opportunity of sending in Swedish ships by the favor of several naval officers who honoured me with their friendship.

The following months I passed as I had done the last year, in botanizing in the environs of the Cape, and in making short excursions into the country, as well as in examining and arranging my collections, and in making descriptions of such of them as were new and before unknown.

M. SONNERAT, a Frenchman, who, being an excellent draughtsman, had accompanied M. COMMERÇON in that capacity in his extensive travels round the world, and to many different parts of India, was lately arrived at this town in a French vessel from the Isle of France. I had soon an opportunity of making an acquaintance with him at the house of M. BERG, Secretary of the Police, and more particularly while we resided together at this gentleman's villa in the neighbourhood of *Constantia*, where we remained a few weeks for the sake of botanizing, and of shooting a great number of beautiful Cape birds for the cabinets of the curious in Europe.

Among the many excursions we made together, we resolved in the middle of January to visit *Table-mountain*, and examine what might be the produce of its summits at this season of the year. Each of us was furnished with fire-arms, provisions,

provisions, paper, and other necessaries, which were carried by two slaves whom we had hired in the town for this purpose. At three o'clock in the morning we quitted our abode, and ascended the foot of the mountain before the sun could rise, and by its scorching rays render the journey too fatiguing to us. At a little after eight we reached its summit, where it was moderately and agreeably cool. We were also recompensed for our trouble by a great number of rare plants, especially of the *Orchideæ*, as they are called, which I never afterwards could meet with either here at other seasons, or indeed at all in any other mountain. Among these the *Orchis grandiflora*, or *Disa uniflora* (BERGH *Plantæ Capenses*) was conspicuous by its beautiful flowers; of the *Serapias tabularis* we found only one specimen; the *Serapias melaleuca* was distinguished by its black and white flowers, the most uncommon in nature; and with great difficulty, and at the hazard of my life, I got for the first and last time the blue *Disa longicornis*, which is as beautiful, as it is singular in its form. This last plant grew in one spot only, on a steep rock, and so high up, that in order to come at it after we had clambered up the side of the rock as high as we could, I was obliged to get upon the shoulders of M. SONNERAT, when, with a long stick, I beat down five of these plants, the only specimens

cimens that were then in bloom. M. SONNERAT, who before had not had an opportunity of collecting as many plants at the foot of the mountain as I had, made in this one day only, a collection of 300 different species; but was so singularly unfortunate, though he had brought with him three pair of shoes for this excursion, as to return to town barefooted. The number of sharp angular stones which are rolled down from the mountain, and lie both at its foot and in the clefts through which the road goes, not only tear the soles, but also the upper-leathers of shoes; so that your thin French pumps are by no means suited for excursions upon the mountains, which require shoes made of waxed leather with thick soles.

*Table-mountain* has acquired its name from its appearing from the town and harbour, as if it were cut smooth and level like a table. When one is arrived on the top of it, it appears pretty even in front, but on the other side it goes off in gradual inequalities, like very broad steps. In the clefts on the top there are several streams, which run down to the town and its environs, and supply them with good, fresh, and cool water. I could not discover any visible spring, nor any lake with fish in it, as some pretend there are; but all the water that was there, was collected partly from rain, and partly from the clouds,

clouds, which diffuse themselves over the mountain, without falling down below in rain. On the summit were several mouldered and decayed stones, of a strange appearance, seeming as if they had been erected by art.

The height of Table Mountain is 3350 feet, or, according to the calculation of DE LA CAILLE, 3353 feet at the western angle, which is the lowest. The *Devil's Mountain* borders upon this to the east, and is thirty feet lower, though on account of its peak it appears to be somewhat higher. Table Mountain constitutes, with the *Devil's* and *Lion's* Mountains, one mountain, and is connected with them at the bottom, though it is separated from them by considerable vales at the top.

One may ascend and descend Table Mountain in several places, in front, behind, and at the sides, all which paths I reconnoitred this and the following years, in the fifteen times that I went up to the summit in the course of my three years abode in the neighbourhood.

In front the mountain is accessible only by the large cleft, which is distinctly seen almost in the middle of the mountain. This ascent is the most used, notwithstanding that it is the steepest, and particularly near the summit, where it grows at the same time very narrow, having, as it were, perpendicular walls on both sides. The foot of  
the

the mountain, below which the town itself is situated, is about a third part of the height of the whole mountain; which gradually swells, from gently sloping hills, overgrown with thickets, into steeper eminences, covered with stones that have rolled down from the summit; here the cleft begins, which at first is about fifty or sixty paces broad, but by degrees is contracted to six or seven, and at the top is almost choaked up with stones of an enormous bulk. High up in this cleft I found pieces of a fine loose sandstone of various sizes, which, when rolled lower down, crumbled away into small gravel and sand.

*Table Mountain*, as well as the *Devil's* and *Lion's* and other mountains, have their strata or layers in common with those of Europe. The uppermost strata are quite horizontal, but the lower ones lie in an oblique position. At top the rock appears to be a kind of sandstone, or lava; the middle stratum trapp, and the lowermost slate. On the top of Table Mountain there are found both dissevered stones, and firm rocks projecting from the surface, which have mouldered away considerably, not only at the top and sides, but likewise at bottom, so that large cavities are formed in them. These substances are thus decayed not only by water that has been left in their cavities, but evidently by the very



very air also, the moisture of which penetrates into the minute and subtle crevices of these stones, and dissolves them.

The large stones which have rolled down, and lie on the hills at the foot of the mountain, and have a very ancient appearance, are a kind of trapp, which have excavations in them of different magnitudes, apparently formed in them by something that has undergone a gradual decay. These stones, as well the large as the small, have frequently pieces of quartz both in the inside of them and on their surface, which evidently shews that these latter have not been formed there, but were inclosed in them, as they are not concreted with the stony matrix, which is tolerably hard, but have a smooth and polished surface.

The rock, in the lowest strata of which the mountains are formed, is of a loose texture, of a dark colour, and may be scratched with a knife. It is sometimes of a lighter, or of an ash-colour. Both air and water are capable of corroding it, so that laminæ of a hand's breadth appear standing erect on their edge like a cock's comb crystal. These lowermost beds of slate, which are covered on the outside with mould and grass, sometimes constitute half the height of the mountain. And these beds run from south to north, not absolutely in a horizontal direction,

direction, but sunk to the westward, and rising to the eastward, with mouldered and sharp-edged laminæ, which are continued quite below the surface of the water, as is plainly seen by the rocks in the sea, as well those that are above, as those that are under water.

The old hospital having been for a long time in a ruinous condition, as well as of an inconvenient structure, the Company had resolved to build a new one on a larger scale, and in a more convenient situation; for which purpose proper artists, with the necessary tools and materials, had been sent from Holland. The spot for erecting this edifice on was chosen at the eastern end of the town, between *Table Mountain* and the citadel, where it would be exposed to the sun and wind. The ground-stone was laid by Governor VAN PLETTENBERG, in the month of November of the preceding year; and the building now went on every day, though but very slowly; a circumstance owing to the interested conduct of those who were appointed to superintend it, who not only gained by protracting the work, but also employed part of the workmen, as well as of the materials, on their own private buildings.

Two violent winds chiefly prevail on this southernmost promontory of Africa. The one blows boisterously almost every day in summer,

which is called the Good Season (*Goede Mousson*); the other in winter, which is called the Bad Season (*Quaade Mousson*). The south-east wind is violent, and attended with dry and very fine weather; the north-west is tempestuous, and, for the most part, accompanied with showers of rain. The former brings short and violent gales, following close upon each other, which often increase to that degree of force, as to blow up not only dust and sand, but also gravel and small pebbles into the face of such as are exposed to it, who, being neither able to see nor go forwards, must either stand still, or else throw themselves down upon the ground. On such occasions strangers frequently exhibit ridiculous scenes, their hats, wigs, or hair-bags, being carried away by the wind the whole length of the streets. Not only boats but small craft are likewise sometimes overset in the road, and the people in them lost, as was three times the case this year; in consequence of which, when the wind is high, no boat will venture to go to or from the ships.

The south east wind springs up for the most part towards noon, after a fine warm, and calm morning; about eleven, twelve, or one o'clock, it rises higher, and keeps up till three, four, or five o'clock, or even later, frequently leaving the evening serene and agreeable. Thus the morning

ing may be very warm and require light cloathing; but on the increase of the wind, the air begins to feel colder, and frequently one finds it necessary to put on a great-coat. These sudden changes are the cause that one is very liable to catch cold here, and that the inhabitants are in general subject to rheumatic pains. This violent wind, though in some respects it renders the summer less agreeable than it would be otherwise, yet still it makes the heat more tolerable.

Before the south-east wind begins to blow, the clouds are commonly seen gathering upon the mountains; and Table Mountain in particular, covered at the top with a heap of light clouds, appears as if it wore a periwig. On the wind's increasing, these clouds are seen precipitating down the fore-part of the mountain, without producing any rain. Sometimes, however, it will happen, though seldom, that the wind shall blow, and no clouds lie on the mountain; likewise, that all the clouds being dissipated on the fore part of the mountain, the wind shall continue with clear and fine weather. The south-east wind is a low wind, driving from the most part along the ground. The north-west wind also, is sometimes observed to drive the higher clouds in a direction contrary to that in which the south-east carries the lower ones, and the

birds are seen flying in a calm atmosphere between these two contrary currents of air.

In winter time the north-west and south-west winds prevail, which bring rain, and are dangerous for the shipping that lie in the road.

These winds change in April, when by degrees the south-east ceases, and is succeeded by the north-west. So that April and May are months of intermission, as well as August and September, and, on the days when it does not rain, the most pleasant in the whole year.

In January and the months following, the road is the most resorted to by ships from Europe and the East Indies, for the purpose of taking in refreshments at a place where the air is wholesome, and the most plentiful supplies to be had of wine and all kinds of provisions. When a ship has anchored in the road, nobody from the town is suffered to go on board of her for the first three days, under a penalty of forty rixdollars.

The Cape may with propriety be stiled an inn for travellers to and from the East Indies, who, after several months sail, may here get refreshments of all kinds, and are then about half way to the place of their destination, whether homeward or outward bound.

Strangers that arrive here from Europe, are sometimes attacked with a diarrhoea, occasioned  
by

by the many vegetables and fruits with which this country abounds, but which is not of so dangerous a nature here as at Batavia.

Such strangers as are desirous of settling in this country, are at liberty here, as in Holland, to get their livelihood in what manner they please or are able, either by a handicraft business or commerce, or, as is most frequently the case, by both.

It is a general custom in this country to sleep an hour or two in the afternoon, at the time that the heat is the greatest.

At table the uppermost seat is never given to any of the guests; but the host and hostess are always seated at the upper end, one on each side of the table, and the company all around. The host always advances towards the stranger who is his guest, and taking him by the hand enquires after his health. If the person comes on horseback or in a carriage, he is invited to alight and walk in. The lady of the house does not rise, but salutes him by a nod of the head.

The French were at this time in very little estimation, on the one hand, because they generally came without ready money, and were obliged to trade on credit, or else with bills of exchange; and on the other, because the African colonists feared, that if a war broke out, these

strangers would assist in taking the place; in which respect they thought themselves more secure with respect to the English, with whom they were in alliance. A French officer, though dressed to the best advantage, and frequently wearing a star on his breast, as a mark of his merit and his king's favour, had but little respect paid him; whereas an English mate of a ship, with his hair about his ears, was much esteemed on account of his being flush of money, and of his nation's being in alliance with Holland. Yet it was the French who most enriched the Cape merchants, as, on account of the credit they took, they were obliged to pay more than others, and at the same time had occasion for a greater quantity of merchandize, not only for their ships, but also for their garrison in the *Isle of France*.

The coins current here come either from Europe or the East Indies. The most common from Europe, which is here always termed the Mother Country (*Vaderland*), are ducatoons, shillings, and doits (*Duyten*). Ducatoons, either old or new, are, like every other species of coin, of more value here than in Europe, in general 25l. per cent. more, that is to say, twelve skellings, or seventy-two stivers. The shillings are seldom any thing more than *sestehalves*, such as in Holland are worth five stivers

2 and

and a half. Two-pences (*dubbeltjes*) and single pence (or *stivers*) are scarce; as also are ducats, and the gold coin called riders (*goude reijers*). Dutch guilders are hardly ever seen. The Cape guilders are imaginary, and reckoned to those that receive salaries, at the rate of 16 stivers each. A rixdollar is valued at eight shillings, and a ducat at eighteen. Spanish piastras (*Spanse matten*) are willingly taken at the rate of nine Dutch skellings. From various places of the East-Indies, rupees of different kinds are imported, which are equivalent to half a rixdollar, and pass current with every body. No money is coined, or suffered to be coined in this country.

The kind of corn generally cultivated in this country is wheat, and it richly repays the labour of the husbandman. Small quantities have been exported to the Indies for the use of the better sort of people there; but the voyage has been looked upon as too long, and the freight too expensive to send any to Europe, till the preceding and this present year, when some has been sent to Holland, where it has been found to be much heavier than the European wheat. Poland, the granary of Holland, having for several years past been visited by war, and partly laid waste, and the crops having been in general bad all over Europe, the Dutch East India Company determined to send some small



vessels to the Cape to import wheat; and last year they sent one vessel, and this year two frigates. For a freight of wheat, the farmer is paid 18 rixdollars. A freight contains ten *muddes*, or about 20 bushels.

Rye is scarcely ever sown here, except in small quantities for pleasure, or else by some farmer, who chuses to use the straw for thatching, instead of the *Restio dichotomus*.

The olive-shrub (*Olea Europæa*) was common on the hills near the town, as well as in other places. The leaves are narrower than in the European olive; and the fruit seldom comes to maturity. For this reason it is not used for pressing oil out of it, but frequently as an astringent in diarrhoeas. In other respects, this shrub so nearly resembles the European, that it cannot possibly be of a different species.

At the farms and villas near the town, European trees are frequently planted for the sake of ornament and shade, such as the oak, chestnut, pine, myrtle, lemon, and orange trees, which, when in blossom, diffused the most fragrant odour.

The summer in Europe has a much more agreeable appearance, with its leaf bedecked woods and flowery meads, which after a forlorn and dreary winter, so infinitely cheer our eyes, than it does here, where no meadows are seen; and the woods are full of prickles, and of a melancholy

lancholy aspect. In the meadows in Europe the ground is covered so thick with grass, as to appear like a carpet; but here the stalks of the grass are at a considerable distance from each other, and exhibit in the intervals between them, the bare and sandy ground.

As there are no forests in the vicinity of the town, except the few small ones that stand high up in the clefts of the mountains, wood, which is used in the kitchen only, is both dear and scarce. Almost all the fuel used here, is brought in by the slaves, who obtain it by digging up the roots of *Proteæ*, and lopping off the branches of the underwood. Of this brushwood, together with the roots, the slave makes two separate faggots, and tying one to one end, and the other to the other end of a stick, carries them home on his shoulders. Two of these faggots, to make which it is a day's work, sell for two skellings.

Every slave is obliged to earn for his master, two skellings daily, which makes about 80 rix-dollars in a year; so that in a few years the master gets his purchase-money back again, though the slave, by such a heavy rental, cannot obtain the remission of any part of his slavery, which increases with his years, and is cemented with his blood.

Tamarinds, on account of the acid they contain, were sometimes used instead of vinegar, in  
this

this manner: the pulp of them was rubbed on beef, cut into thin slices, which, after being dried a little in the sun, were fried in a frying-pan, and were very tender, and well-tasted.

Cauliflowers, which in the gardens of the Cape, and especially in *Robben-island*, that lies just before the harbour, are brought to such perfection, as not to be equalled in any other part of the world, are frequently pickled in vinegar, with Cayenne pepper (or *Capficum*) and afterwards eaten with meat by way of fallad.

Some of the farms near the Cape, had fences made of pieces of iron-ore (*Yzer-klippen*) which were found in the environs.

The *Arctopus echinatus* (Zieke-troost) a low umbelliferous plant without stalk, and even with the surface of the ground, grew in common near the town, on the clay hills below the mountains. On account of the hard prickles it bore, as well on its leaves as on its ripe seeds, it was a terrible plague, especially to the slaves, who go bare-foot, and are frequently wounded by it.

One of the ships belonging to the fleet that arrived at this time from Holland, brought the corpse of the governor RHEEDE VAN OUDS-HORN, who died on his passage hither. The admiral's ship came into port with her colours lowered half-way, to signify its loss. The corpse was brought on shore, with all the pomp usual

at

at the interment of a governor; the bells tolled, and the ships in the road fired a gun every minute, which did not a little contribute to the pomp and awfulness of the ceremony. Before the corpse, two led horses went in procession, followed by the sceptre, and the armorial bearings of the deceased; and after it came trumpets, kettle-drums, soldiers, and burghers, on horse-back, commanded by the major. By the death of this gentleman, whose favour I had previously acquired at Amsterdam, I sustained a great loss, with regard to the powerful support and assistance which he had given me reason to expect from him, in his capacity of governor, in my excursions into the country.

During my stay in town, I visited several times the *Leeuwe-kop* (Lion's head) a mountain that stands to the westward of *Table Mountain*, and rises to an almost inaccessible peak; from this peak it runs out in a long sloping ridge, and terminates in a curved eminence, called the *Leeuwe-staart* (Lion's tail). Below its peak, the *Leeuwe-kop* is so steep in one place, that if one wishes to ascend to it, a cord must be fastened to the rock, by the help of which, one must clamber up by a side that is almost perpendicular. The uppermost layer I found to consist of a loose red sand, which crumbles away, and falling down, leaves great cavities behind it. On the  
very

very top of the peak, where a perpetual guard is placed for the purpose of discovering the approach of ships, there is a small hut, with a fire-place in it for dressing provisions; three guns, one of which is fired for every ship that is seen; and a flag-staff to hoist a flag on. By the number of guns fired, government is immediately informed whether it is a single ship or a fleet that approaches. In the evening, the sentinel goes down to his house, which is situated in the cleft between *Table Mountain* and the *Lion's head*. When the ships that are descried, approach, a flag is hoisted on the Lion's back (*Leeuwe-rug*), and when they enter the harbour, the colours are hoisted on the citadel, till they have saluted it. If any ship should come within sight of the Cape, and afterwards pass by it, the flag on the *Lion's back* is struck, as soon as it disappears. The flag that is hoisted varies every month, and is like a watch-word on the field of battle; for the colour of the flag is appointed by the directors in Europe, and made known only to the respective regencies at Batavia and the Cape, and in sealed letters to the captains of the outward and homeward bound ships. Thus the captains of the ships may discover, if on a sudden eruption of war, the Cape is fallen into the hands of the enemy, and in such case, keep away from the harbour. In time of war, when any  
great

great fleet is descried making its approach, the whole colony through the interior parts may be summoned with the greatest expedition, by the firing of guns, the hoisting of flags, and the kindling of fires, which are disposed at certain places, and distributed at such distances, that these signals may always be seen or heard from one place to the next.

*Robben Island* is situated at the entrance of the harbour, about four miles from the town. The ships that run into the harbour must always pass by this island, which then hoists the Dutch flag. Sometimes, when a strong south-east wind prevents the ships from entering, they anchor beside it. This island was formerly the resort of a great number of seals, whence it also derives its name; but now these animals having been driven away from it, it is become the retreat of chameleons, quails, and prisoners for life (called here *banditti*), who are obliged to collect every day on the sea-shore a certain quantity of shells, which are burned to make lime for the buildings erected by the company. These prisoners for life, are not only black slaves who have been guilty of misdemeanors, but also Europeans, who have committed heinous crimes.

Though the Lutherans in this town were numerous, yet they had not a church of their own. The bigotted zeal of the Calvinistic clergy had hitherto

hitherto been able to prevent so beneficial an institution from taking place, as that of an edifice to the glory of that God, whom they themselves professed to worship, and for the use and convenience of their fellow-citizens. The Lutherans were thus under the necessity of performing their public worship in a loft, which they had fitted up for that purpose. Still, however, they had not an opportunity of celebrating divine service oftener than when any Swedish ship arrived, the chaplain of which understood and spoke the German language. On such occasions also the holy communion was celebrated, and the money that was put into the plate, became the property of the minister.

The ships now sailed in different squadrons successively for Europe, a few only at a time, as in time of peace may be done with safety. On the other hand, if peace is at all dubious, or a war breaks out, they go a great many together, in two or three fleets.

It will sometimes happen, and that even by permission, that a soldier and a sailor shall change places, and succeed each other in their respective services.

Before a ship sails, the account is made out of every man on board, which accounts are sent with the ship, or else may be taken out at the pay-office by such as chuse so to do; so that every

every one may know what is due to him of his pay. If any one settles in a place, and gets other employment in the service, he may take up his pay every third or fourth month, but the gilder is then estimated at fifteen or sixteen stivers only, so that the loss is considerable. But if he chuses to leave it untouched till the end of the year, his account is made out in the month of August, when the books are closed, which account he may negotiate at eighteen, nineteen, and sometimes twenty stivers per gilder, and thus lose little or nothing. A bill of this kind is like a bill of exchange, for which the Dutch East-India Company gives the full value in Europe, and which, in the mean time, is readily accepted by merchants, and others who want to remit money to Europe. Otherwise, as 25 per cent. is gained on all money exported from Holland, in like manner 25 per cent. is lost on all money that is carried back in specie to Holland.

The effects of the sailors and soldiers who have been taken into the hospital, and died there, are sold by auction, and chiefly at that period, when the greatest number of patients is brought in, and when the greatest number dies. The money is laid out on their interment. In general the corpse is sewed up in a cloth, and carried out in a hearse: but if the effects of the deceased,

ceased,



ceased, after the best part of them have been embezzled, still amount to a small sum of money, a coffin is bestowed upon him of ten rixdollars value. If what the defunct has left behind him amounts to still more money, it is expended in wine at the funeral; and great care is always taken, that nothing should be left for his relations and heirs. In general at such auctions the whole chest, opened, but not always thoroughly examined, is sold at a venture.

The Cape lobster (*Cancer arctos*) which is caught here, is equal in size to that (*Gammarus*) which is taken near the Swedish coasts, but has no large claws, and is craggy all over, and covered with erect prickles. It has a strong and not very agreeable taste.

The Medusa's head (*Asterias caput Medusæ*), one of the most singular and curious animals in nature, was sometimes caught in the ocean off the Cape. It is but rarely that it is found thrown dead upon the shore. In order to preserve it whole and undamaged for the cabinets in Europe, it must be caught far out in the sea by fishermen, who must take great care that they do not break off any of its limbs, and that the animal do not too much contract and entangle its outermost and most slender branches. The animal, when alive, or just after it is dead, is of a reddish or deep carnation colour; and

on

on being dried, turns greyish. It should be dried in the shade, during fine weather, and in an open place, where the wind has free access to it; for in the sun the animal melts away, and, if placed too much in the shade, it might chance to putrify. For this wonderful animal the fishermen frequently get six, nay, even sometimes ten rix-dollars. It may be sent to Europe in a box filled with carded cotton.

On the shore just before the town were found various sorts of bivalve shells, and especially many large and beautiful species of *Patellæ*.

*Strand dubbeltie* was the name given to an *Umbilicus veneris*, or the upper valve of a cockle-shell, which was covered all over with tubercles.

Below the mountains, and near the shore, are several hillocks of sand of different sizes, which are drift-sand, and some change their place twice a year, according to the winds that prevail. Some of them have already begun to settle and acquire solidity, and are covered with some few plants.

Among these the ridge of sand-hills below the *Lion's Tail* is remarkable, which seems plainly to indicate the manner in which mountains were formerly produced, and their different strata formed. This ridge of sand, which stands just before the battery, runs from south to north,

and keeps in the same line as the mountains near the Cape and in all the country do, inclining more or less to the east or west, and consequently in the same direction as the winds that prevail here. It increases every year to the northward, quite down to the sea-shore. At the western end it forms a curve, and goes off with a gradual slope, a circumstance which is occasioned either by the adjacent sand-hill that runs in the same direction, and is solid and firm, and is used for a place of execution, or else by the *Lion's Tail*, which impedes the passage of the wind. The sand of this ridge is loose, and driven to and fro in summer; in winter it is somewhat firmer from the rain, but still almost as loose as a heap of drift-snow. Some parts of it may probably be a little more firm than the rest. Just as the sand is driven, the strata are formed, and they lie here, as in the mountains, inclining obliquely towards the horizon. Some layers are looser, others again harder, according as the drift-sand was more or less pure or mixed before it was hardened by the rain. These strata run either in a straight line, or in waves or streaks of black and white sand, which at a distance give the whole ridge the appearance of an agate. The black sand is thrown up by the sea, as well as the white. The former is in a small quantity, and the latter is driven more by

by the wind, and forms hills. This ridge of sand lies directly opposite to the transverse end of Table Mountain. The top of it is level, and of a middling height; towards the south it goes off gradually with a long slope; to the northward it is steep, where the sand is carried far over the spot below, which is sheltered by the ridge from the wind. The wind can in the space of one day lay sand an inch deep upon its surface, which commonly does not fall equally, but here and there in spots. Stones and other things that lie in the way, are bare on the southern side, but on the northern are covered with a ridge of sand running out in a point, just as the snow is disposed in the northern regions, when it falls with a high wind. In the same manner the strata of mountains appear to have been formed by the winds and waves, and to have derived their origin from the same cause, viz. from the two predominant winds.

The *Testudo Geometrica* was known here by the appellation of the *Syren* (*Syrentie*). This land-tortoise, which probably is the most beautiful of its kind, was found very common in the sandy downs among the bushes. The shells of such as were very small, and consequently the most beautiful, were used for making snuff-boxes.

Round the hills near the Cape grew the *Cliffortia ruscifolia*, and the *Borbonia lanceolata*, much

resembling juniper trees, and like the *Polygala Hæstera*, with their sharp leaves pricking the foot passengers; while the *Asparagus Capensis*, with its recurved thorns, tore their clothes and retarded their passage, for which reason it has received from the inhabitants the name of *Wakt en beetje*, Stop a bit.

The *Tulbaghia aliacea* (Wilde knoflook, or Wild garlic) which grew both in the sands near the Cape and in other places in the country, was used in hectic fevers, either boiled in water or in some kind of soup.

At several farms near the Cape I had an opportunity of seeing wine made, and of receiving information with respect to the various sorts of wine, which are made here in great quantities. The pressing, which is done in March, is performed in general, for want of proper tools and contrivances, in a more simple manner here than it is in Europe. The slaves gather the grapes, and put them into a large vessel. For the pressing they make use of a vessel, the bottom and sides of which are bored full of holes; this vessel is set in the inside of a larger vessel upon a cross piece of wood laid at the bottom of the latter; this outside vessel has a spigot and faucet, through which the juice, as fast as it is pressed out, may run into a tub placed beneath. The grapes being laid in the inner vessel, heaped up to the brim, three or four slaves, after having previously

previously washed their feet very clean in a tub of water standing at the side, get into the vessel that contains the fruit, and holding themselves fast by a rope fixed to the cieling, trample upon the grapes, and squeeze out the juice as long as they are able. In the mean time, the must that runs out is put into large high vessels to ferment. If the aperture is obstructed by grapes or stalks, so that the juice cannot easily run out, they push them away with a stick, to the end of which a few bristles are fixed. The trodden grapes, before they are farther pressed, are put, stalks and all, upon a coarse strainer (or the bottom of a bed) made of rattans, on which they rub the fruit with their hands, till the husks go through it; the stalks in the meantime remaining behind, which are now separated and thrown away, as they are supposed to make the wine austere and bitter. The husks are then put into the fermenting-vessel, which the next morning is in full fermentation, during which process the thick parts subside, and the must grows clear, when it is barrell'd off, by putting a wicker basket into the bung-hole of the barrel, and filtering the wine through it. The grounds, which remain in the fermenting-vessel, are afterwards put into a square vessel or vat, pierced full of holes at the sides and bottom, which vat is placed on a cross piece of wood in a larger vessel, with a spigot and faucet at the

side. At the top there is a screw of wood or metal, by means of which the last drop of juice is pressed out from the husks. From the dregs and husks, that remain over from the last pressing, brandy is distilled. No yeast is used for accelerating the fermentation. The white and green grapes yield white wine, and the red, red wine. The muscadine grape, both red and white, produces the Constantia wine, and the blood red grape, the wine called Pontac. Names are bestowed accordingly as they resemble more or less the products of the European grapes, though the resemblance is not always perfect.

A great number of dogs are frequently kept in the farms; they follow the cattle into the fields along with the slave, keep wild beasts away from the farm, sometimes protect the master from the outrages of his slaves, and are serviceable in hunting and on journies.

The horns of the rhinoceros were kept by some people both in town and country, not only as rarities, but also as useful in diseases, and for the purpose of detecting poison. As to the former of these intentions, the fine shavings of the horns taken internally, were supposed to cure convulsions and spasms in children. With respect to the latter, it was generally believed, that goblets made of these horns in a turner's lathe, would discover a poisonous draught that was put into them, by making the liquor ferment till it ran quite

quite out of the goblet. Such horns as were taken from a young rhinoceros calf that had not yet copulated, were said to be the best, and the most to be depended upon. Of these, goblets are made, which are set in gold and silver, and made presents of to kings, people of distinction, and particular friends, or else sold at a high price, sometimes at the rate of 50 rixdollars a goblet. The horn is of a conical form, thick at the bottom, and truncated at the top, a foot long, frequently in old rhinoceroses, and is placed forward on their snout. Two or three inches from this, the African two-horned rhinoceros has another smaller and shorter horn. In colour, it most resembles the horn of a bullock. When I tried these horns, both wrought into goblets, and unwrought, both old and young horns, with several sorts of poisons, weak as well as strong, I observed not the least motion or effervescence; but when a solution of corrosive sublimate, aqua phagædenica, or other similar substances, was poured into one of these horns, there arose only a few bubbles, produced by the air, which had been inclosed in the pores of the horn, and which was now disengaged from it.

Though few countries can boast of so much venison and game as this colony, still here, as in Europe, at a certain time of the year, hunting and shooting are prohibited. Thus from May to August, nobody is allowed to hunt or shoot, at least near the town.



The hospital I very seldom visited, as I could not possibly derive any improvement from any thing I saw there. I observed, however, in this place, what I never saw any where else, viz. that the attendants on the sick were provided with ropes and bands, with which they now and then corrected turbulent patients. *Mirum sane morborum remedium!* Both in the hospital and on board of their ships, the company had, for the greater part, ignorant and unskilful surgeons; and, in general, when a skilful surgeon was found among them, he was a foreigner. When emetics or such kind of remedies were prescribed, they were sometimes written down on the head-board of the bed; and of other medicines, a dose was commonly administered immediately, which were carried ready made up in a box after the surgeon, when he visited the patients. What most contributes in this place to the recovery of the sick, is the excellent refreshments of fresh meat and vegetables, that are to be had here. The principal surgeon makes his report to the governor every day of the number and state of the patients.

At Zeeko valley the company has a farm, where straw (*Restia tectorum*) is cut and prepared for the purpose of thatching, as follows: A bundle or sheaf, after it is cut, is held by the top, and all the shorter stalks that are loose in it, are shaken off from it. The remaining long ones  
are

are then spread out in rows to dry, and afterwards tied up in bundles. With this the houses are commonly thatched both in town and country, and sometimes whole huts are built with it. A roof made of it lasts 20 or 30 years, and would last much longer if the south-east wind did not blow a great deal of dirt between the thatch, in consequence of which it rots the sooner.

Near *Muyfenberg* (or Mouse mountain) the wax-shrubs (*Myrica quercifolia* and *cordifolia*) grew in abundance along the shore. The berries of them are quite round, full of knobs, soft, and of the size of a pea. The berries themselves are quite black, but covered with a farina of a whitish-grey colour. They are gathered in their ripe state in the month of March, and boiled in water till all the white powder is melted off, and floats on the surface of the water like fat; this, when skimmed off and cooled, grows hard, almost like wax, and is of a greenish-grey or ash colour. The farmers use it for candles, when they get any quantity of it, and the *Hot-tentots* eat it like so much cheese.

In the sandy plains near the Cape, and chiefly near the larger farms, the goldfinch (*Loxia orix*) was seen now in the midst of summer, very beautiful, of a crimson colour, and in infinite numbers. Just when the corn grows ripe, he acquires his summer dress; his brownish grey feathers on the throat and back become gradually  
of

of a red colour, and leave only the wings and tail unchanged. The hen does not come in for her share of this beautiful attire, but remains the whole year of a grey-brown hue.

The country people seldom made any cheese; and when they did, which was chiefly out of curiosity, the cheeses were small, thin, and of an indifferent taste; the cause of which probably is the milk, which, it must be confessed, is poor enough compared to the fine rich milk produced in Holland.

The cows, as well as the other cattle, go to field the whole year throughout, being driven home in the evening, and lie within fences in the open air. The grass which they feed on in those extensive plains, and which is the best and most copious in winter time, in consequence of the rain, and worst in summer on account of the heat and drying winds, is in general harsh and coarse. Hence the cows give little milk, and that but indifferent. For this reason the cattle degenerate to a certain degree in the course of a few years. The horned cattle, of which the peasants herds in this country consist, are of Dutch extraction, it is true, but are at present greatly degenerated. A Dutch cow that is brought hither, and has cost forty or fifty rix dollars, gives more milk than three others, but its offspring degenerates, and the third or fourth

fourth is exactly like the rest, which frequently give no more than a quart of milk a day.

Fresh butter, which in general is made from new milk, is sold in the town for eight, twelve, or sixteen stivers, and salt butter at two, four, or six stivers per pound. The price, however, varies with the consumption.

Though the country is inhabited by colonists, still the farms are not all held in the same manner. That tract of country which is nearest to the town and harbour, or in the vicinity of them, has been sold by the Hottentots for tobacco, brandy, and other commodities. The other extensive tracts of land were afterwards taken possession of gradually by the colonists. Thus the farms which are situated nearest to the Cape, as far as Picquet-berg, and a little beyond it, are freeholds, or lands which are the unconditional property of the colonist, for which he pays no quit-rent, and which he is at liberty to dispose of. The other farms farther up the country, on the other side of the mountains, are called copyholds, which the colonists have occupied with the permission of the governor, and for each of which twenty-four rix dollars are paid yearly to the company in fine, which cannot be sold or transferred to any one else without the permission of the governor. The buildings

buildings upon the premises may be sold, it is true, but not the land.

Planks and boards, as well as beams for building, were extremely dear, as they were scarce, and brought a great way from the inland parts of the country, so that the greatest part of them must be imported from Europe or the East Indies. They are generally sold by measure, planks selling for two skellings a foot.

Sheep's dung was frequently used for manuring the vineyards, and horse dung for the gardens. Sheep's dung often lies in the sheep-folds to the depth of a yard and more.

Wheat-fields, vineyards, and gardens, are very numerous about the farms in the vicinity of the town and harbour, and there they have but few cattle. The vineyards in the neighbourhood of the Cape, the grapes of which being larger and riper, yield the best and most delicious wine, and consequently are more profitable, occasion the cultivation of wheat to be neglected in proportion, which is relinquished to the farmers that live farther up in the country. The wheat-fields are often left fallow for several years, as every husbandman has a great quantity of land, which he can afford to keep unemployed. Whenever either a new field or a field that has lain fallow for several years is to be put in order, which is a difficult piece of work, such ground

ground is first ploughed in the month of August, and then again in May, after being previously sowed. The African ploughs have two wheels, one of which is smaller than the other.

When a youth is arrived at the age of fifteen, he must be enrolled, and every year he must resort to the place of rendezvous, in order to perform his exercise. On this occasion he must take the oath of allegiance. When a father has two sons in the militia, he himself is exempt from duty. These reviews, both of horse and foot, are held every year, in the town for the burghers, and at *Stellenbosch* and *Zwillingdam* for the farmers belonging to the colony. If any one neglects to appear at these rendezvous, he is fined.

The farmers sell their merchandizes at the Cape, either to the company or the burghers, but are not permitted to dispose of any thing to strangers.

Besides the regency which is resident in the town, the country is governed by two courts of judicature, at which a landroft presides.

*Stellenbosch* is a village consisting of thirty houses and upwards, with a church; here a landroft resides, under whose jurisdiction comes that part of the country which is situated to the north and north-west; the other part of the colony that lies to the eastward is under the sway

fway of the landroft at *Zwellendam*. *Stellenbosch* is situated in a narrow valley between high mountains, which are open to the south-west or towards *Falfe Bay*. It has two ftreets with oak trees planted in them, and a river running through them.

*Franschehoek* stands not far from *Stellenbosch*, below the mountains, and in the cleft of a mountain. It is remarkable for being the place, which immediately after the foundation of the town was inhabited by the French refugees, who between the years 1680 and 1690, removed hither from Holland, and first began to plant vineyards in this country.

*Drakenstein* also is a colony in the neighbourhood of the former, and situate under the fame ridge of mountains. The mountains here extend from north to fouth; juft as they do near the town; and this direction of them is the caufe that the farms that are fituated in valleys between two mountains have their day and night at different times. Thofe who live under the mountains on the western fide, have daylight firft, as the fun having reached the tops of the mountains, which are frequently covered with hail, and thence appear white, in an instant illuminates the whole western fide; while, on the other hand, thofe who live on the eastern fide of the valley, fee the fun longer in  
the

the evenings, the other side at the same time appearing to them enveloped in darkness and a light-blue mist, while they themselves continue to enjoy the most delightful sunshine.

Next to the Cape, towards the north, and directly opposite to the town, are the *Tygers Mountains*, which are in the same direction with the *Olyfant's Kop*, and the *Blauwe Berg*, or *Blue Mountains*, all of which are separated from each other by valleys.

Neither burghers nor husbandmen have a right to marry till they have obtained the governor's consent. As soon as any person has obtained this, which is usually asked on Thursdays, the bridegroom receives an order, which in the presence of the bride he delivers to the justiciary; who, after having carefully examined matters, and found that the parties are not too near related, gives also his consent to the match, and allows the banns to be published three Sundays following, in the usual manner, from the pulpit.

So that when the farmers take their annual journey up to town to sell their commodities, buy the necessary articles for their families, and pay their taxes, they must always take that opportunity of being united in the bands of wedlock, or of having their children baptized at their parish church.

Should



Should the governor refuse any one his permission to marry, still he cannot prevent the parties contracted from living together, who, in such cases, are frequently obliged to put off their nuptials till the arrival of another governor, whose consent they may obtain. Sometimes it happens that the bride has recourse to the justiciary, who may think proper to order the marriage to be consummated. In this case, if the bridegroom be at that time engaged in the company's service, he may have the misfortune to be sent away by the governor to some place in the East Indies. The fair sex here, in general, marry very young, and as the boundaries of the colony have been much extended of late, the increase of population has likewise been very great.

The country people have provisions in abundance, but are frequently in want of furniture. One frequently sees chairs and tables made by the farmer himself, which he covers with calf-skin, or makes of platted leathern straps. The floors in the houses are formed of earth, beaten down hard and smooth. In order to make them hard and firm, they are overlaid either with a mixture of water and cow-dung, or with bullock's blood, which renders them at the same time rather slippery.

Various

Various sorts of fruits, besides raisins, were dried for the use of the ships.

In winter, salt meat is sometimes eaten, though very rarely; but scarcely any is sold to the ships.

When a farm is sold in the country, the bargain is concluded, and the farm paid for in guilders, three of which are reckoned to a rixdollar.

The town as well as country people, look upon this country, or their mother-land, as they term it, to be far superior to others, as it produces every necessary of life in abundance; tho' at the same time, they are conscious that Europe, their father-land, must furnish them with every thing else, even to the very plough-share, with which they till this their fertile country.

In the various excursions I made into the country, this as well as the preceding years, I have been more and more convinced, that whole promontory, called the Cape, is nothing but a mountain; for all the ridges and chains of mountains, as well the greatest as the smallest, run between south-east and north-west, and thus take the same direction as the violent winds that prevail in this country. They also run parallel to, but at unequal distances from each other, so that some of the vales that are interposed between them, are broad, and frequently inhabited, while others again are very narrow. Towards the north-west, I have not had an opportunity

of seeing their termination; they probably run that way as far as to the sea, without leaving any path for walking on the shore. Towards the south-east, all of them, except *Hottentot Holland's* mountain, terminate in a gentle declivity, before they reach the sea shore. It is singular, that when one goes from the town into the country, from south to north, and passes over a mountain, the country on the farther side is found to be more elevated; and if we traverse the mountains that we meet with farther on, the height of the country still increases, and so on for three or four day's journey. So that the country between these ridges is nothing but a vale, which is so broad as to have obtained the name of a province, and is adorned with several farms. On ascending the mountains surrounding such valleys, we see similar ridges and valleys in miniature, but much smaller, and rarely inhabited. The distances between some of the ridges may be six miles and more, between others only two or three, and on the tops of the mountains no more than a stone's throw. Such a tract of land, however, is not plain and level, like a meadow, but deeper in the middle, where the deepest rivers, formed by the conjunction of several branches in one, run parallel with the ridges of the mountains themselves, and it gradually rises higher on each side, in proportion as we approach the mountains.

Near

Near the Cape, which forms the southernmost angle of the triangle of Africa, the mountains have the least extent. The farther one advances up into the country, and the broader it grows, the longer are the ridges formed by the mountains. And the farther one proceeds among the mountains, and the higher the country is, the colder one always finds the climate. In winter there falls snow, or what is more frequently the case, hail, the depth of six inches or more, which lies several days, and on the tops of the mountains for weeks together, without melting. In the month of October I observed the hail still lying on the snow-white tops of the mountains, while the country below was clad in its richest summer attire. Likewise in proportion as the cold increases in consequence of the elevation of the country, all vegetables are later produced. The difference I found here and in some other places, to amount to as much as two months. Near the Cape, therefore, all plants and flowers make their appearance the soonest, the country there being lower, and the air milder. In like manner, the whole southern coast, where the mountains go off with a gradual declivity, is always the warmest, and is for this reason, the most populous, and best inhabited part of the whole colony.

This description of the extent, appearance, and height of the mountains; together with the nature of the country, I hope may throw rather more light on the geography of this part of Africa, than we had before, at the same time, that it discovers the reason why a country situated in so good and temperate a climate, is in some places extremely fertile and cultivated, and in other, absolutely bare, and in fact, almost desert and inaccessible.

The Dutch officers, both of the outward and homeward-bound ships, especially of the latter, dispose here of a great quantity of merchandize of different kinds: the former bring for sale, wines, beer, cured hams, cheese, tobacco pipes, and sometimes haberdashery and hardware; the latter, cottons, chintzes, rice, tea, &c. And if they cannot dispose of their merchandize to the dealers separately, they put them up at public auction. One likewise sees many of the Burghers, who have bought various articles by wholesale, sell them again by auction. Such sales by auction, are frequently held also in the spring and winter months, on the company's account; and government generally takes the precaution not to allow of the auctions of individuals, till the company has disposed of its merchandizes first.

Of

Of the foreign naval officers, the English and Danish carry on the greatest trade. The former chiefly sell large quantities of fine and coarse hardware, especially sailor's knives, scissars, and other similar articles. The latter, in going out, sell Danish ale and tar, and on their return, chintzes from Bengal. The Swedish officers traded for little or nothing; on their return, they only disposed of a few canisters of tea, some Nankin and Chinese silks, scarcely to a greater amount, than what they paid at their inn for the few days they were on shore. Otherwise, desirable articles from Sweden are coarse grey cloth, lumber, copper, iron, brass, spades, herrings, and more especially tar, charcoal and iron, all which sell to great advantage. The company charges eight rixdollars for 1 Cwt. of iron, though it is cold-shire, and inferior to the Swedish. For all wares and commodities sold by individuals at auctions, 5 per cent. must be paid to the fiscal. The money for goods and wares sold by auction, is not to be paid till six weeks afterwards.

Among all the different nations that frequented this place, none were such bold sailors as the English. They would often beat about in the roads with a strong south-east wind, while the Dutch ships either kept the open sea, or cast anchor under *Robben Island*, till they got a more

favourable wind. The former have for the most part no other rule than their own judgment and experience, and their ships are better failers; whereas the latter have heavier and more unwieldy ships, and are obliged to act according to the company's orders.

Foreign ships were said to pay for anchorage only 500 gilders; but all the provisions they want they must pay dear for, owing to the imposts established by the company on meat and wines. Strangers pay two stivers for a pound of meat, which the company has for three *doits*, or about a fifth part of the price.

In the baptism of children, the Cape clergy consider it as a circumstance of the first importance that the fathers should be known, and be present. If the child is a bastard, and its father does not discover himself, the infant remains unbaptized. If the mother is a Black or a Hottentot, but the father a Christian, who requires it to be baptized, it is baptized. Every christening must be performed in the church, for which reason such colonists as live far up in the country, must take their infants with them when they go to the Cape, though as is sometimes the case, it be but six months old.

The gardens both within and without the town, suffer great devastation from three or four different species of rats, which are generally termed

termed moles. One of these, called the White Mole (*Witte Moll*, *Marmota Africana*), is of the size of a small cat, and white all over, with a short tail. The second, called the Blaze-fronted Mole (*Bles Moll*, *Marmota Capensis*), is smaller, and white with brown spots. The third species is less common, and very beautiful, being of a greenish colour with a shining fur. The last of these (*Talpa Asiatica*) or the Gold-green Mole (*Blinde Moll*), burrows in the gardens under the surface of the ground, throwing up the mould, by which means it ruins both the figured trees and hedges that are made of myrtle and box. The former species of moles also are found in the sand-downs near the town.

When the people of the town planted trees before their houses, they were very solicitous to get a dead dog to put in the hole, by which means they thought the growth of the tree would be much accelerated.

The Bay tree (*Laurus nobilis*) was in many places observed to form so close a hedge, that one could scarcely see through it. It bent likewise to the violence of the winds without breaking.

The Hottentots who had committed acts of violence against some colonists living a great way up the country, and had been brought hither some time before, were now punished,



Some of them were only flogged, others were flogged and marked besides on the back with a red hot iron, and others had the tendon near the heel (*Tendo Achillis*) cut out besides. After this they were set free, and sent home again for a warning to others. They had not been taken without difficulty, as they had fortified themselves in the cavities and crevices of the mountains, where they were out of the reach of fire-arms. Besides this, they defended themselves by rolling stones down upon their enemies. The company had ordered not only the farmers out against them, but also a corporal from the citadel with five men to bombard them with hand grenades. At last they were taken by stratagem, by the Hottentot Captain KIES.

Accounts were now again received from *Roggeveld*, that the Boshies-men Hottentots had plundered and killed the farmers in that district.

In the month of *March*, when I passed a whole day on the top of *Table Mountain*, I was gratified in the evening with a singular and most beautiful prospect from this considerable eminence. *Table Mountain*, like all other mountains in this country, lies in a direction from north-west to south-east; thus leaving one of its long sides open to the north-east, and the other to the south-west. The sun, rising in the east,

east, does not here proceed towards the south, as in Europe, but towards the north, and at last sinks into the ocean to the westward of the mountain. This makes an earlier morning, and exhibits the sun sooner on the north-east side; and a longer afternoon, and later sun on the south-west side. So that on the top of this mountain, about five o'clock in the afternoon, two different worlds, as it were, presented themselves to my view, of which the western still enjoyed the finest sun-shine and a clear horizon, while the eastern was already covered with darkness and a thick impending mist. This mist, which had exhaled from the heated plain, and was now condensed in the suddenly cooled air, was so thick that no part of the whole country was to be seen, but the whole region resembled a smooth unbroken cloud, and did not a little contribute to render the view on each side of the mountain remarkably different, though a moment before they were much the same.

In the month of *May*, between the 13<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup>, in company with Major GORDON and an English gardener, lately arrived, of the name of MASON, I made an excursion on foot round the mountains situate between the *Cape* and *False Bay*. Having ascended the front of the valley as high as the summit of Table Mountain, we saw a valley to the right, which runs down to the

the

the sea-shore. To the left a fountain was seen bubbling up, and forming a narrow rivulet; but it was so much overgrown with bushes, that its source under a large rock could not be perceived. In all the flat dales of the mountain, both the large and small ones, there was mould, water, and moss, which formed a kind of bog. Towards the south-east it gradually subsides into valleys, just in the front of *Hout Baay*.

Through the vale called *Babian's Kloof* (Baboon's Valley), which, proceeding from *Table Mountain*, parts the ridge of mountains that runs from *Constantia* to the farthest point in the south, we went to *Hout Baay*, where there was a farm; to the right we had the little *Lion's Head*, a peaked mountain, resembling the great *Lion's Head* near the Cape, and the *Karfunkel* (or Carbuncle) *Mountain*, which is oblong, and covered at the foot with a fine white quicksand reaching as far as to the sea-shore. This latter mountain forms a promontory, the uttermost point of which rising into a conical protuberance that hangs over the sea, is called the *Hang-lip*. This is separated, as well as the *Lion's Head*, from *Table Mountain*. *Table Mountain* has a considerable rivulet at its top, a branch of which empties itself into *Hout Baay* (or Wood Bay). The sea at low water formed, in *Hout Baay*, rivers, the banks

banks of which were steep from the sand that had fallen down. At the mouth a river was formed in a cross direction, the banks of which were likewise extremely steep from the fallen sand. The whole bay was full of round sandstones, like the shores of the lake *Vetter*. To the left was seen *Steenberg*, or *Stone Mountain*; at the foot of which, on the other side, are situated *Great* and *Little Constantia*, and which runs out into the sea in a promontory called *Steenbergenhoek*, where there is a farm belonging to the company, and known by the name of *Muysenberg*, or *Moose Mountain*.

From Hout Bay we went over the mountains to *North Hoek*, where three farms are laid out near a large pool of water. The projecting point itself of the mountain over which we had passed, is called *North Hook*, and the opposite projection the *Slange Kop* (or *Serpent's Head*). The downs here consisted all of quicksand, raised into hills of various heights; those that had been lately formed being still bare, and those that were of a more ancient date, overgrown with bushes, especially the wax-shrub (*Myrica cordifolia*), which frequently grew on them low and creeping. A salt-pan that lay to the south-east, had banks of two or three yards in height; it was now partly filled with water, the surface of which was covered with *Flamingoes* (*Phanicopterus*

*terus ruber*). Its bottom was sandy, or a mixture of sand and clay. In winter time it is filled with water for the space of several months. It has its water from rain, and not from the sea, from which it is at a considerable distance; consequently its water is not increased or diminished by the tide. *Duyn-bout*, or *Zwart-bout*, was the name given to a shrub that has fleshy leaves, and was without blossoms, *Foliis compastis; foliolis cuneiformibus carnosis*. It appeared to be an *umbelliferous* plant. Here we met with the celebrated farmer JAN BRUYNS, one of the best marksmen in the country, and who had made the unfortunate expedition with HEUPNAER to the *Rio de la Gaa*, through the country of the Caffres, when seven of the company were massacred by the Caffres, and himself with only five others escaped.

The *Slange bosch* (*Seripbium*) which grew here, was said, when made into a decoction, to expel worms.

After pursuing our journey farther over the mountains to *Wildschut's brand*, where we found only one Hottentot hut, situated in a fine grass plot on the mountain; we went a little way back again over the same mountains, and arrived at *Falfe bay*.

The barren mountains, which run from *Falfe bay* out into the sea, are called by the colonists, as well as by the sailors, *Norweegen*, or *Norway*.

*Bay*

*Bay Falso, False* or *Simon's bay*, is a name given to the harbour on this side, where the ships only touch in winter, and where they are sheltered from the north-west storms, so dangerous in this season to the ships that lie in *Table-bay*. This harbour is larger than that of the Cape. The shore is not broad, and in several places, by reason of the mountains jetting out into the sea, there is none at all. The houses stand on the tops of the hills, and are sometimes very unfit for the accommodation of strangers. A large round rock in the harbour went by the name of the *Ark*, another was called the *Romance-rock*; and an island, situated farther out to the eastward, *Malagas island*. Besides a house belonging to the company, in which lives a resident, there are here an hospital, a warehouse, a slaughterhouse, and a few farm houses belonging to individuals. The company's garden lay at some distance.

From *False bay* we went over flat and low sands, passed *Mt. Jensenberg* and the company's fishing place, back to the Cape. In different parts of the sandy plains there were small lakes, as they might be called, of salt water, which had not yet been dried up by the summer's heat. These plains, abounding as they did in water, still harboured in different parts some *Flamingoes*, which, with their white and blood-red feathers, adorned

adorned these spots, and devoured the insects and worms in the water. We shot one of them, and broke the wing bone, which prevented the bird from flying; but we had still the greatest difficulty to catch it, as<sup>d</sup> with its long legs it waded through the water, which was a foot deep, much faster than we were able to follow it.

On the 1<sup>st</sup> of *June*, being Whit-Monday, there arose a very high north-west wind, with violent hurricanes and showers of rain; at night, in this storm, the *JONGE THOMAS*, one of the four ships belonging to the company, that were still in the road, having lost all its anchors, one after the other, was driven on the sands near the shore, at *Zout rivier*, and, in consequence of its heavy lading, split into two pieces in the middle. The surge rose to an amazing height on the shores towards this side, and *Zout rivier* was so swollen, that it was almost impassable. It is true, from the middle of May to the middle of August, the company's ships are prohibited from lying in the road; yet it sometimes happens, that the governor permits it in order to avoid the inconveniences of victualling and lading the ships in *Falſe bay*. Independently of the loss sustained by the company, as well in ships as merchandize, there perished also unfortunately on this occasion, a number of the crew, who, for want of assistance, were lost, and met with a deplorable death,

very

very near the land. Only 63 men escaped, 149 being unhappily drowned.

The ship had scarcely struck, which happened just at day-break, when the most efficacious expedients were used to save as much as possible of the company's property that might chance to be thrown on shore, though I could not perceive that the least care was taken to deliver a single soul of the crew from their forlorn and miserable situation. Thirty men were instantly ordered out, with a stripling of a lieutenant, from the citadel, to the place where the ship lay, in order to keep a strict look-out, and prevent any of the company's effects from being stolen; and a gibbet was erected, and at the same time an edict issued, importing that whoever should come near that spot, should be hanged up immediately, without trial or sentence of judgment being passed upon him. This was the cause that the compassionate inhabitants, who had gone out on horseback to afford the wretched sufferers some assistance, were obliged to turn back without being able to do them the least service; but, on the contrary were, together with me, ocular witnesses of the brutality and want of feeling shewn by certain persons on this occasion, who did not bestow a thought on affording their fellow-creatures, that sat on the wreck perishing with cold, hun-



ger, and thirst, and were almost in the arms of death, the least assistance or relief.

Another circumstance contributed to render this otherwise distressing scene still more afflicting. Among the few, who were lucky enough to be able to save their lives by swimming from the wreck, was the gunner, a man with whom I was acquainted, and met with several times afterwards in the town: he had stript himself quite naked, in order that he might swim the easier, and had the good luck to come alive to shore, which was not the case with every one that could swim; for many were either dashed to pieces against the rocks, or else by the violence of the surf carried back again to sea. When he arrived on shore, he found his chest landed before him; but just as he was going to open it, and take out his great coat, the lieutenant, who commanded the party, drove him away from it; and though he earnestly begged for leave to take out the clothes necessary for covering his naked and shivering body, and could also prove by the key, fastened, according to the sailors custom, to his girdle; as well as by his name cut out on the lid of the chest, that it was actually his property, he was, nevertheless, forced to retreat without effecting his purpose, by this unmerciful hero, who gave him several smart blows with a cane on his bare back. After he had passed the whole day naked and hungry,

and exposed to the cold winds, and was going to be taken in the evening to town along with the others who had been saved from the wreck, he again asked leave to take a coat out of his chest to cover himself with; but this having been previously plundered, he found empty. On entering the town, where he arrived stark naked, he met with a burgher, who took compassion on him, and lent him his great coat. Afterwards he, as well as the other unfortunate wretches, was forced to run about the town for several days together, begging for victuals, clothes, and money, till at length they were supported at the company's expence, and taken back again into its service.

Another action that does great honour to humanity, deserves the more to be recorded here, as it shews that at all times, and in all places, there are both good and considerate people, as well as such as have nothing human but the shape. An old man, of the name of WOLTEMAD, by birth an European, who was at this time the keeper of the beasts in the menagerie near the garden, had a son in the citadel, who was a corporal, and among the first who had been ordered out to *Paarden Island* (Horse Island) where a guard was to be set for the preservation of the wrecked goods. This worthy veteran borrowed a horse, and rode out in the morning,

with a bottle of wine and a loaf of bread for his son's breakfast. This happened so early, that the gibbet had not yet been erected, nor the edict posted up, to point out to the traveller the nearest road to eternity. This hoary fire had no sooner delivered to his son the refreshments he had brought him, and heard the lamentations of the distressed crew from the wreck, than he resolved to ride his horse, which was a good swimmer, to the wreck, with a view of saving some of them. He repeated this dangerous trip six times more, bringing each time two men alive on shore, and thus saved in all fourteen persons. The horse was by this time so much fatigued, that he did not think it prudent to venture out again; but the cries and intreaties of the poor wretches on the wreck increasing, he ventured to take one trip more, which proved so unfortunate, that he lost his own life, as on this occasion too many from the wreck rushed upon him at once, some of them catching hold of the horse's tail, and others of the bridle, by which means the horse, both wearied out, and now too heavy laden, turned head over heels, and all were drowned together. This noble and heroic action of a superannuated old man, sufficiently shews that a great many lives might probably have been saved, if a strong rope had been fastened by one end to the wreck, and by the other to  
the

the shore. Along this rope either a basket or a large copper vessel might have been hawled to and from the ship, with a man in it each time. When the storm and waves had subsided, the ship was found to lie at so small a distance from the land, that one might have almost leaped from it on shore..

The vigorous measures taken to preserve the company's effects and merchandize, were not, however, so efficacious, as to prevent certain persons in office from enriching themselves considerably on this occasion. For when whole horse-loads of iron from the wreck could be sold to the smiths in town, it is easy to conceive that their consciences would not stand greatly in their way, if they could lay their hands upon portable and valuable commodities. The soldiers also were so careful when on guard, that nothing should be pillaged from the wreck, that they themselves every night, when relieved, marched into town with their musket-barrels stuffed full of solid gold lace, which, though somewhat damaged by the salt water, answered very well when thrown into the melting pot.

Though the hardest hearts frequently are softened by the uncommonly severe misfortunes and distresses of their fellow-creatures, and though great and noble actions have at all times been able to excite the gratitude and benevolence of the fel-

low-citizens of the perpetrator; yet (I am sorry to say it) I have it not in my power to conclude this melancholy picture with some delightful trait of generous compassion on the part of the governor towards the poor sufferers, and especially towards the drowned hero, or of some noble remuneration of his son. For when, shortly after, this young man solicited for the employment of his deceased father, which was a post of such small importance, that it could neither be considered as a recompense, nor could it be envied him by any one, it was refused him, and given to another.

This unfeeling *bon vivant* of a governor, rich in money, but poor in spirit, permitted him, nevertheless, afterwards to do what others consider as a punishment, viz. to go to Batavia, where he hoped to find kinder patrons and a wider field for making his fortune in. And here he would doubtless have attained his desires, had he lived longer; but in the very unwholesome climate: whither he was now gone to see his only brother, a merchant, he died, before an order arrived from the directors of the company in Holland (which did as much credit to them, as it ought to have accumulated shame upon the officers at the Cape) viz. that the sons of WOLTERMADE, for the sake of their father, should be rewarded and promoted in every way that could possibly be

be done. On this and similar occasions, I have observed, how much an enlightened mind and a generous heart are to be prized above the gifts of fortune, above riches and honors; and how infinitely these latter are exalted by the former, if they are united with them, in which case they command every one's esteem.

I now also perceived the reason why the Europeans, both sailors and soldiers, are in many respects treated worse and with less compassion, than the very slaves themselves. With respect to the latter, the owner not only takes care that they are clothed and fed, but likewise, when they are sick, that they are well nursed and have proper medical attendance. The former go as they can, viz. naked, or dressed in tattered clothes, which, perhaps, after all, do not fit them; and when one of them dies, it is a common saying, that the company gets another for nine gilders.

The violent hurricanes from the north-west have more than once occasioned shipwreck in these roads. In 1692, three vessels, one English and two Dutch, were driven on shore and lost. From the same cause, thirty years ago, in the month of May, seven of the company's ships were said to have been wrecked and lost.

On the 31<sup>st</sup> of July a slave was executed, who had murdered his master. The delinquent being

laid on a cross and tied fast to it, first his arms and legs were burned in eight different parts with jagged tongs, made red hot; afterwards his arms and legs were broken on the wheel, and lastly, his head was cut off and fixed on a pole. The judge that tries and condemns the criminal, is always present, and walks in procession to the place of execution, in order to give solemnity to the ceremony. The soldiers form a circle. The place of execution is between the town and the citadel, on a small eminence.

On the 8th of *August*, a slave was hanged for some great crime.

After malefactors have suffered at the place of execution, within the town, they are always brought out in the evening to the gallows without the town where they are either hanged, and that generally in irons, in which manner the skeleton may be preserved for a long time, or else drawn and quartered. There are two gallows out of the town, one at the entrance to the harbour, under the *Leeuwe-staart* (Lion's tail) on which Europeans are hanged, and the other beyond the citadel, near *Zout rivier*, on which slaves and Hottentots are executed.

*Zout-rivier* (or Salt-river) is a river of considerable size, which derives its source from *Table-mountain*, and disembogues itself into the harbour.

The

The water here is salt, from the admixture of sea water, and rises and falls with the tide.

The oak (*Quercus robur*) and apricot (*Prunus Armeniaca*) blossomed in August, the former, just after it had thrown out its leaves, and the latter, before it had any leaves. The alder also, (*Betula alnus*) as well as the almond and peach-tree, were now in blossom.

In the winter-months, when much rain fell, the water was in some places seen rushing like a torrent through the clefts of the mountains, down the highest, steep, and bare rocks.

Though the colony is inhabited to a great extent, and the Hottentots are almost extirpated, yet it sometimes happens that slaves run away and hide themselves, and that chiefly in the mountains. But it is very uncommon for a soldier or sailor to run into the country, as he would easily be discovered there. When an unconverted slave runs away and is taken, he is beaten by his master or the officers of the police; but if a Christian deserts from the company's service, he is hanged. The money laid out in the purchase of the former, saves him from death, but the established laws do not spare the latter.

For the use of the soldiers in the citadel, cooks are taken into it, who dress victuals, and sell them out in portions to the soldiers. Every



soldier receives from the company three pounds of bread twice a week.

Every soldier pays out of his wages two stivers per month to the courier for boots, and is besides obliged to keep guard for him.

Those wretches that are guilty of bestiality, are not put to their trial, or imprisoned, but are immediately drowned, as being unworthy to appear before the judge, or to be visited by a clergyman. In this manner a slave was now executed.

The fiscal is independent in his office, not being subordinate to the governor, and accountable only to the directors in Holland. When disputes and contentions arise between burghers or others, he fines them. The fine here is not proportioned to the crime of the offenders, but, for the most part, suited to their circumstances. The fiscal therefore, to whom these fines furnish a considerable revenue, treats turbulent and offending persons as a physician does a plethoric patient, of whom he always draws blood in proportion as the strength of his habit will permit.

*Constantia*, consisting of two farms, called *Great* and *Little Constantia*, which are situated below the east-side of Table Mountain, is celebrated for its highly delicious wine, known by the name of *Constantia* or *Cape wine*, which is sold

fold in Europe at so high a price. This wine is extremely sweet, agreeable, and luscious, and only fit for the dessert, as, on account of its sweetness, if drank in abundance, it lies heavy on the stomach. Of the red wine, about sixty pipes are made, and of the white about ninety; yet the vintage here, as in other places, is different in different years. These two farms were for a long time the only spots which, by reason of their situation, could produce this delicate wine; but lately some other farms in this district, and in a few other places, have been able to bring their wines to the same degree of excellence. But as the company has reserved to itself the exclusive sale of the Constantia wine, which consequently is considered as contraband, and is not to be bought or transported to Holland under that name by individuals, they have hit upon the expedient of giving their wine, which in point of goodness does not yield to Constantia, the name of *Mag* wine (or *Stomach*) which in general is sold to the naval officers of foreign nations cheaper than the Constantia wine itself.

It is remarkable, that the governor increases his revenue by every pipe of wine purchased on the account of the company. The company usually pays forty rixdollars for every pipe, and the seller gives a receipt for forty, but receives no more than twenty-seven rixdollars, three being

ing deducted for the clergyman's tythe. Ordinary wine is sometimes sold at the rate of ten rixdollars a pipe, as was the case one year that I was at the Cape. As a pipe contains about one hundred and twelve gallons, the wine is consequently very cheap. In like manner other persons in office make considerable profit on every thing that passes through their hands, which they are indeed often obliged to do, as their salaries cannot support them in a country where most of the necessaries of life are many times dearer than they are in Europe. Thus, while the governor makes ten rixdollars of every pipe of wine that is sold, other officers find their advantage in giving leave of absence to people who receive pay from the company without doing any service for it. Some make their fortunes by false weights, others by damaged goods. A shipwreck fills the pockets of many. In consequence of the rapacity of the captains and their mates, the sailors seldom get their due. The soldiers must yield something to their officers. The sick must starve for the support of many that are in health, and the defunct must leave part of their effects to the first comer.

The governor this year caused a hot-house to be built in the company's garden for pine-apples. This fruit, so delicate at Batavia, could not arrive here at the maturity and high flavour that

it

it does in the East Indies; in like manner the *Pisang* (*Musa Paradisiaca*, or *Bananas*) would seldom blossom in the few gardens where it was cultivated, and never yielded any fruit that was perfectly ripe and high flavoured.

The American Aloe (*Agave Americana*) imported from the botanic gardens of Europe, was now common on the hills near the town, and blossomed finely every year, without attracting such a great concourse of spectators as it does at Amsterdam.

The Porcupine, or Yzer-varken (*Hystrix*) whose usual food is the root of that beautiful plant, the *Calla Æthiopica*, will frequently deign to put up with cabbages and other vegetables, by which means he sometimes commits great depredations in the gardens.

By the Swedish ships that were newly arrived, and brought several of my friends, I not only had the pleasure of receiving letters, but also the joyful tidings of the happy change of government made last year in my native country, by which a great and good king, without bloodshed, and in a manner as noble as his conduct was wise, had been able to put an end to the discord which for many years had divided his subjects, to the great detriment of the kingdom.

In my various excursions to Table Mountain, I observed in its crevices both *Dasses* and *Baboons*. The former I perceived generally near the top of the mountain, just at sun-rising, when they used to come out to bask in the sun. Whoever wished to shoot them, must cautiously approach them, and with a quick gun take his aim in such a manner, as to lay them dead on the spot. If the gun was not quick, they would make off, as soon as ever the prime flashed in the pan; and, if the animal was not instantly killed, it would withdraw into a crevice, so that it could not possibly be got out. The flesh is sometimes eaten, and is tolerably well tasted.

The baboons were pretty numerous, and indeed dangerous to travellers; for sitting undismayed on the tops of the rocks, where they were frequently out of the reach of shot, they would roll, and even throw down, stones of all sorts and sizes. The use of the gun, however, was on these occasions indispensibly necessary, as by means of it they might at least be driven to such a distance, that the stones they threw could not do so much mischief. It is curious to observe them in their flight. With their cubs on their backs they will often make astonishing leaps up a perpendicular rock; and it is but seldom that they can be shot; and ever

if any one of them is shot, it is not easily killed.

In the town, tame baboons are sometimes kept, made fast to a pole. Their agility in climbing, leaping, and dodging any one that offers to strike them, is almost incredible. Though one of these baboons was tied up, still it was impossible at the distance of a few yards to hit him with a stone. He would either catch the stone, like a ball, in his hand, or else avoid it in the most surprizing and nimble manner.

The baboons of Table Mountain, besides paying frequent visits to, and plundering the gardens of the Europeans, feed also upon the pulposus bulbs of several plants, which after digging up, they peel and eat. Heaps of these parings were frequently seen left after them, particularly near the stones, where they reside. The *Gladiolus plicatus* appears to be the most favorite plant with those that live near the Cape, for which reason also this plant is known by the name of the *Baboon*. The root of this table is sometimes boiled and eaten by the colonists.

In the sandy plains near the Cape, the great white African mole (*Marmota Africana*) is more particularly to be found, and that in abundance. It makes large holes in the ground, over which it lays little heaps of mould; these holes are  
very

very inconvenient to people in walking, who step down into them unawares, and are frequently in danger of falling. The size of it is nearly equal to that of a cat; it is of a fierce nature, and, when caught, defends itself with its teeth. It feeds on several sorts of bulbous roots that grow in these sandy plains in abundance, especially *Gladioluses*, *Ixias*, *Antholyzas*, and *Iris*es. As I have not found this animal delineated by any author, I have given a figure of it here. PENNANT mentions it at p. 472, under the name of the *African Rat*.

Those that are but in a small degree acquainted with botany need not be told, that by the opening and closing of flowers one may frequently know with certainty, as from a watch, what hour of the day it is, as well as if the weather will be fine or rainy. Plants of this kind are common on the African hills.

The *Moræa undulata* never opens before nine o'clock in the morning, and before sun-set, at four in the afternoon, it closes again.

The *Ixia cinnamomea* (*Avondbloem*, *Canelbloem*) opens every evening at four, and exhales its agreeable odours through the whole night.

The approach of rain is announced by the flowers of various bulbous plants, such as the *Ixias*, *Moræas*, *Iris*es, and *Galaxias*, the tender flowers of which do not open in the morning, if  
rain

rain is to be expected soon; and if a shower is to fall in the afternoon, they close some time before.

Several of these likewise diffuse an agreeable fragrance, particularly at evening or night, somewhat like the odour of pinks, but fainter; such are the *Gladiolus tristis* and *recurvus*, the *Ixia pilosa*, *falcata*, and *cinnamomea*.

The *Earth-rose* (Aard-roos) was the name by which the inhabitants both of the town and country distinguished the *Hyobanche sanguinea*, a plant with a low deep-red flower, which is scarcely of a finger's length, and has neither branches nor leaves. It grows in winter and spring in the low sandy plains, both near the town and elsewhere towards the sea-shore, pushing only its cluster of blood-red flowers above the ground. The *Antholyza ringens*, with its gaping flower, and the ever-varying *Gladiolus plicatus*, which decorate these sandy plains in abundance, have their pulposus bulbs deep down in the sand, and do not raise their flowers much higher than the *Hyobanche* above the surface of the ground.

During the winter months, three beautiful species of *Gardenia* were blowing in the company's garden. The *Gardenia florida* was probably brought hither from the Indies; at least in my travels in this southernmost angle of Africa, I

never



never perceived it growing wild any where, but always planted in the gardens; and that even among the colonists far up in the country. Here it always produced double flowers, and consequently no fruit, which the Chinese use for dying yellow. The *Gardenia Rothmannia*, which has less conspicuous flowers than the former, and of which both the flowers and fruit, on being dried, always turn black. The *Gardenia Thunbergia*, with respect to its bloom, one of the finest trees in the world. This little tree had been brought a few years before from the forests of the country, where it is scarce, and grows very slowly, the wood being at the same time so hard, that on this account it is used for clubs. This tree, after it has once begun to blossom, continues to blow for several months, producing fresh blossoms every day, as fast as the old ones by degrees fade and droop, and at length fall off. The blossom is almost six inches long, white and thick, like the most beautiful wash-leather, of an agreeable odour, and does not lose its white colour.

If the cold in this country were severe, and it were absolutely necessary for the inhabitants to keep fires in their ordinary apartments, it would be a wretched country indeed, on account of the great want of fuel it labours under. The wood that is used for dressing their victuals in the kitchen is nothing but brushwood,

brushwood, being got with no less pains than expence from the smaller trees and bushes. On making some enquiry concerning this matter, I found that the following were the most commonly employed for this purpose; viz. the stems and roots of the *Protea grandiflora*, *conocarpa*, *speciosa*, *hirta*, *mellifera*, and *argentea*, a few species of *Erica*, and some sorts of *Brunia*.

In a country like this, where it is for the most part impossible to have recourse to an apothecary, and the medicines sent from Europe extremely dear, the inhabitants had prudently thought of trying the indigenous plants of Africa; and among these they had discovered various useful remedies in different diseases. As a botanist and physician, I was eager to be acquainted with them, and never lost an opportunity of adding to the slender stock of my knowledge, which often proved serviceable both to myself, and the benevolent and obliging colonists. For when any of these could impart to me, in their plain and artless way, a slight notion only of some useful plant, I was able afterwards to give them a more accurate idea of its true use in curing diseases.

Many *Gerania*, with their red and pulpous roots, grew in the sandy plains near the town; and as these roots are of an astringent nature,

the country people used them in the diarrhœa and dysentery.

The root of the *Bryonia Africana* was employed both as an emetic and a purge.

The roots of the *Asclepias undulata* (Bitterwortel) and *Crispa*, as well as the whole of the herb *Eriosephalus*, were used for the purpose of expelling urine in the dropsy.

For the same purpose also they frequently made use of the root of the *Hæmanthus coccineus*, instead of squills, or the *Scilla maritima*. This plant is very common on the hills below the mountains, and hence has obtained the name of the *Mountain-squill*. Its root is large, white, mucilaginous, fibrous, and somewhat acrid. After being cut into slices, it is steeped in vinegar, and from this is made a kind of weak *Oxymel scilliticum*, which is used in dropsies and asthmas.

The *Polygonum barbatum*, which grows in ditches, and is of an acrid nature, is, like its kindred species, used for dropfical and swelled legs.

A decoction of the leaves of the *Crotolaria perfoliata* was esteemed a powerful diuretic, and, in consequence of this property, to cure dropsies.

The *Piper Capense* was in some places used as a stomachic, instead of common pepper; and the

the *Fagara Capensis* (wilde Cardamom) was of great service to many people in the flatulent cholic, and the palsy.

The juice of the *Mesembryanthemum edule* was used both as an internal and external remedy: internally for the dysentery and the thrush (*aphthæ*) in children, and externally for burns.

They were very loud here in the praises of the *Osmites camphorina*, to which they were pleased to give the name of *Bellis* (or daisy). This plant has certainly great merit on account of its camphorated principle, and its strong poignant smell and taste, both of which evince it to be of a highly resolving nature. The plant itself is sometimes used externally, applied in bags to inflammations, and on the stomach in cholics. But the spirit distilled from it, called *Spiritus bellidis*, was highly esteemed in coughs and hoarseness. In these cases, however, it appeared to me to be too heating; but I used it more than once with advantage in the palsy and apoplexy. The genuine species, or the *Osmites camphorina*, which is the very best, I found growing on the top of *Table-mountain* only; and as it was obtainable only by a few, the *Osmites asteriscoides*, which has a fainter smell and weaker virtues, was used in its stead. As an astringent in the diarrhoea, the rough and austere bark of the *Protea grandiflora* was frequently used. In the en-

virens of the town grew likewise various plants, which the inhabitants had learnt to convert to their own benefit when afflicted with disorders; as, *e. g.*

The *Adonis Capensis* and *Atragene vesicatoria* (*Brandblad*) used instead of *Cantharides*: these plants grew on the sides of the mountains and hills; and were exhibited in the sciatica and rheumatism.

The *Adiantum Æthiopicum* (*Vrouwebaer*), a species of maidenhair, grew chiefly on the sides of the *Devil's mountain*, and was drank as tea, in colds and other affections of the breast.

The *Protea mellifera* (*Tulp-boom* and *Zuyker-boom*) contains in its calyx a sweet juice, which, when inspissated, was used in disorders of the breast.

The *Salicornia fruticosa* (*Zee koral*, or sea coral) grew on the sea-shore, and notwithstanding its brackish taste, was eaten by the soldiers and some few others as a salad, dressed with oil and vinegar.

Besides the company's dispensary which was at the hospital, another was founded this year in the town, by which means the country people may now have a better opportunity of procuring medicines than they had before, when they were obliged to purchase them of the surgeons at a very high price.

From

From the *Oxalis cernua* (wilde Syring) which grew to the greatest size and in the greatest abundance of all the species appertaining to this genus, was prepared a good and serviceable *Sal acetosellæ* (or salt of wood-sorrel).

• *Hard-looper* (or *Fast-runner*) was a name given; on account of the swiftness with which it ran, to the *Carabus 10-guttatus*; an insect that frequented several places, and often the highways themselves. This animal has the same property as our Swedish *gunner* (*Carabus crepitans*), viz. that when it is pursued or caught, it blows out with violence from behind a liquid, which has the appearance of a thin fine smoke, diffusing itself all around, and if it gets into the eyes, making them smart just as if brandy were squirted into them. By these means it blinds its pursuers, and gets an opportunity of escaping, while the pain lasts, which is about a minute or two.

*Fiscal* and *Canary-byter* were the appellations given to a black and white bird (*Lanius collaris*) which was common in the town, and was to be found in every garden there. As it was a bird of prey, though very small, it sought its food among the insects, such as beetles and grasshoppers, which it not only caught with great dexterity, but likewise, when it could not consume them all, it would stick them up on the pales of farm-yards till it had occasion for them,

so that one would have supposed them to have been empaled in this manner by human beings. It also caught sparrows and canary-birds, but did not devour any more of them than the brains.

A beautiful green thrush (*Turdus ceilonicus*) frequented the gardens of the town, and delighted the ears of the attentive burgher with his sweet song.

The winter rains having moistened the dry hills in the environs of the Cape, various beautiful and elegant flowers of bulbous plants began to spring in the month of August. The plants that were more particularly common were the *Ixia bulbocodium*, which varied much in the size and colour of its flowers; the *Moræa collina* and *spathacea*, the dependent leaves of which twined round the feet of the perambulator, and frequently threw him down: and the *Moræa undulata*, the flower of which has the appearance of a large spider, and attracts the flies called blue bottles by its fetid smell. The elegant family of the *irises*, however, especially the *papilionacea*, excelled all others in the superb grandeur of their flowers, which was greater than can be expressed.

Caffre-corn (*Holcus caffrorum*) was cultivated by some few people in their gardens as a rarity, and grew to the height of a man, bearing large clusters of flowers; consequently it is a very profitable

profitable kind of corn, but requires a great deal of heat.

The *Mirabilis dichotoma* (*Vieruurs bloem*, or four o'clock flower) was planted in a few gardens; both for the beauty of its flowers, and its singular quality of closing them every evening at four o'clock.

Among the various sorts of fish that appeared on the tables at the Cape, were the *Chimæra callorynchus* (*Dodskop* or *Joseph*) the flesh of which is white and well-tasted; and the *Raja miraletus* (or *Rock*). The *Raja torpedo* too (called here *Trill visch*) was sometimes caught in the harbour, but not brought to table.

Pelicans with their large claws, called here *Kropgans* (*Pelecanus onocrotalus*), which are not scarce on the coast, were also kept in a tame state, and lived on fish, and food of a similar nature, by the water-side.

Of the *Restio dichotomus* (*Beefem-riet*) brooms were made to sweep the floors with.

The singular name of *King of Candia* was given by the inhabitants to the *Hæmanthus coccineus* and *puniceus*, one of the largest and most beautiful flowers that made their appearance towards winter on the hills of the Cape, exhibiting in stately pomp its blood-red clusters of flowers that grew close to the ground, and bare of leaves, which, previously to the blowing of the plant, had



withered and disappeared. After the flowers, comes the fruit; and this is succeeded by the leaves alone, which are but two in number, and lie down flat on the ground, like those of the *Amaryllis ciliaris*: which latter plant, with its leaves fringed with black hairs, grew all over this district, though it was never once seen to blossom.

Besides the chameleon, which changes its colour, there were two lizards, very common on the hills near the town; the *Lacerta stellio* and *orbicularis*, sitting every where on the stones, and basking in the sun. Both of them made a hideous appearance with their protuberant points, and when any body approached them, ran quickly down under the stones to hide themselves.

The Hottentots generally elect a chief, whom they call captain; and as they pretend to be in alliance with the Dutch East-India company, the captain whom they have elected, is to be confirmed by the governor at the Cape. One of these captains was now come to town, attended by a few Hottentots, to be confirmed in his new dignity, and, agreeably to ancient custom, receive some presents. As a token of his authority, he is presented with a stick, mounted with a large brass head, on which are engraved the company's arms. The captain heads the troops when they take the field, either against their enemies,

enemies, or for the purpose of hunting wild beasts, on which occasion he also throws the first spear. In other respects, very little more regard is shewn to him than to the rest; and the chief difference between them seems to be, that he commonly wears either a calf's or a tiger's skin, while the rest are clad in sheep-skins.

In winter, when the north-west wind blows stormy into Table-bay, whales are sometimes driven in. One of these fish had lately been cast on shore dead. It was above two fathoms long. From its back, which lay above the water, they cut out large pieces, in order to extract train-oil from the blubber.

In like manner, during this season, there arrived at the numerous islands that lie round about the Cape, a great number of seals, which in this part of the world, are commonly called sea-dogs, because while they are bounding up and down in the water, they bear some resemblance to a dog. There they breed at this time, and bring up their young ones, and are caught in abundance for the company, for the purpose of making train-oil. It is singular that the sea-dog, which is, in fact, a marine animal, cannot swim by nature, as soon as it comes into the world. It is the same case with this as with some kinds of birds, which cannot fly till they are taught by the mother. Thus it is that the sea-dog learns

of

of its mother to swim. When the young seal is arrived at a certain age, his mother catches him by the neck and throws him into the water, where he plashes about, till at length he begins to sink : the mother then catches him up again, and thus makes him try several times, till at last he can swim and go out to sea.

The farming out of wine and victuals produces to the company a considerable revenue. The former was now, according to annual custom, sold by auction on the last day of August. And he who bids highest becomes the farmer-general of the wine-contract, having the exclusive right of selling wine, not only to strangers and to the officers of the Dutch ships, but also to the inns and taverns. The owners of vineyards, it is true, may dispose of their wine to the burghers at the Cape for their own consumption : but neither they nor any one else are suffered, under a heavy penalty, to sell a single drop of it to any other person. By this means the wine comes very high to foreign nations, and at the taverns a bottle costs several times as much, as it does to private people at their own houses. The farmer of the wines has alone the power of retailing out wine himself, or of permitting others, who keep inns, for a certain consideration to do the same. The revenue from the wine contract amounts yearly to between 30 and 40,000 guilders.

The

The victualling contract is conducted in a different manner. He that bids the lowest at the auction is appointed the farmer general of this monopoly; viz. he that offers to furnish the company with fresh meat for its ships and its other exigencies at the lowest price. From this contract, it is true, the company receives no pecuniary advantage; but then it gets all its meat at a much lower price, than it otherwise could possibly be obtained. It is in consequence of this contract also, that the burghers as well as strangers, are obliged to pay an extravagant price for butchers meat. Thus whilst the company gets butchers meat for two doits per pound, the burghers must pay at the rate of four or more, and strangers two stivers: and while a bullock, fit for slaughter, is commonly sold for five Dutch rixdollars, strangers must pay at the rate of ten or more. This contract is farmed out for one, two, three, five, or seven years; and certain spots near *Groene-kloof* are ceded to the contractor for pasture-grounds without any separate charge.

On this account, as well as on that of the language, which strangers do not always understand, every nation whose ships anchor here, is obliged to have a commissary or broker, who manages their concerns, and also contributes, as far

as

as in him lies, to raise the price of every article to them.

Wheat, when it is wanted by foreign nations for exportation, is only to be had of the company. The French ships frequently exported it in the course of this and the last year to the Isle of France.

Many people, and particularly the sailors, instead of butter, used to purchase the fat that had been melted down from the large tails of the African sheep. One of these tails, weighing twenty pounds, consists of nothing but fat, which is the highest luxury of the Hottentots. This fat is laid down in tubs with some salt and pepper, and used at sea with bread in lieu of butter.

Ostriches eggs were mostly purchased by the naval officers. They are in general the perquisites of slaves, who, in tending their cattle, frequently find places in the sands where the ostriches have laid their eggs. During the time of incubation, a dozen, and sometimes even a score, of these eggs (though for the most part fewer) are to be found in one place. The slaves always use the precaution not to take away the eggs with their hands (in which case the birds, who perceive it by the scent, are apt to quit the nest); but by means of a long stick they rake them out of the nest as fast as the birds lay them.

them. These eggs sold in general for a skelling a piece, or about sixpence English. They are fittest, and most used for cakes and œufs perdus; and they are particularly good, when eaten with a large quantity of butter. One single egg is sufficient for several people. And whereas hens eggs will seldom keep for any length of time on board of ship, and require great pains to be taken with them in order to turn them every day, ostriches eggs are easily preserved at sea, on account of their size, and of their thick and strong shell.

The *Camphor tree* (*Laurus camphora*) brought from the East Indies, and planted here, throve very well, though no great pains were taken to increase the number of them, or collect any camphor from them.

In like manner Turmeric (*Curcuma longa*) was cultivated on a small bed in the company's garden; the root was scarcely ever used here, though it is so much in request in Europe for the purpose of dying, and in the East Indies enters into almost all their dishes.

During the whole time that I staid at the Cape (almost a year and a half) I never observed that any public fair was kept here. In fact, fairs are not usual in this country. In their stead, public auctions are the more frequently made for all sorts of foreign merchandize, especially such as is brought here from the

various

various factories belonging to the company in the different parts of the East Indies.

The burghers in the town generally make an agreement with some of the surgeons in the hospital to attend them and their families, and furnish them with medicines. This is the more necessary, as they have always a number of slaves, and sometimes dangerous epidemic distempers prevail among them. This circumstance is the cause that the physicians and surgeons, who come as strangers to this place, and stay some time at it, are scarcely ever called in, unless they can work miracles. My medical practice in the town consequently was not very extensive; neither, indeed, did I strive to enlarge it, for fear of being impeded in my botanical pursuits. On the other hand, I had the greatest opportunities of assisting the country people, in my medical capacity, who were both in greater want of my aid, and more grateful to me for it. Almost always, and every where, I observed that my medicines acted with the greatest efficacy as well as certainty upon the slaves, whose constitutions were not so much impaired by improper diet, and were, besides, less accustomed to the use of remedies.

Though slaves are not usually instructed in the doctrines of Christianity, nor their children baptized, the Dutch East-India company take

care that the children born in the lodges of their own female slaves are baptized, and in some measure instructed in the Christian religion. The reason for this, perhaps, may be, that most of these children have European fathers, to whom they frequently bear the most striking resemblance.

The children thus issued from Europeans, I had frequent opportunities of seeing married to Black women. Their progeny, however, were not always like each other. I once saw issued from such a couple, one son, who was black, with large eyes, and resembled his mother; another, who was rather of a white complexion, but varied with black spots scattered up and down, and, upon the whole, bore a greater resemblance to the father; and a girl, that was half black.

When the Negroes are wounded in any part of their bodies, and these wounds heal again, the scars at first are white, but the skin afterwards grows black by degrees.

I saw an old Hottentot here, who was very much afflicted with an erysipelas in his leg. The erysipelas discovered itself by its usual bluish-red colour; and on the black ground it had a very frightful appearance. Otherwise it was very rare to find any of these people with blemishes on any part of their bodies, and much more so, to see any among them crippled. As  
they



they not only live sparingly, but also on unseasoned and unsalted food, they are in general subject to few diseases. The changes of the climate are almost the only causes of the rheumatisms and fevers which sometimes prevail among them; yet, still these distempers are much more scarce among the Hottentots that enjoy their liberty, than among those who have entered into the service of the Dutch colonists.

As far as I had an opportunity of travelling last summer, both to the northward and eastward, in this extensive country, I met with but small remains of the once more or less numerous Hottentot nations, which, as late as the beginning of this century, still inhabited these vast plains. It is true, as fast as the colonists spread over the country in gradual succession, the Hottentots have been obliged to retire, and make room for the dwellings and cattle of the Europeans; but it is an undoubted fact also, that the small-pox, a new and to them unknown distemper, has, like a pestilence, exterminated the greater part of them. Now there are only a few scattered villages (*kraals*) or societies of them to be found, in which state they either live by themselves, or are taken into service at the company's posts and grazing-farms, or else by the colonists themselves. For the most part, these societies, especially in the vicinity of the  
Cape,

Cape, are far from being numerous ; but farther in the country they are both more populous and more wealthy. The few remains of them that still exist, have, in some instances, retained the names of their tribes ; but more frequently those names are retained which formerly distinguished each nation separately, and are applied to the district itself, and to the larger rivers which ran through the country, or form the limits of it. The better the country was provided with water, the more populous were the inhabitants, and the more cattle they possessed ; still, however, the whole nation did not amount to more than a few thousand men, and each of their districts formed a smaller or larger province.

The *Gunjemans Hottentots* were those that lived nearest the Cape, and on the very point itself ; they extended as far as *False Bay*, the *Hottentots Holland Mountain*, and from thence to the left as far as *Stellenbosch*. This country is extensive, but consists in a great measure of a sandy unfruitful soil. These were the first, who, in barter for certain merchandizes, ceded to the Dutch East India company a tract of their country ; and of these there are but a few, and I had almost said none, now remaining.

The *Kokoquas nation* inhabited the country that bordered upon the Cape on the northern

side, in the environs of *Groene kloof*. In my first expedition, which was directed towards that side, I met with several of this nation still in being, and even received from the company's posts two of them to attend me on the journey. Their country, like that of the preceding tribe, is low, level, and sandy, is much in want of water, and was formerly not very populous, neither have the colonists been able to cultivate every part of it. It extends as far as the shore of the ocean; and has a few small hillocks dispersed over its surface.

In continuing my journey to the northward, and to *Saldabna Bay*, I visited the *Sussaquas* Hottentots, some of whom were still remaining. As the country is every where low, sandy, and in want of fresh water, this nation was always very considerable, and subsisted by grazing.

The Hottentots that live still farther to the northward, and are descended from tribes that were once numerous, I had not the opportunity of visiting in this excursion, but proceeded more towards the mountains in the east, and the tracts of land that lay beyond them. However, from the inhabitants in these parts I got particular information concerning the neighbouring nations, which I was in hopes of visiting at some future period. From these I learned,  
that

that all along the sea-coast, and round about *St. Helena's Bay*, in a low, steril, and sandy tract, the *Odiquas nation* borders on the *Suffaquas*. The next neighbours to these are the *Chirigri-quas*, a more populous and wealthy nation, which inhabits a fine grazing country, watered by the great *Elephant's River*: and these again have for their neighbours two great and famous nations, the *Little Namaquas*, who live on the sea-coast, and the *Great Namaquas*, who reside farther from

In the excursion I made the preceding summer, I visited, in going, and returning, almost all the nations that once inhabited the eastern tract or the coast of Caffraria. After passing the mountain called the *Hottentots Holland Mountain*, I came to a hilly and mountainous tract of land, which was inhabited as far as the hot-bath by the *Koopman's nation*; next to these, on the sea-coast, were the *Sonquas Hottentots*, whom on my return homewards I had to my left. The country of these latter is rather barren, and not much subject to the incroachments of the Europeans.

Next to the Koopmans is the *Hessaquas nation*; of this but few remain. And more towards the east, near the great and deep river *Zonder end*, is the country once inhabited by the *Dunquas Hottentots*.

*Gauriquas* land extends more to the north-eastward: this is a very fine country, and abounds in grafs; it is watered by a considerably large river, called *Goud's Rivier*, and was formerly very populous.

Travelling further on, and following the shores of the ocean, one comes to the *Houtni-quas* Hottentots, who in their hilly and woody country have remained the longest sheltered from the Europeans; and had hitherto suffered so little from their encroachments, that of all the Hottentots I had as yet seen, no nation was more considerable in point of numbers, till I came to *Kamtous River*.

Farther to the northward, and near the large valley, through which one must pass in order to go to Lange-kloof and the adjacent country, occurs the district of the *Ataquas Hottentots*, which is mountainous and abounds in grafs.

Still farther to the eastward, following the coast, one finds first the *Kamtours* nation, then the *Heykoms*, and, lastly the *Caffres*. All these nations are in possession of hilly and extremely rich meadows, intersected by many, and those frequently considerable rivers, abounding in fish. And as these people have not hitherto been subject to the encroachments of the colonists, though a few grazing farms have already been laid out here,

here, they are not only numerous, but also rich and abound greatly in cattle.

All these Hottentots, whom I visited in their own country, agreed in this particular, that they were mostly short, thick, and slender, with prominent cheek bones, flat noses, protuberant mouths, peaked chins, crooked backs, and pot-bellies. The colour of their skins was yellowish, but more or less dark from grease and dirt. Their hair is of a singular nature, curling like wool, and on most of them as short as the knaps of frize cloth, but sometimes, though seldom, of a finger's length, when it looks like twisted yarn; but few of them have any vestiges of a beard; and when they have, it is curling like their hair. The other sex always have their breasts hanging down to a considerable length. All of them are mad after brandy and tobacco, and find a peculiar pleasure in filth and stench. They besmear themselves with grease, and powder themselves all over with the fetid substance called *Bucku*, or the powdered leaves of the *Diosma*. A sheep's skin thrown over their shoulders, and another over their loins, with a small bag for the male, and a square bit of skin for the female sex, constitute almost the whole of their apparel. Besides this, they also wear on their heads a skin-cap, and, by way of ornament, rings of iron

or copper round their arms, strings of beads round their wrists, and rings of leather round their legs. The huts, in which they live, are low and small, and convex like a hay-stack. They always sit squat on their hams; are nimble and active, but, in general, extremely lazy. Their furniture is scanty and mean. Their dishes are tortoise-shells. The water they have occasion for they keep in the guts of animals; and milk in baskets and goat-skins. Their wants, it is true, are not great; nevertheless their poverty displays itself in every particular.

The *Galenia Africana* was known under the appellation of *Kraal-bosch*, and in some places was used for fences about the inclosures for their cattle, when no other bushes fit for the purpose were to be had.

Almonds were sold here, not by the weight, but by the hundred and thousand. They were bought up in great quantities by officers who went to Batavia, where they could sell them to advantage.

Strawberries (*Fragaria vesca*) had been brought from Holland, and planted out in beds in the gardens round the town. They were transplanted every third year. They sold at a high price, and to great advantage, and were well tasted, though they had not so delicious a flavour as those that grow in Europe.

Mulberry-

Mulberry-trees (*Morus nigra*) were found at several of the farms near the town, and produced ripe and fine fruit, which however was seldom seen in the markets.

In the beginning of September the slaves used to weed the corn-fields, both the barley, which is ripe and reaped in November, and the wheat, which is reaped in December.

An unfortunate accident happened about this time. A huntsman who had accompanied Major Baron VON PREHM, the commander of the garrison here, in a short excursion into the country, lost one of his hands in consequence of the bursting of his gun, and was brought into the citadel. He had taken aim at a *Koor-baen*, and probably loaded his piece too high. Accidents of this nature are not uncommon in this country, where sound and good guns are extremely scarce. Many other people had lost a hand in the same manner; and the late Governor TULBAGH, who from the condition of a private soldier had risen to the highest post of honour, had lost one of his eyes by the bursting of a gun. The same misfortune had like to have befallen me also this winter, as I was shooting in the harbour at some of the pelicans, which fly over it every evening in large flocks. On the firing of the gun, the whole stock was broken into a thousand splinters,



several of which wounded my face and hands. To prevent such an accident from happening to me again, the celebrated Captain EKEBERG, who commanded a Swedish ship, that anchored this year in the road, presented me with a handsome and sound Swedish gun, which ever after, during my residence and travels in Africa and the island of Java, was a safe and constant defence to me.

The *Loxia Afrild*, on account of its red beak, was called Rood-beckje, or *Red-beak*, and was found in great numbers in the farmers gardens. They usually flew in large flocks; and lighted in the grass, so close to the ground that they could not be seen, though on account of their multitudes, one was sure to kill a great many of them at one shot, notwithstanding that it is a bird of the smallest size.

Turtle-doves (*Columba risoria*) were common in this country, particularly in places where there was much under-wood. They were seldom eaten by the country people. It is remarkable, that this bird cannot remove from one place to another without laughing afterwards. This laughing noise, as well as its cooing, always betrays its place of abode. The flesh of it tasted rather dry.

Green Mountain swallows (*Merops apiaſter*) were also to be seen near some of the farms,  
and

and that frequently in the greatest numbers. These birds are extremely beautiful in their yellow and sea-green attire. In the day time they seek their food, which consists of insects, in the fields; but in the evenings they return in flocks, chirping in such a manner as perfectly to deafen one. They then assemble together by degrees in the gardens, and at length go to roost in the branches of orange and other trees before it grows quite dark.

The month of *September* was already begun, and the beautiful and flowery spring making its appearance, put me in mind of preparing for a long journey up the country. But here more obstacles and disagreeable circumstances threw themselves in my way than I could ever have imagined. The trifling viaticum I had brought with me from Europe, I had long ago consumed, and in the seventeen months which I had passed here, I had received no supplies from Holland. At Amsterdam, indeed, I had great and powerful patrons in the Burgomasters RYK TEMMINK and VAN DER POLL, together with the Privy counsellors VAN DER DEUTZ and TEN HOVEN, by the persuasions and at the expence of whom I had undertaken this long voyage; but to my great misfortune, both of the governors, TULBACH and RHEEDE VAN OUDSHOORN, to whom I was strongly recommended, and from whom

whom I had reason to expect every support, had departed this life, the one dying previously to my arrival at the Cape, and the other in the voyage thither. I was therefore a stranger, in an unknown place, and left to myself and to my fate till my friends at Amsterdam could be informed of my situation, and endeavour to better it. Misfortunes seldom come single; and I had now my double portion of affliction. For when I intended to take up my salary from the company, it appeared, that the ship in which I had arrived, was come without its muster-roll. This was therefore first to be brought from Europe, before any one could receive his pay. When the ship sailed from the Texel, the visitation officers in their hurry had forgot to deliver in the muster-roll, and the captain to demand it. The consequence of this was, that none of all those that were engaged on board the ship, could, during the space of two or three years, either obtain their pay or leave to go home. The visitation officers (*kruyd leefers*) are two of the company's servants of the lowest rank, who are stationed in each ship during the time that the ship lies at anchor in the Texel: these people have the inspection over every thing that is brought on board, and the care of providing the ships with what they want every day, till they go out to sea.

sea. These, who in order to keep account of the officers and crew, had the muster-roll in their possession, were interested scoundrels, and more intent upon being treated and bribed, and selling and bartering their cheese and butter, than they were sober and vigilant in the performance of their duty.

The preceding year I had been obliged to contract debts to a considerable amount, and had now no other resource left than to increase them, especially if I were to be enabled to undertake another expensive journey into the country, and not to remain an idle spectator at the Cape. I therefore again had recourse to M. BERGH, the secretary of the police, who had not only hitherto kindly assisted me with his purse, but also generously opened it to me on this occasion, and thereby enabled me to make another excursion into the interior part of the southernmost point of Africa.

My equipage was in most respects the same as that of the foregoing year, with this difference, that instead of the old broken cart, I had a new one, which was tilted with sail-cloth. I was also now the sole possessor of it, and avoided being incumbered with the serjeant and gardener, who the year before greatly contributed to render a small cart still more insufficient for my wants. Besides boxes, paper, amuni-

tion, and other necessaries, I also took with me this year several medicines to distribute among the colonists in the interior parts of the country, who might stand in need of them, and had before upon various occasions shewn me the greatest kindness.

For my fellow-traveller I had an English gardener, of the name of MASON, who had been sent hither by the King of England to collect all sorts of African plants for the gardens at Kew. Mr. MASON arrived the year before, in the same ship in which Captain Cook, with the Professors FORSTER and SPARRMAN, were to make their celebrated voyage round the world, and towards the southern pole. He had arrived at the Cape after I was set out on my journey to Caffraria; and shortly after this he made an excursion into the country, accompanied by Mr. OLDENBURG, who went with him, partly as his companion, and partly as his interpreter. Mr. MASON was well equipped with a large and strong waggon tilted with sail-cloth, which was driven by an European servant, upon whom he could depend. We had each of us a saddle-horse, and for our waggon we had several pair of oxen.

Thus we formed a society, consisting of three Europeans and four Hottentots, who for the  
space

space of several months were to penetrate into the country together, put up with whatever we should find, whether good or bad, and frequently seclude ourselves from almost all the rest of the world; and of the human race.

END OF VOL. I.









# I N D E X.

---

## A

- AARD-root**, 287  
**Aard varken**, 137  
**Aapies rivier**, 199  
**Accumulation of sand in**  
     **harbours**, 2, 5  
**Adiantum Æthiopicum**, 292  
**Adonis Capensis**, 292  
**Æsenlus hippocastanum**, 3  
**African rat**, 286  
**Agave Americana**, 25, 283  
**Air in Holland**, 26  
**Albuca major**, 146  
**Alder**, 279  
**Almonds**, 310  
**Almond tree**, 279  
**Aloe (gum)** 171  
     — **perfoliata**, 171  
     — **succotrina**, 213  
     — **tree**, 171  
     — **American**, 25, 283  
**Amaryllis ciliaris**, 296  
**Amsterdam**, 9, 13, 25, 64  
**Animals, domestic**, 135  
**Anise, the root of**, 149  
**Ant-eater**, 137  
**Antholyza ringens**, 287  
**Anthyllis**, 176  
**Antelopes**, 145, 146, 156  
     — **horn**, 206  
**Anys wortel**, 149  
**Ao rivier**, 183  
**Aphthæ**, 291  
**Apples**, 103  
**Aponogeton diastychon**, 156  
**Apothecary's shop**, 52  
**Apricots**, 279  
**Arbours**, 164  
**Arctopus echinatus**, 128,  
     234  
**Arduina bispinosa**, 163, 164,  
     190  
**Ark**, 269  
**Arnheim**, 152  
**Ascites (in sheep)** 164  
**Asclepias**, 167, 290  
**Asparagus Capensis**, 244  
**Assagay**, 181, 205  
     — **wood**, 181  
**Asterias caput Medusæ**, 249  
**Asthma**, 291  
**Atragene vesicatoria**, 174,  
     292

# I N D E X.

- Attaquas-kloof Hottentots, 172, 175  
 Auctions, 48, 97, 240, 260  
 AUGE, 105, 183, 184  
 Avond bloem, 286  
  
**B.**  
 Baboons, 284  
 Babians-kloof, 266  
 BADENHORST'S farm, 216  
 BÆCK, 218  
 Bags, leathern, 178  
 Balliftes, 89  
 Bamboos, 116  
 Baptism, 140, 262  
 Barley, 129  
 Baskets, 204  
 Bath (warm) 160, 215  
 Batteries, 121  
 Bay Falfo, 269  
 Bay tree, 263  
 BEAUMONT, Director, 69,  
     72.  
 Beams, 252  
 Beans, 207  
 Bed at Paris, 46  
 Beer, 130  
 Beesem-riet, 116, 294  
 Beetle, 149  
 Beds of mountains, 223, 224,  
     235  
 Berg rivier, 152  
 Bestiality, 280  
 Betula Alnus, 279  
 Befantjes, 97  
 Bellis 291  
 BERGH, 315  
 BERGIUS, 105, 219  
 Bicetre, 43  
 Bills, 239  
 — transferable, 74, 110  
 Bitumen, 166  
 Bitter wortel, 290  
 Blaar-ziekte, 159  
 Blauwe Jean, 64  
 Bles Moll, Blinde Moll,  
     263  
 Bloedziekte, 151  
 Blood, decoction to purify,  
     128  
 Bloody sickness, 151  
 Boards, 252  
 Bois de Boulogne, 51  
 Boomslang, 156  
 Booter rivier, 217  
 Borbonia, 128, 243  
 Boshiesmen, 264  
 BOTA, 166, 176, 189, 197  
 Bottles, 204  
 Botanic garden, 18, 34  
 Brabeium stellatum, 129,  
     215  
 Brack fontein, 143  
 Brack rivier, 176  
 Brand blad, 292  
 Brand steeg, 159  
 Brand-ziekte, 168  
 Breede rivier, 159, 213  
 Bread tree, 201  
 Bread, 182, 201, 280  
 Breast, Hottentots, 182  
 Broker, 299

Brunia,

# INDEX.

- Brunia, 289  
 BRUYNS, 268  
 Bruyntjes rivier, 167  
 Bryonia Africana, 128, 290  
 Bucku, 170  
 Buffeljagts rivier, 168  
 Buffalo's flesh, 192, 195  
 Buffalo bull, 184, 187  
 Buffaloes, wild, 195, 205  
 Bulbous plants, 4, 14  
 Bupleurum giganteum, 158,  
     159  
 BURMANNUS, 15, 16, 24,  
     25, 64, 105  
 Burghers, 139, 140, 302  
 Burns, 291  
 Burial, 95, 135, 139  
 Butchers meat, contract for,  
     299  
 Butter, 122, 191, 251  
  
 C.  
 Cabeljauws rivier, 203  
 Cabinet of Natural History,  
     37  
 Caffres, 204, 206, 208,  
     308  
 Caffre corn, 294  
 CAILLE, M. de la, 101,  
     222  
 Calla *Ethiopica*, 128, 283  
 Calodendron, 213  
 Calvary mount, 51  
 Camassie hout, 169  
 Camels for ships, 9  
 Camenassie land, 211  
 Camphor, Camphor trees,  
     301  
 Camtous rivier, 203, 308  
     —— Hottentots, *ib.*  
 Canals, 12  
 Cancer, a disease, 211  
 Cancer squilla, 63  
     —— arctos, 240  
 Canelbloem, 286  
 Canarie byter, 293  
 Candles, 167  
 Cannons, 127  
 Canna bush, 991  
 Cannabis sativa, 188  
 Cap, Hottentot's, 177,  
     178  
 Capicum, 234  
 Capra, 145, 197, 206  
 Captain, 296  
 Cape of Good Hope, 99,  
     100, 118, 119  
 Cape town, 121, 138, 228  
 Carabus 10-guttatus, 293  
 Cardamom, wilde, 291  
 Carnival, 50  
 Carrow field, 163, 211,  
     212  
 Castration, 147, 163  
 Castor-oil, 145  
 Castanien wilde, 12  
 Castle, 123, 205  
 Cattle,

# I N D E X.

- Cattle, disorders of, 151, 618, 209  
 Cat-silver, 166  
 Cauliflower, 234  
 Cavia Capensis, 165, 166  
 Chameleon, 296  
 Charanton, 51  
 Charité, Hôpital de, 43  
 Cherry trees, 104  
 Chestnuts, wild, 129, 215  
 Cheese, 250  
 Chimæra callorynchus, 95  
 Chinese, 99  
 Chirigriquas Hottentots, 307  
 Chimnies, 111  
 Chiming clocks, 5, 12  
 Church, 110, 118.  
 Chrysomela, 210, 214  
 Churn, churning, 122, 145, 198  
 Citadel, 106, 121  
 Clouds, 135  
 Clothes, 96  
 Cliffortia, 243  
 CLUTE, 212.  
 Company's post, 168  
 Constantia, 134, 280  
 Cook, Captain, 316  
 Colutea vesicatoria, 160  
 Coaches, 12  
 Coccus, 211  
 Coffee, 7, 27, 129  
 Cohabitation, 137  
 Coins, 230  
 Collections of Natural History, 3, 15, 18, 19, 34, 37, 44, 52, 59, 64  
 Colic, 167  
 College, naval, 38  
 Coluber, 156  
 Columba risoria, 312  
 Cold, 112, 122, 187  
 Commodities, sale of, 115  
 Commissary, 299  
 Contract for wine, &c. 298  
 Cooperage, 111  
 Cooks, 311  
 Copenhagen, 3  
 Cough, 292  
 Courier, 280  
 Cows, 192, 250  
 Crassula tetragona, 202  
 Crisis in fevers, 92  
 Crooked river, 200, 201  
 Crotalaria perfoliata, 290  
 Crows, 149  
 Cucumbers, 156  
 Currant tree, 104  
 Curcuma, 301  
 Curtisia, 181  
 Customs, officers of, 31, 33, 101  
 Cuttle fish, 146  
 Cyder, 32  
 Cyperus textilis, 192  
 Cyproea moneta, 177

# INDEX.

## D.

Dances, 204  
 Daffes, 165, 284  
 Daffes p—, 168  
 Deaths, accidental at Paris, 48  
 Deaths on board of ship, 98, 99  
 VAN DER DEUTZ, 313  
 Devil's mountain, 222, 223  
 DIAZ, Bartholomew, 100  
 Diep rivier, 188, 199, 201  
 211  
 Diet of the sick, 94  
 Diarrhoea, 202, 228, 290, 291  
 Diosma, 170  
 Dispensary, 292  
 Disorders, prevention of, 93  
 ——— on board of ship, 91  
 Disa, 220  
 Divers, 145  
 Dodskop, 295  
 Dogs, 246  
 Dolphins, 91  
 Domestic, 102  
 Dorn rivier, 211  
 Draught oxen, 181, 189  
 Drakenstein, 254  
 Dropsy, 129  
 ——— in sheep, 164  
 DROSKIS farm, 166  
 Drum, 193

Du BUT, 39  
 Du MAS, 38, 39  
 Dubbeltie, 148  
 Ducks, 144  
 Dunquas Hottentots, 307  
 Duynhout, 268  
 Duyvenhoek's rivier, 169  
 Dysentery, 290, 291

## E.

Earth rose, 287  
 Ear-rings, 204  
 Ebb and flood, 8, 61, 62  
 Ecole de Medicine, 40  
 ——— Royale veterinaire, 51  
 ——— pratique, 41  
 Eland, 197  
 Elands fontein, 197  
 ELECBURG, captain, 312  
 Elephants warm bath, 214  
 Elk's fountain, 143, 197  
 Elfineur, 5  
 EMANUEL, King, 100  
 Emetics, 128, 290  
 Emollient remedies, 128  
 Enamelled eyes, 55  
 Enemy, provision against, 127  
 Enging at Marli, 60  
 Equipage for travelling, 144, 315  
 Erioccephalus, 136  
 Erica, 289  
 Erysipelas,

# INDEX.

- Erysipelas, 303  
 Estabosch, 200  
 Euclea undulata, 202  
 Euphorbia, 145, 152  
 Examination, medical, 41,  
     51  
 Exercise, military, 253  
 Execution of malefactors,  
     14, 263, 278, 280  
 Exocoetus, 90  
 Eyes, diseases of, 100  
 Ezelsjagt, 211  
  
     F.  
  
 Fagara Capensis, 167, 291  
 Fair at Amsterdam, 64,  
     301  
 Falco secretarius, 148  
 False bay, 269  
 Farms, farm houses, 122,  
     251, 257  
 Farmers, 126, 253, 255,  
     256, 257  
 FEHRSEN, 99  
 Fences, 165, 234  
 Fête dieu, 54  
 Finches nests, 150  
 Fire wood, 233, 289  
 Fire pitchers, 47  
 Firing of land, 179  
 Fiscal, 280, 293  
 Fish, 27, 295  
 Flag, hoisting of, 127,  
     236  
 Flamingoes, 144, 267, 269  
 Flint, 62  
 Flies, 214  
 Flying fish, 90  
 Fodder for horses, 129  
 Fog, 26, 265  
 Folds for sheep and cattle,  
     164  
 FORSTER, Dr. 316  
 Fountains, 5, 23  
 Four and twenty river, 152  
 Fowls, 171  
 Fractures, 166  
 Fragaria vesca, 310  
 Franche hoek, 254  
 Frere's farm, 199, 200  
 Fruits, 103, 257  
 Furlough, 108, 252  
 Furniture, 256  
 Fucus buccinalis, 91, 98,  
     218  
  
     G.  
  
 Galaxia, 286  
 Galena Africana, 310  
 Gallows, 278  
 Garden, pleasure, 16, 21,  
     22, 45, 103, 114, 262  
 Garden, botanic, 18, 25,  
     34, 44, 52, 59  
 Garden,

# I. N. D. E. X.

- Garden; physic, 25, 54, 64  
 Gardenia, 287, 288  
 Gatagay-root, 149  
 Gauriquas Hottentots, 308  
 Ganse-kraal, 211  
 Geelhout, 169  
 GEOFFROI, 59  
 Geranium, 128, 289  
 GERT's house, 166  
 Gethyllis, 116  
 Gift-borm, 156  
 Gladiolus, 285, 287  
 Goats (capræ) 145  
 Gobelins, 55  
 Goldfinch, 249  
 Gonnorhæa, 128  
 Goort Vaders bosch, 169,  
     213  
 Goose's kraal, 211  
 Gooseberry tree, 104  
 GORDON, Major, 265  
 Gouds rivier, 172  
 Gout, 129  
 Grandfather's wood, 169  
 GRILLING, 152  
 Groene kloof, 299  
 GRONOVIVS, 19  
 Groote valley, 172  
 Groote Dorn rivier, 211  
 GRUB, 105  
 Guards, French, 53  
 Guarri-bush, 202  
 Guaiacum, Afrum, 207  
 Gunner, Swedish, 293  
 Gunjemans Hottentots, 305  
 Gypsum, crystals of, 167  
  
 H.  
 Haantje, 144  
 Haartebeest, 145  
 Haartebeest rivier, 159  
 Hæmanthus coccineus, 290  
 Hair, 131  
 Hell, 169  
 Helsingborg, 1  
 Harbours, 32, 146, 189  
 Hard-looper, 293  
 Hare's blood, 202  
 Harpuys, 211  
 The Hague, 121  
 Hanglip point, 266  
 Havre de Grace, 30  
 HAZEN's garden, 20  
 Hazel, 104  
 Hedges, 31, 35, 45, 114,  
     160, 213  
 HEMMING, 124  
 Hemp, 188  
 Hessaquas Hottentots, 307  
 Hex rivier, 159  
 Heykoms, 308  
 Hides, Buffaloes, 195  
 Hill, 51  
 Hippopotamus, 207  
 Hogs, Chinese, 216  
 Holathuria physalis, 97  
 Holcus Caffrorum, 294



# INDEX.

Honingklipp, 172

Honingberg, 172

Honfleurs, 63

Hoof distemper, 209

Horfes, 142

Hortus Siccus, 18

Hospitality, 138

Hospitals, 25, 42, 43, 52,  
118, 225, 248

Hotel Dieu, 43

Hottentots, 130, 131, 170,

173, 174, 177, 178, 179,

180, 181, 182, 183, 187,

189, 192, 196, 198, 199,

202, 203, 206, 207, 263,

264, 296, 297, 303, 310.

Hottentots Hollands kloof,  
217

Hottentots figs, 163

Hothouse, 282

Hout baay, 266

Hout hoek, 217

Houtniquas, 175, 196, 197,  
308

Houfes, 10, 19, 21, 32, 46,  
102, 123, 124, 180, 183,  
192, 194.

TEN HOVEN, 313

Hunting, 247

Hunter, 311

Huts of the Hottentots, 180,  
183, 192

Hyobanche, 287

HYFHOFF, 146

Hydriz, 48

## I.

Ilex crocea, 169

Inns, 35

Intestines of animals, 207

Invalids, hospital of, 43

Iris, 286

Iron, 135

— rings, 203

Ivory rings, 203

Ixia, 286, 287, 294

Jackall's kraal, 19

JAGER's farm, 197

Jaffi, 65

Javanese, 132

Javanese prince, 134

Javelins, 181

JONGE, THOMAS, 270

Joseph, 295

Journal, Surgeon's, 95

Journies to the Cape, 142,  
143

Justice, courts of, 253

## K.

Kafunkel-berg, 266

Kapock-bird, 136

Keerom rivier, 176

Kidnappers, 73, 107

KIES, captain, 131

Kraijebosch, 149

Krakous rivier, 171

— hoogt, 171

Kromme rivier, 200, 201

KRUGERS farm, 200

Kruid-lesers, 314

Keureboom's

# INDEX.

- Keurebodem's rivier, 167,  
197, 211  
King of Candia, 295  
Klaw Ziekte, 209  
Klein fontein, 176  
KLEINHOFF, 65  
Klipp-drift, 199  
Knofflook, wilde, 156, 244  
KOK, JACOB, 202  
Kokoquas Hottentots, 305  
Koopmans Hottentots, 307  
Korrhaan, 144, 148  
Koree rivier, 163, 165  
Kraal, 164  
Kraal-bosch, 310  
Krakeel rivier, 199  
Kropgans, 295  
Kukumakranka, 116
- L.
- Lacerta, 296  
Lambs, 123, 163  
Lame distemper, 151  
Lam-ziekte, 151  
Lanius collaris, 293  
Land, quality of, 122  
— birds, 98  
Landroft, 167  
Lange kloof, 198, 200,  
210  
Lanterns, 48  
Laurus camphora, 301  
Laurus mobilis, 114, 263
- Leading string, 14  
Learning, incitements to,  
41  
Leathern sacks, 194, 197  
Lectures, 38 & seq.  
Leyden, 17  
Leprosy, 65  
Lent, 50  
Leuwebosch rivier, 201  
Leeuwe rivier, 167  
Lichten, 110  
Light upon the water, 30,  
89  
Lime tree, 104  
LINNÆUS, 105, 218  
Lions, 201  
Lions mountain, 222, 235,  
265  
Lizard, 296  
Lobster, Cape, 240  
Looris rivier, 203  
Loxiæ, 150, 219, 312  
Lumbrici, 135  
Lutheran worship, 237  
Lutherans at the Cape, 237  
Luxembourg, 49  
Lycoperdon carcinomale,  
211  
Lycium Afrum, 171
- M.
- MASON, Mr. 265  
Mag-wine, 281  
Maalströms,

# INDEX.

- Maalftrons, 165  
 Malagafis island, 269  
 ——— kraal, 197  
 Malmucks, 91  
 Man of war bird, 97  
 Maquas Hottentots, 198  
 Marmota Africana, 263,  
     285  
 ——— Capensis, 263  
 Marriage, 140, 255  
 Matjes kloof, 159  
 ——— valley, 159  
 Maurice's heights, 163  
 Measles, 119  
 Meal hours, 138  
 Medicine chest, 77  
 Medicinal plants, 128  
 Medusa's head, 240  
 Melkhout kraal, 188  
 Meloë Cichorei, 200, 211  
 MENTZ, 167  
 Merops apiaster, 312  
 Mesembryanthemum, 163,  
     211, 291  
 Mica argentea, 166  
 Mile stones, 35  
 Milk, 197  
 Mimosa nilotica, 165, 211  
 Minister, 159  
 Mirabilis dichotoma, 295  
 Misgunst, 199  
 Moles, 263  
 MONTIN, Dr. 219  
 Montinia, 128  
 Morus nigra, 311  
 Moræa undulata, 286, 294  
 Mosterts hoek and farm,  
     143, 153  
 Mountains, 60, 61, 119,  
     122, 145, 152, 154, 159,  
     160, 163, 168, 171, 175,  
     190, 198, 202, 213, 217,  
     219, 225, 235, 236, 254,  
     255, 257, 258, 264, 267,  
     269  
 Mountain rat, 166  
 ——— river, 152  
 ——— swallows, 312  
 ——— squill, 290  
 Muffs, 47  
 Mugge kruid, 148  
 Mulberry tree, 311  
 MÜLLER, 184  
 Murmuring noise from the  
     sea, 29  
 Musa Paradisiaca, 283  
 Muscles, 29  
 Music, 204  
 Muster, 68  
 Muster roll, 314  
 Muysenberg, 249, 267  
 Muysen kraal, 213  
 Myrmecophaga, 137  
 Myrica, 166, 249, 267  
 Myrtle tree, 104  
 Mytilus edulis, 29

# I N D E X.

## N.

Namaquas Hottentots, 307  
 Neifena, 183  
 Nerita histrio, 177  
 New year, Javanese, 132.  
 NICKERT's farm, 200  
 Nightingale, 150  
 NIMWEGEN, 211  
 North hoek, 267  
 North west wind, 226, 227,  
 228

Norway, 6, 268  
 Norweegen, 268

## O.

Oaks, 104, 154, 279  
 Oats, 149  
 Odiquas Hottentots, 307  
 Officers, naval, 113, 115,  
 260  
 OLDENBURGH, 316  
 Olea Europæa, 232  
 — Capensis, 172  
 Oleum Ricini, 145  
 Olive tree, 172, 232  
 OLIVIER, 154  
 Olyfant's warm bath, 214  
 Onverwagt, 200  
 Opblaazers, 150  
 Oranje fontein, 145  
 Orchis, 220  
 Ornithogalum, 153

Osmites, 291  
 Ostriches, 145  
 ——— eggs, 178, 300  
 OUDSHORN, vide Rheede  
 Otis, 144  
 Oxalis cernua, 293  
 Oxen, 141, 142  
 Oxymel scilliticum, 290  
 Oysters, 29

## P.

Palais des Marchands, 49  
 Palmit rivier, 171  
 Palsy, 291  
 Pancakes of white lead, 79  
 Parade, 32  
 Paradise, 134  
 Paris, 35  
 Passlover eggs, 53  
 Patellæ, 241  
 Peaches, 104  
 Pears, 103  
 Pepper, 170  
 Pelicans, 295  
 Phænicopterus, 144, 267  
 Pharnaceum mollugo, 148  
 Phoca, 98, 147  
 Picketberg, 152  
 Pilot, 63  
 PINARD, Daniel, 34, 172  
 Pine apples, 282  
 Pine tree, 134  
 Pinn-wortel, 214

Pinus

# INDEX.

- Pinus sylvestris*, 134  
*Piper capense*, 170, 323  
 Pipes made of sheep's bones,  
     205  
*Pifang*, 283  
*Pifang rivier*, 189  
 Pits for animals, 181  
*Placemen*, 282  
 PLANT'S farm, 188  
 Planks, 252  
*Platte kloof*, 213  
 PLETTENBERG, Baron, 100  
 PLOI, MICHAEL DE, 159  
*Plough*, 253  
*Pncumora*, 150  
 Poisoned arrows, 203  
 VAN DER POLL, 313  
*Polygala*, 244  
*Polygonum barbatum*, 290  
*Populus alba*, 104  
*Porcupines*, 128, 204, 283  
*Post-boat*, 59  
*Post-coach*, 34  
 Pots of the Hottentots, 207  
*Potteslaan*, 193  
*Poultry-house*, 172  
*Prayers*, 110  
 Preservatives on board of  
     ship, 78  
 VAN PREHM, 311  
*Priest*, 159  
*Processus mamillaris*, 207  
 Procession in the Hotel Dieu,  
     36  
*Professors*, introductory, 66  
*Protea*, 116, 143, 289, 291,  
     292  
*Pforalea pinnata*, 214  
*Purge*, 128  
*Puspas rivier*, 167  
     — valley, 167  
*Pyrus cydonia*, 160  
  

Q.

*Quaiman's drift and rivier*,  
     180  
*Quarantain*, 8, 16, 31  
*Quartz*, 224  
*Quercus robur*, 104, 279  
*Quinces*, 160  
  

R.

*Rabies canina & vulpina*,  
     172  
*Raja miraletus*, torpedo,  
     295  
*Rain*, 179, 180, 200  
*Rat*, African, 285  
*Ration or allowance*, 95  
*Regulations on board of*  
     ship, 71  
*Restio*, 116, 248, 295  
 RHEEDEVAN OUDSHOORN,  
     234, 313  
  

Rheumatism,

- Rheumatism, 175
- Rhinoçeros's horns, 246
- bladders, 204
- Rhus, 171
- Ribeek casteel, 152
- Ricinus, 145
- Riet fontein, 166
- Riet kraal, 169
- Rings, 203
- Ringhals, 208
- Rivers, 122, 149, 152, 159,  
160, 166, 169, 171, 172,  
176, 180, 183, 188, 189,  
197, 199, 203, 211, 212,  
213, 217, 278
- Roads, 2, 22, 122, 176
- Robbe berg, 191
- Robben Eyland, 237
- Rock, 172, 269
- Rock-cryстал, 169
- fish, 295
- Romance rock, 269
- Rondebosch, 134
- Rondecrantz, 68
- Rood beekie, 312
- Roode zand, 152, 159
- Ropes, 176
- Rosemary, wild, 136
- Rouen, 32
- Roux, the Enameller, 55
- LE ROUX, 166
- VAN ROYEN, 18, 105
- Rumex spinosus, 148
- Runaway slaves, 279
- Rye, 232
- S.
- Sack milk, 197
- Sailors, 110
- Sal acetosellæ, 293
- SALAYRES, 39
- Saldahna bay, 145
- Salicornia fruticosa, 292
- Salsola aphylla, 199
- Salt meat, 257
- Salt pans, 269
- Sand heaths, 136
- Sand river, 165
- Sand vliet, 176
- Sand ridge, 241
- Scars in black people, 299
- SCHELLING, M. 65
- Schistus, 163
- Sciatica, 292
- Scolopax Capensis, 144
- Du Scu, 43
- Sea-horse, 207
- Sea-cow, 207
- Sea coral, 292
- Seals, 98, 147, 297
- Secretaries vogel, 148
- Secretary bird, 148, 214
- Seed at the Cape, 136
- Seed-vessels of the Euphor-  
bia, 145
- Rumex,  
148
- Protea
- argentea, 116

# INDEX.

- SEELE, Frederic, 180  
 Sepia, 146  
 Serapias, 220  
 Seriphium, 268  
 Serpents, 127, 156, 214  
     —— bite of, 127, 155,  
         208  
     —— poison of, 156,  
         203  
     —— stone, 155  
 Sheep, 123, 128, 163, 171,  
     211  
 Sheep's dung, 156  
     —— stomach, 202  
     —— tails, 300  
 Shells, 241  
     —— mixt with earth,  
         116  
 Shin bones of sheep, 124  
 Ships, 2, 7, 9, 67, 228,  
     238, 283  
 Ship's diet, 6  
     —— officers, 113, 115,  
         260, 261  
 Shipwreck, 63, 270, 277  
 Shoes, 195  
     —— (field-) 195  
 Shoe-blacks, 47  
 Shops, 33  
 Shrimps, 63  
 Sick, visits to the, 93  
 Sick, on board of ship, 72,  
     101  
     —— attendants upon, 92  
 Sickles, 211  
 Sideroxylon toxiferum, 156  
 Simons bay, 269  
 Slange rivier, 212  
 Slange steen, 155  
 Slange kop, 160  
 Slange bosch, 268  
 Slate, 163  
 Slaves, 99, 102, 114, 115  
     140, 233, 234, 302  
 Slave-house, 112  
 Small pox, 119, 199  
 SMIDT's farm, 213  
 Snipes, 144  
 Snow, 154, 259  
 Soap, 199  
 Soil at the Cape, 129  
 Solanum nigrum, 157  
 Soldier, 101, 106, 111, 138,  
     279, 280  
 Soldier's pay, 109  
 Solen filiqua, 201  
 SONNERAT, 219—221  
 Sonchus oleraceus, 146, 157  
 Sophora Capensis, 167  
 Sound, 255  
 South-east wind, 134, 135,  
     225, 226, 227  
 Sow-thistle, 146  
 Spar, calcareous, 166  
 SPARRMAN, Professor, 99,  
     316  
 Spiritus bellidis, 291  
 Spitting box, 26

# I N D E X.

- Spons ziekte, 151  
 Staart pepper, 170  
 Stadthoufe at Amsterdam, 14  
 Steenboks, 145  
 Steenberg's hoek, 267  
 Stellenbosch, 253  
 St. Jago, 88  
 Stinkhout, 169  
 Stomach wine, 281  
 Stone,  
 Stoves, 33, 112  
 Strand dubbeltje, 241  
 Strangury, 151, 152  
 Strata of mountains, 223, 224, 235  
 Straw for thatching, 248  
 Strawberries, 310  
 Streets, 3, 11, 46  
 STREIDUNG, MATTHEW, 199  
 Strelitzia, 191  
 Suet of mutton, 199  
 • SUGUR, Dr. le, 121  
 Su-koa, 193  
 Sulphur, clay impregnated with, 145  
 Surgeons, 302  
 Suffaqua's Hottentots, 306  
 Summers at the Cape, 232  
 Swallows, 157  
 SWIEGER, 154  
 Syrentie, 243  
 Syring, wilde, 291  
 T.  
 Table mountain, 219—224, 264, 265  
 Tail pepper, 170  
 Talpa Asiatica, 263  
 Tamarinds, 233  
 Tantalus, 200  
 Tea, 7, 27, 128  
 Testudo, 182, 243  
 Texel, 7, 9, 28, 70  
 TEMMINK, 313  
 Thé fontein, 145  
 Theft, 77  
 Threshing of wheat, 16  
 Thrush, 294  
 Thrush, green, 294  
 Thrush in children, 291  
 Thirst, 211  
 Tide, 8, 61, 62  
 Tiger, 147, 212  
 Tiger berg, Tiger mountain, 255  
 Tiger hoek, 213  
 Tilia Europæa, 104  
 Tinder, 159  
 Tintirintjes, 153  
 Tobacco, 34, 131, 188, 196, 206  
 Tobacco pipe, 206  
 Toll gates, 101  
 Tongueless woman, 53  
 Tortoises blood, 127, 203  
 Tortoise shell, 182, 194  
 Train



# I N D E X.

- Train oil, 147, 297  
 Travellers, fellow, 189, 190, 316  
 Treekschuyt, 17  
 Trees, planting of trees, 34, 104, 116, 126, 130, 134, 136, 145, 149, 156, 160, 163, 167, 169, 174, 172, 179, 181, 190, 199, 201, 202, 207, 211, 213, 215, 232, 233, 243, 248, 249, 252, 254, 263, 267, 268, 279, 283, 288  
 Trianon, 59  
 Trichius laticollis, 149  
 Trill-vifch, 295  
 Trumpet-grafs, 91, 98, 218  
 Turdus Ceilonicus, 294  
 Turf, 21  
 TULBAGH, 105, 199  
 Tulbaghia alliacea, 156, 244  
 Tulp-boom, 292  
 Tung ziekte, 209  
 Turkey, wild, 200  
 Turmeric, 301  
 Turtle doves, 312  
 V.  
 Vals rivier, 171  
 VASCO DE GAMA, 100  
 Vauxhall, 49  
 Vermin among poultry, 172  
 Vett rivier, 171  
 Viscum Capense, 166  
 Vines, planting of, 126  
     wild, 134  
 Vinegar, 202  
 Vineyards, 130, 252  
 Vitis vitiginea, 134  
 VIVIER, 176  
 Umbilicus veneris, 241  
 University, 19, 39, 40, 51, 66  
 VOGTS rivier, 166  
 Vomiting, 202  
 Vrouwe-haar, 292  
 Uyle kraal, 145  
 Vygen, Hottentots, 163  
 W.  
 Waageboom's rivier, 200  
 Waferland, 152  
 Waggon, 142  
 Wakteen betje, 244  
 Warm bath, 159, 160, 214, 215  
 Water, 28, 46, 90, 125, 210, 279  
     — spout, 89  
     — conduits, 210  
 Water uynties, 156  
 Watervall, 213  
 Wax shrub, 166  
 Weeds in corn-fields, 311  
 Wel

# I N D E X.

Wel te vrede, 171

Welgevunden, 213

DE WETT, 153

Whales, 97, 98

Wheat, 137, 172, 216, 231,

300

— fields, 252

Whips, 142, 153

Whirlpools, 165

White lead in pancakes, 79

Wildschuts brand, 268

Will, or testament, 95

Winds, 117, 225, 226, 227

Wine contract, 298

Wine, Cape, 280

Wine, the making of, 244

Winter, 112, 115

Winterhoek, 153

Witfenberg, 154

Witte Moll, 163

Wittels rivier, 176

Wolfekraal, 211

WOLTEMAD, 273

Wolves, 124

Woods, 169, 177, 183, 196

Wool, 123, 164

Worms, 135

Y.

Yaws, 65

Yzer klippen, 135, 234

Yzer-varken, 128, 283

Z.

Zamia Caffra, 201

Zuyker-boom, 292

Zeeilverkoopers, 73, 107

Zeeko rivier, 201

Zeeko valley, 248

Zieke-Trooft, 234

Zoetemelk's rivier, 171

Zoetemelk's valley, 214

ZONDAG, Matthias, 198.

211

Zonder end rivier, 213

Zout fontein, 176

Zout rivier, 278

Zudwyk, 20

Zuyder zee, 8

Zwart hout, 268

Zwarte berg, 215, 216

Zwarte valley, 171

Zwellendam, 167

Zygophyllum morgfana, 164

## DIRECTIONS TO THE BINDER.

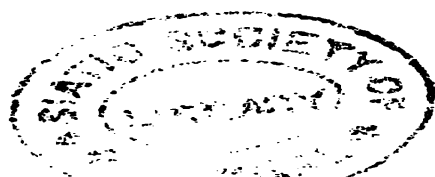
---

Place the Frontispiece to face the Title of Vol. I. and the *Marmota Africana* (or African Rat) and the large Plate of the Arms and Implements of the Hottentots, immediately after the Index to the same Volume.

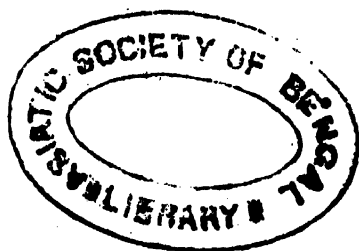
The four other Plates to follow their Explanation in the first Sheet of Vol. II.



*Marmota africana.*



**T R A V E L S**  
**I N**  
**EUROPE, AFRICA AND ASIA, &c.**  
  
**VOL. II.**



TRAVELS  
IN  
*EUROPE, AFRICA, AND ASIA,*  
MADE  
BETWEEN THE YEARS 1770 AND 1779.

IN FOUR VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

229

CONTAINING  
TWO EXPEDITIONS  
TO THE INTERIOR PART OF THE COUNTRY  
ADJACENT TO  
THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE,  
AND A VOYAGE TO  
THE ISLAND OF JAVA;  
PERFORMED IN THE YEARS  
1773, 1774, and 1775.

THE SECOND EDITION.

2890

---

BY CHARLES PETER THUNBERG, M.D.

Knight of the Order of Vasa, Professor of Botany in the University of Upsal,  
and Member of various Academies and learned Societies both in  
Sweden and other Countries.

---

LONDON:  
PRINTED FOR F. AND C. RIVINGTON, N<sup>o</sup> 62,  
ST. PAUL'S CHURCH-YARD;  
AND SOLD BY W. RICHARDSON, CORNHILL.

1795.





John Andrew  
Houghley 1899

---

---

P R E F A C E

TO THE

SECOND VOLUME.

---

I HAVE now the pleasure to present to the public this second volume of my Travels, in hopes that it may find as many candid and indulgent censors as the first.

It contains my residence during a winter at the Cape, two long journies to the eastward and northward of the southernmost point of Africa, a voyage to Java, and my residence at Batavia.

In the beginning of this present century, or in the year 1705, a thesis was published in quarto by M. SIMON MELANDER, under the inspection of professor HARALD WALLERIUS of Upsal, on the subject of the *Caput Bonæ Spei*, or Cape of Good Hope. This dissertation treats of the situation of the Cape of Good Hope, and, at the same

time, gives a geographical description of it; it also gives some account of the external appearance of the natives, their dress, mode of living, religion, government and manners, as far at least as, in those times, the Europeans could arrive at the knowledge of these particulars; although it must be confessed that the annexed wooden print, representing the Cape mountains, cannot boast of any high degree of elegance. Since this period, much more light has been thrown on this part of the extensive continent of Africa, and a great variety of more certain and authentic details, concerning the country and its animal and vegetable productions, have been communicated to the curious and inquisitive inhabitants of Europe.

VALENTYN also, in the fifth part of his extensive work, has given an account of this southernmost point of Africa; but as he only took a slight view of this place in passing by it, he necessarily derived the chief of his knowledge from the relations of others, upon which, as being of various degrees of credibility, different degrees of dependance were to be placed.

Mr. MASON, a skilful English gardener, who accompanied me in both my journies into the interior part of the almost unknown continent of Africa, has, it is true, on his arrival in England, given a short account of both these voyages, in a letter to Sir JOHN PRINGLE, then President of

the Royal Society at London, which is inserted in the Philosophical Transactions, Vol. LXVI. for the year 1776, P. I. page 268, together with the relation of his first journey in company with M. OLDENBURG. But as that narrative is very short, and the transactions of the society could not admit a more full and ample detail, it is hoped that this part of my narrative will not be considered as superfluous.

In so wild and almost desert a country as this part of Africa may justly be called, I have attempted to depict nature as she really is, and as she has exhibited herself to me after an attentive survey. And I have taken particular care to point out the appearance of the *mountains*, their extent, height, strata, &c. the knowledge of which is frequently of as great utility to the natural philosopher, as that of the situation of harbours, of their external appearances and anchorage, with several other particulars, is to the wary and cautious navigator.

Besides the two warm baths, of which I make mention in the first volume, I have here given a short account of two other warm medical springs in the African mountains, which are equally remarkable, and which yet no one hitherto has ever seen either smoking or in a state of eruption; neither can any one say with certainty,

that this promontory was ever shaken by an earthquake.

I have also here taken the opportunity of presenting the reader with an account of the singular *Salt-pans* which this country contains, and which, perhaps, are not to be paralleled in the whole world.

I have frequently added remarks upon *Animals*, the manner of catching them, their uses and noxious qualities, at the same time that I have avoided tiring the reader with prolix descriptions of them, and the synonyma and relations of other authors.

The *distempers of the cattle*, which are frequently different from those that are incident to the cattle in other countries, I have carefully observed and briefly described.

I have likewise in this volume, with a view to promote a knowledge of the human species, investigated, and delineated the mode of living, manners, ceremonies, marriages, funerals, amusements, music, musical instruments, arms, languages, &c. of the *Hottentots and other Indian nations*; to which I have added a short account of the *foundation of the colony at the Cape, its progress and present state*, as also of the various caravans, or expeditions, which have been at different times established by the government and colonists, for the sake of exploring the country.

I have

I have dedicated a few pages to the *Hottentot* and *Malay languages*, both of which are almost equally unknown at the great seats of learning in Europe. To many of my readers, these may possibly prove neither entertaining nor useful; but I flatter myself that by some philologists at least, they will be found neither disagreeable nor absolutely useless.

A description of the *Island of Java* has before been given by VALENTYN, in his large and extensive historical work on the East-Indies, Vol. IVth, as also by several other travellers; but, on making the comparison, the reader will find a very wide and important difference between us; as the chief aim of my researches has been to discover and examine what is beautiful and useful in nature, as also to investigate the manners and genius of foreign nations.

In order to give a better idea of the different utensils and weapons which are described in this second volume of my travels, I have likewise embellished it with a few plates. Books of travels generally abound with plates of castles, palaces, and other stately monuments of art; but there are frequently wanting in them the necessary delineations of habits, utensils, coins, weapons, and other particulars, on the subject of which it is not less important to be informed with respect to foreign nations. Of these I have given some engravings; although,

although, on account of the want of good engravers at Upsal, they are not so complete as I could wish; and have chosen such subjects withal as are not, to my knowledge at least, to be found in other authors.

The different sorts of coins, old and new, occurring in the various kingdoms of the East-Indies, of which few travellers have spoken, and which I have been at great pains and expence to collect, I have here either barely mentioned or briefly described, as I was willing to reserve the engravings of them for a separate and more circumstantial treatise.

Although my materials in this volume have frequently been of no very pleasing nature, yet I have endeavoured to make the detail of them as agreeable as possible. But that the truth might not suffer in consequence of this procedure, I have rather chosen to use a sober and serious, than a too lively stile; like physicians, that sometimes mix sugar with their most bitter medicines, but are careful, at the same time, not to destroy by too much sweetness all their salutary qualities.

As esculent and fit for food among the Hottentots, there occur in this volume the *Cyanella Capensis*, the roots of fennel, the *Iris edulis*, *Stapelia incarnata* and *articulata*, the gourd called *Coloquintida*, *Haliotis*, *Zamia caffra*, Karup,  
the

the Hottentots' Water-melon, the Hydнора; and, among the Indians, several delicious fruits, such as Ananas, Pisang, Gojavus, Carambola, Bilimbing, Mangoes, Mangostines, Arbutus, Cocoa-nuts, Jambo, the fruit of the Ratan Salac, Catappa, Papaija, Nanca, Annona, Boa Lansa, Nephelium, Solanum Melongena and Birds' nests.

As *Sweet-meats* and *Spices*, the Indians use Betel, Areck, Cayenne pepper, the root of Schoenanthus, Turmeric, the root of the Bamboo, Ginger, Cardamoms and Cloves.

For *quenching thirst*, likewise a scooling and refreshing, and for *producing intoxication*, some of the Hottentots use the Mesembryanthemum emarcidum, the Kameka, Gli, and Water-melons.

As *salutary* and approved *Remedies*, are used the Viscum æthiopicum, Indigofera arborea, Boa ati, Dodonæa angustifolia, Jambolifera, Durio, Carambola, Bilimbing, Citrus decumanus; and, as a strong *Poison*, the Amaryllis disticha.

In *rural and domestic Oeconomy*, as well among the Hottentots as the Indians, several articles occur very useful and necessary; for instance:

For *mats to sit on*, for the roofs of houses, and for covering waggons, the Cyperus textilis and slender ratans.

For *Lanterns*; Calabashes.

For *Quivers*; the Aloe dichotoma.

For *Catching flies*; the Fly-bush.



For *making charcoal*; the *Mimosa nilotica*, and *Protea grandiflora*.

For *Wood for bows*; the *Rhus*.

For *all sorts of Furniture and Joiners'-work*, there are many kinds of wood in the African forests and groves; such as the *Ilex crocea*, *Camassiehout*, *Roode Peer*, *Cunonia*, *Ekebergia*, *Curtisia*, *Stinkhout*, *Olea Europea* and *capensis*, the *Gardenia Thunbergia* and *Rothmannia*, the *White ash*, the *Royena villosa*, *Sophora capensis*, *Amandelhout*, *Mimosa nilotica*, *Leepelboom*, *Protea grandiflora* and *speciosa*, with others.

For *Dying*, the *Morinda citrifolia*, the rind of *Mangustines*, the *Indigofera nila*, and the *Hibiscus Rosa sinensis*.

In treating of foreign countries it frequently happens, that such words and terms occur as are not universally intelligible. As a few of these are to be found in the following sheets, I thought I could no where better explain them than here.

A *Valley* is nothing more than a rivulet, which is sometimes over-grown with rushes, and is broad in some places, and narrow in others.

*Brak-water*, is water stagnating in vallies and low places; it contains a kind of brine, and tastes more or less saltish.

A *Drift* is that part of a river, where the  
water

water is shallowest, and, consequently, where it can be crossed in a carriage.

*Hoek*, added to the end of certain words, such as Mosterts-hoek, denotes a projecting angle, or point of a mountain.

*Kloof* signifies a valley, or such a cleft in the mountains as is either inhabited by the Colonists, or admit of a passage through it on horseback or with a carriage of any kind.

In this second volume I have finished the relation of my three years residence at the Cape, having displayed the advantages which that country possesses with respect to climate, and to the improvements it has received in consequence of culture; and, at the same time, given some account of the poor and much to be lamented natives, who pass their lives in the most simple and artless manner, scarcely differing from the wild beasts with which they are intermixed, without arts and sciences, or any useful institutions; without connexion with any other than their nearest neighbours, who are equally ignorant with themselves; without either commerce or war with their more remote neighbours; without the least knowledge, or even idea, of the magnitude of the earth, its external appearance and nature, or of the celestial bodies which give them light, and yet pass almost unnoticed over their stupid heads.

The colony, which receives a daily increase from the Europeans, is even now very considerable, and it is in consequence of their attention and industry that several spots in it already resemble an earthly paradise, and that the country produces almost every thing that is necessary for the support of life. Nevertheless, many advantages of which Europe can boast, are here still wanting. This country has no lakes, no navigable rivers, no other fisheries than those that are near the shores of the ocean, or the mouths of rivers; no woods of any consequence or real utility, not even one pleasant grove; no verdant nor flowery meadows; no chalk hills; no metals worth the labour of extracting them from the ore; no looms nor manufactures; no universities nor schools; no post; no post-horses nor inns; nay, in so extensive a country as this, there are still, in many places, wanting both judge and courts of judicature, both clergy and churches, both rain from the heavens and springs in the earth, with many useful and indispensibly necessary institutions, which both now and hereafter may merit the consideration and care of a well-informed and prudent government.

# Explanation of the Plates

For the Second Volume.

## PLATE I.

- Fig. 1. A Caffre's NECKLACE of shells, with a turtle shell depending from it.
2. A Javanese KRIS in its scabbard.
  3. A Hottentot musical instrument called *Korà*.

## PLATE II.

- Fig. 1. A WUDONG, or Javanese Knife, in its sheath.
2. The blade of a WUDONG drawn out of its sheath.
  3. A Javanese strait KRIS drawn out of its scabbard and damasked.
  4. A Javanese undulated KRIS drawn out of its scabbard.
  - 5 & 6. A Javanese BADI, or Dagger, with its sheath.

## PLATE III.

- Fig. 1. A Javanese SABRE in its scabbard.
2. The SCABBARD, when the sabre is drawn out of it.
  3. A Hottentot STRING of differently coloured glass beads to wear about the neck.

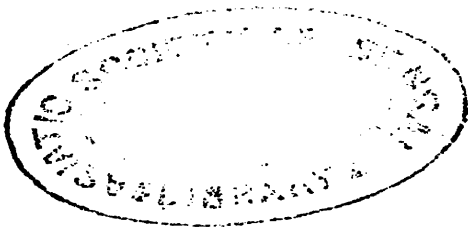
## PLATE IV.

- Fig. 1. A Hottentot string of Beads to wear about the body, formed of cylindrical pieces of glass of various colours.
2. A Hottentot string of glass beads of various colours.
  3. Pinang SCISSARS.



'

•









---

# T R A V E L S

I N

EUROPE, AFRICA, AND ASIA.

---

SECOND JOURNEY INTO CAFFRARIA, 1773.

WITH so slender an equipage as the before-mentioned, and in such a mountainous and desert country as Africa, I had resolved to make an expedition this summer into the country, to the North-east-ward, as far as the Snow mountains; and first directing my course to the northward, to pass afterwards through Gamdebo, and other most uncultivated tracts, without taking the nearest and most beaten road.

This resolve was indeed rather extravagant; yet I would not leave it unsatisfied, particularly as it was a matter of indifference to me what parts of the country I visited, provided only they were such as I had not seen before,

and where I might collect animals and plants hitherto unknown.

My fellow-travellers and I having set out from the Cape, on the 11th of September, 1773, we arrived first at one of the Company's posts, called JEAN BASIS *Kraal*, and then at *Riet-valley*, a farm where cows are kept, solely for the Governor's use, and for the purpose of furnishing his table once a week with fresh butter. For this reason, all that travel this road are forbidden to suffer their horses or oxen to graze in the neighbouring pastures; whereas otherwise all Africa resembles a common, in which any one is at liberty to turn his cattle out wherever he pleases.

On the right, as we passed along, lay the *Tiger Mountains*, and, on our left, the *Blue Mountains*; over one extremity of which we passed on horseback. These, just before they rise, have a few sand-hills scattered in the front of them, and contain no stones at all that are visible; so that they appear, for the greater part, to be merely huge sand-hills, formed by the drift-sand from the harbour.

The whole country was covered with sand and downs, and abounded in swamps (*valley*), which having been filled with water during the winter, now began to produce fine pasturage for the cattle. For this reason the farmers here

here graze only, and sow but a small quantity of wheat, but pay no attention to the vine. The water is for the most part brackish, and even this, for the greatest part of the year, is very scanty.

Turtles were seen here and there in the ponds; and sometimes they were kept in the houses in glass vessels full of water, for the purpose of being conveyed to other places. At the approach of rainy weather we were informed that the turtles always rose higher in the glasses.

Towards evening we arrived at Mrs. MUL-  
LER'S farm.

Among the bushes in the sands we frequently saw land-tortoises crawling, and the young ladies in the house had ordered the slaves to bring several of them home of various sizes for our repast. The *Testudo pusilla* was the most common species here, and it was this which was now laid upon the fire for our eating. I slipped into the kitchen on purpose to see the mode of dressing it, and found that the girls were cruel enough to lay the poor animal wide open on the live coals, where, sprawling with its head and feet, it was broiled alive, till at length it burst to pieces with the heat. The eggs, which were in a great number, and consisted of yolk only, were the most luscious and desirable part of it.

The roots of *Fennel* were roasted and eaten in the same manner as those of *Anise*.

The bulbs of the *Iris edulis*, a plant which grew here in abundance, and decorated the fields with a variety of white, yellow, and blue flowers, were brought in great quantities by the slaves. They were eaten either roasted, boiled, or stewed with milk, and appeared to me to be both palatable and nourishing.

On the 13th, we arrived at the Company's post in *Groene kloof*, having passed by *Dassenberg*, *Burger's-post*, and *Groene kloof* mountain. At *Berger's-post*, as well as on *Koberg*, there stands a cannon near a high flag-staff, for the purpose of summoning the colonists on this side of the country to the Cape on any sudden approach of danger.

The country here was a deep sand, and full of downs, which made the roads very heavy. The houses, for want of wood, were built of unbaked clay, formed into bricks, and dried a little in the air.

The cattle were infested with the stranguary. This disorder was remedied by thrusting a straw into the urinary passage, by means of which the clod of gum, *Euphorbia*, which had settled there, was removed. This operation however was not performed without loss of blood. It was told us for certain, that unless this obstruction

tion was removed, the bladder would burst, not from the acrimony of the gum, but from the great quantity and pressure of the urine.

Having rested a few days, we continued our journey on horseback by *Ganssekraal* to the sea shore.

The inhabitants caught a *Haliotis*, a kind of cockle, which as well as muscles, they ate boiled.

Both the variegated, and the white *Sandmole*, (*Marmotta capensis* and *africana*) frequented the sandy plains; and were also said to do great damage to the gardens. They are caught either in traps, or by digging; in the latter case, they dig a hole first before, and afterwards behind that made by the animal, or else, after stopping up the animal's hole behind, they dig another directly opposite to her.

Charcoal, though it is but seldom made in this country, which is bare of trees, so that the smiths must be supplied from Europe, I saw prepared in the following manner; the wood was placed on one end, as usual, but in such a manner that the smaller and larger pieces were mingled together. Round this pile were laid reeds, and the whole was covered with turf. In the middle, and also at the sides, was put some resinous wood, by means of which the pile was set on fire. This being done, the

aperture at the top was covered up closely with turf. All around the bottom several air-holes were left, which, as soon as the fire began to blaze forth, were successively stopped up, and the sides were gradually pressed more and more closely together. In a few days when the operation was finished, the pile was opened, and what fire remained was thoroughly extinguished with water. The whole pile was no larger than a hay-stack.

The *Bucku* (*Diosma*) which was collected here by the Hottentots, was first dried in the shade, and afterwards over the fire, before it was pulverized. . .

I also visited the *Salt-pan*, which was situate at a short distance from the sea shore. It was at this time full of water. The name of *Salt-pans* is given, in this country, to large collections of salt water; which, when the winter rains have ceased, partly in consequence of the heat of the sun, and partly of the violence of the winds, gradually evaporate, and precipitate a salt, which the colonists collect for their own use. The crystallization is the most powerful in the months of November and December, and in the middle of the day, between the hours of ten and three. During that time, one may plainly see the salt, somewhat like the cream of milk, first crystallize on the surface, till, in consequence

quence of its own weight, it sinks to the bottom. This saline incrustation is very fine, and yields a fine salt, which must be collected as fast as it crystallizes, and is driven by the south-east winds towards the north western side. Unless this be done the incrustation will fall to the bottom in several different strata, forming a thick bed of a coarse-grained salt, which is frequently of a grey colour, from the admixture of dirt, and is used for salting fish and meat. On the other hand, the fine salt, being cleaner and whiter, is used for the table only, and for salting fresh butter.

On the 19th of September we set off from *Groene kloof*, leaving to the right the chain of mountains called *Burger's-post*, and, to the left, *Groene kloof* mountain. Before us, a little to the right, we had the *Reebokskop*, and, in front of that, we descried the *Konterberg*, behind which we saw the *Baboons Mountain*.

Having passed these mountains, the level country presented to our view *Ribeck Kasteel*, *Four and twenty Rivers Mountain*, and *Piquet Mountain*, together with a great number of *roe-bucks*, (*Capra*) *hart beasts* (*Capra dorcas*) *steenbocks* (*Capra grimmia*) and *diving bucks* (*Duykers capra*) besides *korrhaens* and *ostriches*.

We passed by *Papenkuyls* fountain, and *Uylekraal*, to a farm belonging to JAN SLABBERT.



On the 22d, we arrived at *Saldabna Bay*, which has many islands and dangerous shoals, some of which have only three fathom water. On *Foundling Island*, train oil is prepared from seals, in earthen pans, in which it is first exposed to the heat of the sun to evaporate. After this, it is boiled in a kettle, at first with wood, and then with such remains of the blubber as will yield no more oil. There are several islands lying near this harbour, such as *Fundling Eyland*, *Taxen Eyland*, *Jutland*, remarkable for its large hills of stone, *Meurwen Eyland*, *Dassen Eyland*, and *Schaapen Eyland*, all of which are very stony, and, on account of their rocks, difficult of access to the ships.

In *Taxen Island*, rabbits have greatly increased since they were carried thither, and are now to be found in great abundance.

*Dassen Island*, in particular, is an asylum for the penguins (*Diomedex*), a kind of sea fowl, which cannot fly at all, but dive the better on that account, and pass most of their time out at sea.

The ships but seldom enter this harbour, and then no other than such as come too close under the coast, so that they cannot make the road of the Cape. The harbour makes several windings, and various winds are requisite for ships to sail out of it.

On the 28<sup>th</sup>, we pursued our journey to *Wit-teklipp*, an estate belonging to TOBIAS MOSTERT, which received its name from a little mountain, or large insulated rock, situated near it, and of a singular appearance, on account of its bare and white surface, formed, not by lime, as the inhabitants of the place imagined, but by a white moss (*Byssus lactea*). In front, on the side next to the house, this rock had a large excavation, in the form of a crescent, with a vaulted roof. It was no easy matter to come at this singular cavity, as the part of the rock that stood before it was not only very steep, but also convex, and at the same time very slippery, except a few channels that ran longitudinally downwards, and were formed by the rain water. I had, nevertheless a strong inclination to reconnoitre it, as I saw a few swallows that had their nests there flying into it, and, as I imagined, that some curious plants might be found there. I therefore took off my shoes and stockings, and made a shift to clamber up thither barefoot, but found more difficulty in getting down again; and, as no other descent was practicable, I slid down the rock upon my breech by the same way. This cavity, which probably seldom receives such visitors, had nothing remarkable in it, besides a dead swallow (*Hirundo apus*), the singularity of its form, and the difficulty of its access.

It

It was about four fathoms from the foot of the rock, nearly in the middle of it, and a couple of fathoms wide and high.

Ostriches were very common in this tract. It was said that a male Ostrich makes a nest with three or four females, which, together, lay 20 or 30 eggs, on which they sit by turns in a hole they have made with their feet by tramping in the sand.

A kind of wild dogs, which were here called jackalls, and are the same as Samson's foxes mentioned in scripture, frequented these plains in large troops. They caught a great number of the wild goats (or antilopes) that abound here, as well as of ostriches, in the hunting of which they set up a regular cry, surrounding the game first at a distance, and approaching nearer to it by degrees. They likewise committed great havock among the farmers' sheep, unless these were carefully guarded by shepherds furnished with fire arms.

It is only in the spring and in the beginning of summer, that these low sandy plains are adorned with flowers. After the south-east winds and the drought have set in, the seeds of these flowers are quickly scattered over the fields, often before they are quite ripe. For this reason I was obliged, when making collections for the botanical gardens of Europe, especially

especially of the annual plants, to gather the seeds in an unripe state; and lay them up in paper to dry and ripen gradually.

On the 30th, we arrived at *Honingklipp*, a farm belonging to NICHOLAS KLEIN.

The crows (*Corvus Hottentottus*) here were seen sitting on the backs of the cows, and picking insects (*Acari*) out of them, by which at times they were much infested. These creatures also were accustomed to picking the wheat out of the fields immediately after it had been sown.

Here I saw a tame *griesbok* or *greybuck*, (*Capra*) of the size of a middling lamb, that had been caught in the sandy fields. Both this species, and that called *steenboks*, were reported to hide their heads, in the idea that nobody can see them, for which reason also they seldom run out from among the bushes, till one is come quite close to them.

The thickets in the sandy plains consisted solely of tall and slender shrubs from four to six feet high. Their trunks and branches were frequently so small and slender as to be unfit for fuel, though they afforded sufficient retreats for various species of game. To me they were often very troublesome, in hiding from me a number of small birds, which I had shot down from their supple twigs.

We

We continued our journey, passing *Patryfberg*, and came to a farm of PETER LOSPER's, called *Rosendal*.

On the 1st of *October*, we visited another estate of LOSPER's. This country, situated between the bays of *Saldabna* and *St. Helena*, near the sea shore, was low, abounding in sand-hills and pools of water, now swelled by the winter rains and by *Mountain-river*.

We intended to have arrived at *Mountain-river* on the 2d of this month, but could not attempt it by reason of the depth of water in the above mentioned pools, and thus we could not get to the estate of one MELK, for which purpose we otherwise might have crossed the river in a boat; we were therefore obliged to go on to BRANDT's house on the *Salt-river*, and from thence to an estate of his son's near *Matje's fountain*.

This *Salt-river* (*Zout rivier*) is different from that near the Cape, and which, from the same quality, derives the same name. It happens frequently, that islands and mountains, as also estates, in different places pass by the same names, a circumstance which causes a great confusion in the Geography of this country. As to the estates, the names of which are proposed by the farmers, and confirmed by government, this might easily be remedied, if the governor paid a little more attention

attention to such a vast colony, the extent of which many times exceeds that of the Seven united provinces in Europe. But considering that the whole colony, as well as the town, though founded near 150 years ago, as yet pass by no other name than that of the Cape, which sufficiently shews great carelessness and a bad police ; it is not surprising that the farms often obtain the most absurd names.

The Hottentots had such a quantity of leather thongs about their legs, as even to reach above their calves, insomuch that by them they were freed from the danger of being bitten by venomous serpents, for which purpose I suppose it probable they wore them.

The goldfinches (*Loxia orix*) were said first to devour the blossoms of the wheat (*Autheræ tritici*) and afterwards the corn itself. They are seen here in innumerable flocks, especially near such rivers as are overgrown with tall reeds, on which they build their nests, from whence their chirping, especially towards evening when they come to roost, is heard at a great distance. The hen is always of a grey colour ; but, from the month of July till January, the blood-red feathers of the cock gradually make their appearance. This bird is somewhat smaller than the *Loxia capensis*, and has smaller eggs, which are perfectly green ; whereas the *Loxia capensis* lay  
grey

grey eggs with black spots, and somewhat larger. This bird is, like the whole genus of *loxia*, very stupid, and consequently the more difficult to frighten from the wheat fields, where the mischief it does to the husbandmen is often great. Though considerable number of them are shot, yet they immediately return, heedless of danger.

The *korrbaens* were observed to devour the buds of the *Cotula turbinata*, which was common in all the low and sandy plains.

On the 3d, we arrived at the estate of FLORIS FISHER. This tract from the *Groene kloof* (*Green valley*) and still farther, was called *Zwartland*, and had a church of its own. Ever since the death of the vicar, which at that time was three years, this had been vacant, no one being arrived from Holland to succeed him. Nevertheless, service was performed here once a month by a clergyman from the town: the farmers had a long way to church, some of them two days journey.

We penetrated, on the 5th, farther up into the country, along and beyond the *Black Mountain* to STOFFEL SMIDT'S. The sand-hills vanished by degrees, and the country became both more lofty and of a firmer nature.

The *Cyanella capensis* (*Raapuyntjes*) a kind of onion, was roasted for the table of the farmers.

The

The *Viscum æthiopicum* was used in diarrhoeas, and also for tea.

On the 6th, we arrived at young STABBERT's, and had *Picketberg* behind us to the left.

When one is at the Cape, this part of the country rises to the view, like a ridge of contiguous mountains; but, on approaching them, I discovered, that the hills are divided, and form several distinct ridges. *Ribeck Kasteel* is a ridge of mountains, extending from east to west, till the *Zwarte-berg*, or (*Black Mountains*) close the ridge. These therefore do not run parallel with the long tract of mountains that lie higher up the country.

We proceeded farther to CORNELIS GOSSEN's farm, who is a saddler, and where I was obliged to leave one of my oxen that proved lame in the loins, and was rendered unfit for the journey. The great mountain river (*Berg rivier*) to which we were now arrived, had, through the great quantity of rain that had fallen become impassable at the usual fording place near *Vleermuys*, so that we crossed it on the 7th, in the ferry near PIT JUBER's farm.

This man keeps the ferry, in order and going, and thereby gets a snug sum of money yearly; for, each farm situated on the opposite side contributes eight gilders per annum, and



besides this, he has the advantage of casual passengers. It is to be observed, that every farmer is obliged to pay his quota towards the keeping of this ferry, let him be rich or poor, and whether he uses it or not; for many of them do not, but repair to town with their goods in summer, when the water is low and fordable, easily by their waggons.

From hence we directed our course to JOHANNES LIEBENBERG'S where we began to see vineyards and gardens with lemon and orange trees. The road was now perfectly hard, consisting of reddish rocks, and the fields were tolerable well covered with grass.

On the 8th, we proceeded to CHRISTIAN LIEBENBERG'S farm, and, on the 9th, to GERT KEMP'S, near *Dass Klipp*, and afterwards passed by FREDRIK LEIBENBERG'S, crossed the difficult passage of *Kartous kloof* to WILHELM BURGER'S, where we arrived in the evening wet and terrified, the rain having continued during the whole time of our passing the mountains, which were besides so steep as none but those who have travelled over them can well conceive. *Kartous Kloof*, which crosses the same ridge as *Roode Zand Kloof*, but lower down towards the northern end, is also considered by the husbandmen as one of the most difficult roads that go across the African mountains. It

is not very high at the western part, but becomes the more terrifying on that account to the eastern side, being there very steep and the road very stony and narrow, with an abyss to the left. The driving a hand's breadth only out of the track may demolish waggon, oxen, and driver, and the passing was now made more difficult from the frequent stumbling of the cattle, owing to the slipperiness of the road, which was occasioned by incessant rains. The farm was situated just at the foot of the mountain where we arrived, to the great astonishment of the farmer and his wife.

This spot is like Roode Zand, a broad valley surrounded by mountains, watered by a rivulet, called Olyfant's (or Elephant's) rivier, and abounding in grass. It is entirely separated from Roode Zand by Winterhoek and other ridges of mountains. However it differs thus far from Roode Zand, that it lies much lower, and is likewise considerably narrower, being only a few musket shot broad.

On the 10th. Happy to find our vehicle in a tolerable condition, after so dangerous a journey, we set out to SKALK BURGER's, and crossed the Elephant's river, which we afterwards had to the left.

After taking a hearty breakfast, we set out for the warm bath, situated at a small distance from the farm.—The road thither was very low,

swampy, and troublesome, till we approached the foot of the mountain. This Olyfant's warm bath is also called Engel Bath, after the attorney-general ENGELMAN, who caused it to be cleaned and dug, and erected a handsome stone building at the company's expence, for the accommodation of the bathers. The veins of this spring arise from the eastern side of this long tract of mountains somewhat above the foot of them, in a cleft which inclines to the southward, and there forms a cross cleft. Of these veins there are many, but three of them in particular carry the water into several small huts, for the colonists, slaves, and Hottentots, for each of these separate huts. All of them have three or four steps going down into the water for the bathers to sit on, and are also floored on one side for them to lie on, whilst they are sweating. This water is not boiling hot, but lukewarm, has no taste, leaves no sediment, but had only some green vegetable matter (*Conserva*) growing in its runnels. It lies on the same side of the same range of mountains, and is of the same nature with the warm bath already described at Brand Valley. With this water as well as with the former, linen may be washed without being stained, and victuals dressed without any disagreeable taste being imparted to them by it; the blue colour of sugar paper is not changed.

changed. The farms here have vineyards and orchards, and excellent fodder for cattle.

The mountains to the right divide Bocke-veld from this valley, and seem to form five considerable ridges separated by deep valleys, which, when we fired, gave reiterated echoes, like those that are heard after thunder. A high and flat mountain here, with two heads at each end, was called the little *Table Mountain*.

On the 11th, we rode past ANDREW LUBBE'S to a farm belonging to PETER GAUS.

Lions and other beasts of prey are, at present, so effectually scared and routed out of these mountainous tracts, that the farms are seldom visited by them: nevertheless the farmer continues paying to the Company the old tax, called Lion and Tyger Money. This tax is paid by each burgher, at the rate of four rix dollars for lion, and two gilders for tyger-money; out of which funds, at the time when the colony began to extend itself, and when the colonists were much infested by wild beasts, a certain premium was paid to every one who killed or caught any of these animals. At first, government paid sixteen rix dollars for a lion, and ten gilders for a tyger, after which the sum was diminished to ten rix dollars for a lion's, and six gilders for a tyger's skin; but, at present, these animals being

so far extirpated that there are seldom any of them to be seen, the premium is discontinued, excepting in case they are brought alive to the Cape, which is hardly practicable. This tax, nevertheless, is not abolished, although its institution has had the desired effect, and the cause has ceased; but, in the same manner as in many other countries, has assumed the nature of taxes and funds.

Besides the annual tax which the farmer pays for his farm, he pays also for wax candles four rix dollars a year, for every horse, one stiver, and for every hundred sheep, one guilder. Each farmer, whether he be rich or poor, whether possessed of a large or small farm, pays for mending the roads and streets. The bridge and ferry money all pay alike, let their road lead them that way or not; but then they are exempt from all billettings, crown duties, tithes, clearing the roads, furnishing horses for travelling, day labour, &c.

I saw here a girl that had had the measles three years before, which had left behind them black and blue marks on her forehead, and under her eyes (*Sugillationes*) which were of a greenish cast. They generally remained two or three weeks, then went away, and afterwards returned. The parts above-mentioned were particularly affected by these spots, though they appeared

peared also in other places, as for instance, in her hands and arms.

A farmer advanced in years, likewise had fallen into a decline after the measles; however, he was perfectly restored by what I ordered him.

On the following days we proceeded along the valley to BARENT LUBBE's farm, past *Pickenier's kloof* and MATTON's farm which lay to the left of us.

On the 14th, the country began to grow hilly, and we arrived at young BARENT LUBBE's, at the end of the cleft.

The root of the species of Stoebe, which grew here, smelt quite like Valerian (*Valeriana phu*) and might possibly have the same effect as this plant has in the epilepsy.

On the 15th, we proceeded on our journey, furnished with a few days provision, and meant to get over the mountains to KIS KOOPMAN's farm, from thence to SPANNENBERG's, over the river Dorn, and, finally, as far as CLAS LOSPER's farm, which is situated in the lowermost Bocke-veldt; but we had not got far up the mountain before a misfortune befel us, through the carelessness of the driver. Our cart overturned, and one of the shafts were broken; so that it was impossible for us to proceed any farther across these uninhabited

mountains. We were therefore under the necessity of remedying the evil as well as we could; by tying the shaft up with cords, and returning to the farmer, to alter the plan of our journey.

After having still more completely repaired our shattered vehicle, we resolved to let both the waggon and cart go slowly back, through Pickenier's kloof, and afterwards, up the country, through Roode Zand's kloof to Roode Zand, there to rest and wait for our arrival. In the mean time, I and my English travelling companion made a tour on horse-back farther back into the valley to GAUS's farm, and passed through the long vale, called Eland's Kloof, across the mountains to BERNARD FORSTER's, in the *Koude Bockeveld*, as it is called, or Cold Goat's-field. *Eland's kloof* was very broad, and had a large river in it. This country, which is situated between the lowermost, or Warm Bockeveld, and between Olyfant's kloof and Carroveld, lies very high, and is, in the winter, very cold, although not so cold as at Roggeveld, which lies farther to the other side of the Carrow, and whose inhabitants, for several months in the year, that is, from April to September, are obliged, on account of the snow and cold, to remove down to the lower and warmer Carrow, which, at that time, is plentifully supplied with water by showers of rain, attended with thunder.

thunder. Those that inhabited this Bocke-veld sometimes remove across the mountains with their cattle to Carrow, though this is strictly prohibited.

A serpent, called Boomslang, was said to get into the trees, and swallow the birds it found there; and the *Roodbeckjes* (*Loxia astrild*) made great havock in the gardens, where they devoured both blossoms and feeds.

The wild goats (*Steenbocks*), and particularly the diving goats (*Duykers*) damaged the gardens greatly, where they ate off the buds of the trees. The leaping goats (*Springboks*) also do a great deal of mischief in the wheat-fields, especially as they come in troops, and cannot be caught easily either by snares or spring-guns, but must be shot with rifle-barrelled guns in the corn fields when they come there. This is done in the following manner; a man digs a hole in the field, where he can sit unseen, till the animal approaches near enough to be fired at with a rifle-barrelled gun.

The cold Bocke-veld is nearly as broad as Olyfant's kloof, surrounded by high mountains on all sides, which close together to the north-westward, leaving only a narrow passage to a small plain, situate on the other side of it. Snow sometimes falls here, and lies for a while undissolved.



As cold as this country is, still it was formerly much more inhabited by the Hottentots than it is at present by the Europeans, who only occupy a few farms in it. All over the country the Hottentots live together, many in a community, sometimes to the amount of several hundreds in a village, feed on roots, and the flesh of wild beasts, and of their own herds (which have the whole country open to them for their pasturage) and at the same time are satisfied with a little. On the other hand, every colonist has a farm to himself, part of which must be laid out in wheat-fields and vineyards, besides which his herds of cattle must be large and numerous. Wild beasts are destroyed without mercy, consideration, or œconomy, in so much that some are killed for amusement, and others are destroyed on account of the damage they do, and for their skins or hides.

As for the rest, the Bocke-veld is tolerably smooth, without trees or bushes: except a few low rhinoceros bushes, which are seldom to be met with, it bears only grass, and in some places a kind of tall rushes. Near the mountains are sometimes seen a few low and scattered trees of the *Protea grandiflora* species (*Waageboom*).

The whole of this country has received its name from the Spring-bocks (*Capra pygærgus*) which reside here in scattered herds, and, in certain

tain years, migrate hither from the more remote tracts of the continent in astonishing numbers.

The mountains which lie on each side are quite barren, like an old wall, and rise up boldly without any foot projecting from them, or any hillocks lying directly before them, as is usual with other mountains. They seem to be greatly worn and consumed by the operation of the air upon them, and will probably in time undergo considerable alterations in their external appearance. The air destroys the cohesion of some parts, and causes them to crumble away into small particles, which are afterwards carried off by the rain, not to mention larger fragments, which sometimes fall off from the main body and the cavities formed by the stagnation of the rain water on their surface.

The rocks, which had many sharp projecting points, were sometimes composed of quartzose stones, quartz-rubble, and sandstone cemented together. From moisture these crack, and, getting loose, fall out, and roll down in large pieces. Hence the mountains look, as though they were torn asunder, and themselves proclaim their own vast antiquity and decay. These mountains differ greatly in the hardness of their rocky parts; and consequently they must differ in their dissolution. In many parts of them pebble-stones were found inlaid in  
large

large clusters, sometimes to the amount of a hundred and more. Here were likewise to be seen large hills consisting of sand-stone, which at the bottom was as white as chalk, and friable, and at the top yellow, with a mixture of yellow and red tints. In the valleys and near the rivulets was found the finest sand, which must doubtless have been brought down from the mountains and their adjacent hills by the rain water. In the Bockveld mountains to the eastward, the strata lie obliquely, as if one side of the mountain had sunk down; the broader strata also were lower to the north-west than to the south-east end.

These large and high chains of mountains therefore, which lie in several rows, divided by broader and smaller clefts and openings, are the Alps of the southern parts of Africa.

The Spring buck (*Capra pygargus*) does not reside in the mountains like the roe-buck, nor in the thickets like the steen bock, or duykers bock, (where the hounds would easily catch him, as he could not run very fast there) but in the open fields, where he makes the finest and most surprising leaps that can be imagined, frequently above six feet high.

Among the few shrubs that grew in the mountains, I found here that curious shrub the fly-bush (*Roridula dentata*) the leaves of which are covered with fine hairs, and a tough glutinous substance

substance to which smaller insects adhere. It is placed in the houses for the purpose of catching flies.

On *the 18th*, we rode to ISAAC VISAGE's; the sheep here are counted morning and evening, viz. when they are turned out and brought home, and are marked in one or both ears, that they may be known again when they come to be mingled with others. This counting of the sheep was always the mistress's business, who had also given to each sheep a particular name. An excellent memory and daily practice had so sharpened her attention in this respect, that, if one amongst several hundred sheep were absent, she missed it immediately.

On *the 19th*, we passed NICHOLAS JANSEN's farm, in our way to CARL VAN DER MERWELL.

A Table mountain which stands single and alone in the middle of the country, is, to the north-west, flat at top, and steep on the side, but, to the south-east, it is convex, slopes off gradually, and is very high. The wheat here had not yet got into the ear, which however we saw it had already done on the other side of the mountain, and the pease were now sowing. Here they both sow and reap a couple of months later than they do nearer the Cape, and in the country which lies lower on the other side of it.

Although the husbandman, that inhabits these mountains, lives so high, yet he always (though  
very

very improperly) calls it travelling up to the Cape, where the country lies much lower.

The great wheel of the African plough has eight spokes, and is so made (at the same time that it is provided with an iron plate) that it cannot be taken off. The small wheel to the left, has only four spokes, and runs always on the grass ridge, and thus keeps the plough even.

On *the 20th*, we travelled on to WILLIAM PRETORIS's, whose farm stands in a very good situation; but the weather, in the months of June, July and August, is so severe, that much snow falls, sometimes for days together, and icicles are formed and adhere to the eaves of the roof. All the calves, lambs, and goats that are brought forth during the frost, die of cold and hunger in the stables in which they are kept shut up, without a possibility of their being turned out to grass.

We travelled afterwards, past two farms belonging to JAN RASMUS and VAN HEERE, to that of JACOB PINARD's, where was a small wood. The master and his wife were not at home, but only two slaves and some Hottentot children; we were therefore obliged to content ourselves with having a dry covering over our heads for the night, without any thing to eat or drink, although we had travelled without food all  
the

the day long, and had several miles to go to the next farm.

As no entertainment was to be had here, we set out early the next morning, being *the 21st*, to SKALK VAN HEERE's, where we were kindly received, and entertained both with breakfast and a tolerable good glass of wine of the growth of the country.

Here commenced the warm Bocke-veld, which was screened from the cold by high mountains and hills, some of which were very steep, and which we had this day descended.

The warm Bocke-veld lies therefore much lower, and, in proportion to its situation, is much less cold. In the cold Bocke-veld, the vine can only be cultivated in two places, and then does not arrive at perfect maturity, but, in the warm, it thrives better and yields better wine. The warm Bocke-veld is a small tract of land, neither very broad nor very long, but rather of a round form, and encircled by mountains. The out-let from it is by a narrow opening near Mosterts-hoek and Hex-rivier. The land is level, all over covered with grass, and has but a very few spring bucks left, which have been for the most part hunted out of the country.

As two young farmers were this day to travel on horse back, the nearest way across the high mountains to Roode Zand, that lies on the other side

side of them, we determined to embrace the opportunity, and accompany them thither; but my travelling companion, after we had got to a little distance up the mountain, finding he had forgot his saddle bag, was obliged to return for it, and our weary horses not being able to go very fast in that mountainous country, we were left in the lurch by our guides, and, losing the track, were obliged to return to the farm by the same way as we came. From thence we rode through a great part of the Warm Bocke-veld, and before evening arrived, to a handsome farm abounding in cattle, milk, and butter, which belonged to PETER FUNERE.

From hence we had no other road to Roode Zand than by Mosterts-hoek, through a valley which was very narrow and low, between very high mountains projecting on each side. But this journey was hazardous at such time of the year when the large and wide rivulets which we had to ford in the dale were brim full.

In order to pass with safety over this dangerous spot, we hired a servant, who, being acquainted with the country, was to precede us on horse-back, and point out to us the most shallow places.

On the 22d of October we set out on our journey.

On our entering of Mosterts-hoek, the road was very stony, mountainous, and steep, and we

we had afterwards several streams to ford and branches of rivers, such as Brug-drift, Stroom-drift, Elfe rivier, and Diep-drift, besides several smaller branches of brooks, which, uniting, form the great Breede-rivier. These places were the more dangerous to cross, as the water not only stood up to the horses sides, but the bottom was full of large round stones, that had rolled down from the mountains, so that the horses could scarcely get on; and frequently the rapidity of the stream was such that they could with great difficulty keep the tract.

Near these streams grew several shrubs, especially some of the Geranium kind, that sent forth a pleasant, strong, and refreshing odour.

At length we arrived safely at DE WETT's at Roode Zand, where our oxen had already rested themselves, and gathered strength and flesh for our intended journey.

On *Winter-boek*, a mountain which terminates Roode Zand to the northward, and divides it from Olyfant's kloof, there still lay a great deal of hail.

*Gli* is, in the Hottentot language, the name of an umbelliferous plant, the root of which, dried and reduced to powder, they mix with cold water and honey in a trough, and after letting it ferment for the space of one night, obtain a species of Mead, which they drink in order to throw them-



themselves into a state of intoxication. A couple of glasses are said to be sufficient for the purpose, and no head-ach ensues. Of the pulverized root, two handfuls only are taken.

This year I examined the mountains at Winterhoek much more narrowly than I had done last year, and as high as to their very summits. The fly-bush grew here in abundance, and the scarce plant, called *Protea nana*, the flower of which resembles the dog rose, was found only in this place. On one side of the mountain was a fine cascade that fell down a perpendicular precipice, under which there was a hollow in the mountain filled with several bushes. My inclination called me thither, and I must have gone a very round-about way to it, had I not ventured to take a leap of about twenty or twenty-four yards in height, which I did without being hurt in the least, the bushes preventing me from making a hard fall. Among other rare plants also which I found here, was the *Disa coerulea*.

In these mountains were found an elegant red slate, consisting of thin laminae, and disposed in broad strata. The same substance was also to be seen in large pieces that had fallen down from the higher parts of the mountain, and disposed in strata with other stony matter, like a marble. It appeared strange to me, that I did  
not

not, either here, or in any other mountains, meet with any lime stone, or calcareous hill, nor with any marble nor flint, excepting a radiated Gypsum, which I found in the mountain near Hex-river. Here I saw a farmer's wife, who, through good living and indolence, was grown to such a size, and was so fat withal, that, excepting one more in another part of this country, I never saw her equal. On her way to the Cape, she had suffered herself to be weighed; and she then weighed 334 lb. or 26 stone, horse-man's weight.

That Roode Zand is nothing but a valley between high mountains, running nearly parallel to each other, I could clearly perceive, from this circumstance, that, in the hollows, where the torrents of water had swept away the earth, and dug out channels of one or two fathoms depth, the ground appeared to consist of the naked rock, with it's strata, that stood up on their edge almost perpendicular, and only a little inclining to the south-east. These strata were much softened by the water, of a loose texture, and whitish, resembling an indurated clay; in their interstices, they harboured sand, which the water had carried down and discharged there.

The farms hereabouts are not very far asunder, and the colonists are in general in good circumstances. The vineyards were numerous;

of wheat there was a great quantity sown, and orchards were planted every where, so that the country produced the most profitable articles, such as wine, wheat, oranges and lemons. The cold might nevertheless be very severe here at times; and, it was reported, that its intenseness the last year had done great damage to the vines, and, in some places, absolutely destroyed them.

As to cattle and sheep, more are kept here by the farmers than are wanted for their own consumption and use; and draught-oxen they sometimes buy from other places.

A small dove (perhaps the smallest of the dove kind) called Maquas Duyv (*Columba capensis*) frequented the gardens, and there sought its food, which consisted mostly of seeds.

The *Ixia bulbifera*, a bulbous plant with a red flower, grew here in the greatest abundance. When one approached the place where it grew, it seemed to be but thinly scattered over the field, but, at a distance, the ground appeared as if it were covered with scarlet cloth.

In like manner, here and here only, was found beside the brooks, a green variety of the *Ixia maculata*, another tall bulbous plant, which is as elegant as singular, with its long cluster of green flowers growing out like an ear of corn, and is so extremely scarce all over the world.

On

On the 28<sup>th</sup>. Proceeding on our journey, we crossed Breede rivier; the branches of which went meandering on so far before us in our route that we were obliged to ford them several times before we could reach JAN SLABBERT's farm, where we took up our night's lodging.

On the 29<sup>th</sup>, we came to PHILIP PLAISIR's near Saffraan's kloof, a place where there is a foot-path across the mountains, along which one may go on horse-back.

Travelling still farther, we arrived at JAN DE TOI's. The country now began to grow broader and flatter. TOI's kloof again is the name of the foot-path here, leading over the mountains; which also may be travelled over on horse-back, and brings one to Drakenstein, directly opposite Paarl.

We now left Breede-rivier to the right; and the level flat country which here lies about the stream, and is at times inundated by it, is called Goudena.

Farther on lies *Brand valley*; opposite to which, on the other side of the mountain, stands *Stellenbosch*.

On the 30<sup>th</sup>, we rode past DE PLOI's farm, and, over Hex-rivier, to KEYSER's estate.

The field was here of the Carrow kind, and the sheep were said to feed on those succulent plants, the *Mesembryanthemums* (*vygebofsches*),

which were supposed to render the dung of these animals unfit for manure. Now likewise, the farther we advanced, the more hilly the country grew.

On the 31st, we arrived at ALOWEN SMIDT'S farm, which lies opposite to Hottentot's Holland. The country here had many hills and ridges of mountains, which lay across our road.

*November 2d.* We rode over one of the ridges that lay before us to Mrs. BRUEL'S farm, when we seemed to be in quite another valley.

The mountains to the left now took a somewhat different direction, and ran more to the E. S. E.

Proceeding farther, we came to PHILIP BOFA'S, whose farm lay opposite to Tyger-hoek, which is situated behind the mountains that project out from Hottentot's Holland mountains.

The chain of mountains which had continued from Witzenberg, seemed here to turn off to the eastward, and, as it were, entirely to dwindle away; but, upon a closer examination, it was found to extend still farther on, and to be continued by the ridges of mountains which only lay somewhat farther inwards, in connexion with the same chain.

After this, we passed CLAS VOGT'S *rivier*, so named from CLAS VOGT, a colonist, who had been trampled to death by an elephant, and that  
in

in so shocking a manner that scarcely the vestige of a bone was to be seen in his remains.

On the same day, continuing our journey, we arrived at GERT NEL's farm near KOCKMAN's *kloof and rivier*.

Mat-ware (*Matjesgoed*) is the name given here to a kind of rush that grew in the river, and of which mats were made, that were used by the husbandmen for the tilts of waggons, and also to lie on. These mats were soft and pliable, and the rushes from which they were made, were a species of grass, which I called *Cyperus textilis*, of about four feet and more in height, almost as thick as a tobacco pipe, and hollow within.

On the 3d, we set out for DROSKI's farm. In this tract, as well as in the whole of the interior part of the country, it was said to rain with the wind at S. E. quite the contrary to which is the case at the Cape.

The farmers cultivated their farms here with their own slaves, and these slaves were not only chastized by their masters for misdemeanours and petty faults that merely affected the family, but also, in case of trespasses of a more serious nature, by the officers of police belonging to the landroft.

It sometimes happens, that on the husbandman finding himself under the necessity of complaining to the magistrate of his slave, either on account of flagrant crimes committed by him, or of incur-

rable idleness, or excessive carelessness; in which case, this latter takes a liking to the slave, however strange it may appear, the owner, *nolens volens*, is obliged to sell him.

*November 4th*, we arrived at the celebrated JACOBUS BOTA's, a man who was now eighty-one years of age, and, from twelve sons, had a progeny of one hundred and ninety persons, all alive. It is not this circumstance however, as singular as it otherwise may be, that has given him so much renown, in a country where they marry early, and where the population is very great, but a misfortune that befel him in one of his hunting expeditions. When he was forty years of age, he shot, in a narrow pass in a wood, a lion, which immediately fell, without his observing that there were two of them together. The other lion rushed immediately upon him, before he had time to load his piece, and not only wounded him with its sharp claws to such a degree that he fainted away, but also gnawed his left arm and side, and lacerated him in such a terrible manner, that he lay for dead on the ground. The lion, that in general is possessed of too noble a spirit to revenge itself on a dead man, if not impelled by hunger, left him in this situation, so that he was at length carried home by his servants. His wife, a stirring and active woman, immediately fetched several herbs, which she boiled in water, and,

and, with the decoction, daily washed, fomented, and bound up his wounds, so that he was at last restored to perfect health. He was so much disabled however in this arm, that he could never afterwards handle a musquet. He had been the first sportsman in the colony, and, by killing elephants and selling their teeth, had acquired a tolerable fortune. This man informed me that, in its infancy, the colony had so small an extent, and the Hottentots in it were so numerous, that the christian settlers could not without danger venture as far as Zwellendam. At that time too the elephants abounded so much, even near the Cape, that in travelling to and from the Cape, one might kill a great many of them. Thus he had often shot four or five in a day, and sometimes twelve or thirteen. Twice in his life, when he was out in pursuit of these animals, he had destroyed with his gun, twenty-two elephants each day. A good sportsman always kills the elephant at one shot, but, should he hit any of the fore-legs, so as to break it, two shot must be fired: the hunter always takes his aim in such a manner as that the ball shall pass through the lungs. The ball is always mixed with one third of tin, and weighs a quarter of a pound; the piece is in proportion to this, and rather heavy. Each elephant's tooth weighs from thirty, to one hundred and thirty pounds. They are



bought up by the Dutch company, at the rate of one gilder per pound.

The country here began to be very hilly, and abound with grafs, and at the same time had a sufficient number of rivulets, and some wood in the clefts of the mountain.

These mountains which extended from Hottentot's Holland, now began to be (higher up the country) more and more low, and afterwards appeared like broken ridges, and at last totally vanished.

On the 5th, we went to JURGEN BOTA'S, who is a son of the old man already mentioned, and passed BLANKENBERG'S farm in our way to Rock's, near Keureboom's rivier.

Here we saw a monkey from Houtniquas wood, something like the *Simia sabæa*. The legs were all black, and the tip of the tail brown; the testicles of the colour of blue stone, or vitriol of copper.

From hence we went to *Zwellendam*, and afterwards to the Company's post, near *Buffel jagt rivier*, where we rested a few days.

The colony of *Zwellendam*, which is subject to its own peculiar landroft, had been founded about thirty years before. It took its name from Mr. ZWELLINGREBEL, who was at that time vice-governor, or *Secundu's* (*Tweede*) at the Cape. The first landroft here was RENIUS, the second

ORACK,

ORACK, who was still alive but had resigned, and the third was the present landroft, whose name is MENTZ.

The Company's post had at first been established, for the sake of protecting those colonists who had settled on this spot, and farther up in the country, in order to cultivate the land and rear cattle. It was therefore at first laid out as a fort, and provided with seven men and a corporal; but, after the country came to be more inhabited, and the Hottentots quitted it, all these fortifications were found to be quite unnecessary and superfluous. Instead of this, a grazing farm is now established here, and the soldiers are employed in the wood, called *Groot Vaders bosch*, or (Grand-father's Wood) in felling, for the use of the Company, different sorts of timber for joiners work, &c. of which timber a waggon load is sent to the Cape every three months, besides what the people of the colony, in order to assist in maintaining them, are allowed to carry up and sell themselves.

For the service of this farm, these Hottentots are used that still remain here, the reliques of former numerous hordes! This year I contrived to procure some information concerning their mode of living, their manners, and their customs.

On the first night of the new moon one may see the Hottentots run about, pull off their hats, and curtsy.

The ceremony is not quite laid aside of making youth, at a certain age, men; from which time they are separated from the women, and associate only with men. After the youth has been besprinkled, according to custom, with urine, some animal is killed, and its omentum, or cawl, is tied about his neck. The men never drink milk that has been drawn by the women. The women here have frequently a real husband, and a *locum tenens*, or substitute. The men likewise often take two wives. The marriage ceremony is frequently performed, by the bride and bridegroom, after obtaining the permission of the parents, sleeping together till late in the morning. The dead are interred in graves, over which are set a tortoise-shell filled with some odorous powder, and three twigs of some shrub or other; and, after this, the company that forms the procession makes merry. Of game that has been hunted and killed, no one is suffered to eat before he is invested with the dignity of man; nor must man and wife eat any part of this animal's heart, or pericardium.

The Hottentots, at present, eat their meat either roasted, or else boiled in a pot in the ordinary

ordinary way ; • but not long ago, before they had got vessels of this kind from the Europeans, they used to put their meat into leathern bags, filled with water, and afterwards threw in red-hot stones, which, by their heat, caused the water to boil.

The Hottentots use bows and arrows, not only for their defence against their enemies, but likewise for the purpose of killing wild beasts ; but at present they have rarely need to employ them on either of these occasions. The bow is a round stick of about an inch thick, and something more than two feet long, and is bent by a sinew. The arrow is made by a kind of reed or cane, as thick as a goose-quill, and scarcely a foot long, to the end of which is fastened, with a fine string or sinew, an iron point, shaped like a lancet, which is besmeared with the poison of serpents. Several of these arrows are kept in a quiver, which is of the thickness of a man's arm, and about two feet in length, with a lid at the top, that turns upon hinges of leather.

*Rabekin* is a musical instrument, something like a guitar, made of a calabash and a narrow board, with three or four strings, which may be stretched or relaxed at pleasure, by means of screws. On this instrument the Hottentots play with their fingers.

*Kora* was a wind instrument, which however was seldom used.

A mountain called *Potteberg*, was seen directly opposite the farm, near the sea shore, which was said to be about twenty-four miles distant.

A curious grasshopper, of a reddish colour, of the class of Hemipteræ, was seen in great numbers seeking its food on the bushes. When taken, it pressed out from beneath a sheath that lay under its breast, a slimy, frothy fluid, like soap lather, which covered both the insect and the fingers of the captor. This was repeated as often as the liquid was wiped off with a linen rag. From the manner in which this animal endeavours to liberate itself, I called it *Gryllus Spumans*. The Larvas, or half-grown grasshopper, or the species called *Pneumora*, were seen in the greatest abundance both here and elsewhere on the bushes; but in the day time, neither I nor any of my companions could find one of them in a perfect state and winged, which astonished me much.

Ree-boks, Rietboks (*Capra*) and Bonteboks (*Capra scripta*) frequented much these hilly and verdant fields. In these antilopes both sexes are furnished with horns; and the young Bonteboks are at first of a reddish brown colour, but, in time, become spotted with white, though,  
on

on account of the openness of the country and the shyness of the animal, it is difficult to get within gun-shot of the Bontebok, yet we were lucky enough to shoot one. It is always dangerous to come near one of these creatures when shot, because, if he is not quite dead, he makes use of his horns, and may put the huntsman in danger of his life.

Here too I had an opportunity of observing a curious fact. It happens sometimes, that when a duck is shot in any of the rivulets, it either immediately disappears, and is seen no more, or it is found again with its feet eaten off. This is done by the water turtle that inhabit these waters, which prey, not only on the larger ducks, but also on their young, which they seize by the leg.

On the 10th, passing by PETER BOTA'S farm, called *Rietkuyl*, we crossed *Kerremelk's* and *Slange* rivers to the widow FORE, near *Duyvenboek's rivier*.

In the whole tract of country through which we had passed all the way from Hex rivier, I observed that the banks of all the rivers were planted with the very prickly tree called *Mimosa nilotica*.

The mountains, which extended from a projecting point at *Zwellendam*, ran now in the direction of due east and west.

On

On the 11th of November, having taken an early leave of our worthy hostess, we went down to Duyvenhoek's river, which was at a short distance from the farm. The late rains had filled this rivulet, so as to make it dangerous to cross. The rivulets of this country, however, have usually some shallow places, where, even in the greatest flood, one may cross them with waggon and oxen. To shew us one of these drifts (as they are called) our hostess had been so kind as to send a slave with us; but, as he neither understood nor spoke Dutch, he was obliged to communicate his instructions to us by signs, which, either from ignorance or malice, he entirely perverted, as he pointed out to us a circular track over the river to the right, which we ought to have taken to the left. I, who was the most courageous of any of the company, and, in the whole course of the journey, was constantly obliged to go on before and head them, now also, without a moment's consideration, rode plump into the river, till, in a moment, I sank with my horse into a large and deep sea-cow hole, up to my ears. This would undoubtedly have proved my grave, if my horse had not by good luck been able to swim; and I, who have always had the good fortune to possess myself in the greatest dangers, had not, with the greatest calmness and composure, guided the animal, (which

(which floundered about violently in the water) and kept myself fast in the saddle, though continually lifted up by the stream. After having passed over this hole, I was likewise successful in my attempts to get safe out of it, though the edges of these holes are in general very steep, in so much that they seldom afford one a sure footing. Holes of this kind which the Hippopotamus treads out for its resting place, occur in a great many rivers, though the animal itself perhaps is no longer to be found there, but has either been shot, or made to fly to some other more secure retreat. All this time my fellow travellers stood frightened on the opposite bank and astonished, without daring to trust themselves to an element that appeared to them so full of danger. However, as soon as I had got off my horse and let the water drain off from me a little, I ordered my Hottentots to drive across the river, according to a better direction that I gave them, after which the others followed.

I had the greatest reason to be thankful to the divine Goodness, which had preserved me in this imminent danger, and the more so, as it happened on the anniversary of the day on which I came into the world thirty years before.

After our waggons were brought over the water, I did not allow myself time to change my clothes,



clothes, as I must have been at the pains of unpacking my trunks; but we continued our journey the whole day without farther interruption, and passing by CHRISTOPHER LOMBART'S farm, went to another belonging to DANIEL PLAISIR, where we arrived before evening, and were kindly received.

Here my first care was to examine my pocket-book, watch, and other things subject to be damaged by the water.

A kind of *Corvus*, (or crow) called *Spreuw*, was found both here and in several other places in great plenty. It was less than a black bird, and black with a white rump: this bird always accompanied the larger cattle and the sheep, especially in the mornings and evenings, before they are driven out to field, and after their return. Its occupation was to pick away the insects (*Acari*) which, dropping from the bushes upon the animals, and biting deep into their skins, stick very fast to them, and occasion them great pain.

This bird is very wild and shy, so that when it observes any body to approach it, it immediately flies away, and with many cries warns the others, which instantly take wing and endeavour to save themselves by flight. This bird is said to make its nest in the sides of the rivers and brooks, for which purpose it digs holes in their banks.

These

These Acari which teased the cattle, were not less troublesome to our horses. Frequently, while I was riding through the thickets, for the purpose of gathering flowers and feeds in these places, my horse, and particularly his head, was so thickly covered by these blood-suckers, that neither his ears nor any other part of him could be seen, and I was sometimes obliged to make my Hottentots free him from these troublesome guests, before they had time to enter too deeply into the skin.

On *the 12th*, we went to CLAS BRUYN'S farm, and on *the 13th*, to PETER DE WETT'S.

The whole of this tract produced aloe trees in abundance, which in some places entirely covered the hills and the sides of the mountains, where they appeared at a distance like a numerous army. The trees are of the height of a man, with their stems quite bare below, and a crown at the top of broad, thick, and fleshy leaves.

I observed every where the slaves busy in tapping and preparing gum aloe, the virtues of which, in medicine, are well known. DE WETT, the owner of the farm, was the first that prepared the gum in this country, for which reason he was said to have the exclusive privilege of delivering and selling it at a certain price to the Company. Several farmers have since learned the art of preparing it, and at present frequently sell it at the Cape to strangers at less than half this price.

The mode of preparing it is quite plain and simple. It consists, in the usual phrase of the peasants, in the tapping, or drawing off of the juice, and boiling it. The tapping may be performed at all times in the year; but during, and immediately after, the rainy season, the leaves yield a more copious but thinner juice. Those days that are calm and clear, are chiefly selected for the operation of tapping, as, windy weather shrinks the leaf, so that less juice is produced, and it hardens too soon. On this work, for the most part, either slaves or Hottentots are employed. A leaf is first cut off, and laid on the bare ground to serve for a channel, upon which several other cut leaves are afterwards placed on each side, with the large end inwards, and over these again others, to the amount of a dozen, or more, so that the juice drips from them into the hollow of the first leaf. The leaves which were cut off not too close to the trunk, were not cut into smaller pieces; as, according to what the farmers asserted, they would not yield the more juice on that account. In this manner several heaps of leaves are laid one after the other, as fast as they can be cut off. When the juice ceases running, the leaves are taken away, and the juice is poured into calabashes, which, here as well as in many other places, are used by the poor as bottles. The greatest quantity of juice that can be thus collected

collected by a man in one day is a large calabash or small pail full. The juice is afterwards boiled down at home in English iron pots, to such a consistence, that it will not run off a stick that is put into it. All impurities that swim on the top of the liquor are skimmed off in the boiling. The juice thus boiled down to one half, is then poured out into wooden boxes, in which it afterwards grows hard. The juice yields generally one third of solid gum, and each box weighs from three to five cwt. each pound of which is sold to foreign nations for three, or four, and sometimes two, stivers.

On the 15th, we proceeded on our journey to DANIEL PINARD'S, across *Goud's rivier*. This river is one of the largest in this country. Its banks on the western side were extremely steep. The farm was situated on the other side on a tolerably high hill. This stream runs far up into the country, and consequently is supplied with water from the mountains, which are at the distance of several days journey from hence, and which border upon particular tracts that, at certain times of the year, are deluged by heavy showers of rain, accompanied with thunder. From such a cause this river may be very suddenly filled, and rise to a great height, at the same time that at this place there shall be the finest weather imaginable. And for the same reason

this river is extremely dangerous, so that the traveller ought not to take up his quarters too near its banks, nor in the lowlands adjacent to it. The water now came up to our horses saddles.

This day we proceeded as far as to DIDELOF's farm.

On the 16th, we rode past several estates, such as those of DIRK MARCUS, BERNARD the son and the younger PLANT, and hastened on to Musclebay, to a delightfully situated farm belonging to old BERNARD.

The harbour here is very large, but no ships ever make it, except they are obliged so to do by stress of weather.

A Danish ship, called the *Kron-prinsefs*, commanded by Capt. SWENFINGER, was stranded here and lost, and the remains of it were even at this time to be seen.

On the 18th, after having, in the course of the day that we rested there, visited the sea coast and its sandy hills, which in all probability was formerly occupied in great numbers by Damaquas Hottentots, we rode past CLASS MEYER's and JACOBUS SUNISSON BOTA's estates, and returned to DIRK MARCUS near *Hagelkraal*, an old man and great elephant-hunter.

Thongs made of the hides of animals were everywhere used by the farmers, instead of cords and ropes, both for the tackling of waggons and other purposes.

purposes. Here we saw these thongs made pliable and fit for use, by greasing them, and rubbing them briskly against a tree.

On the 19th, we travelled up towards the mountains, and into Hartequas kloof, to a resting place called *Groote paarde-kraal*, where we, for the first time in the course of this journey, took our night's lodging in the open air.

On the 20th, we examined diligently the mountains that surrounded us on all sides, and in the afternoon, continued our route through Hartequas kloof to *Zaffraan kraal*, when we got into a more plain and level country, called *Canna land*, by some *Canaan's land*, and at the same time passed the heights of Canna, [*Cannas boogte*].

Here what I had heard before was confirmed to me, viz. that several female ostriches lay their eggs in one nest; and that, if any one touches their eggs, the birds, that discover this by the smell, never lay any more eggs in the same place; but, if the eggs should chance to be left behind, trample them to pieces under their feet.

On the 21st, we passed AKER HEIN's farm, and took up our quarters in the evening near *Klipp-rivier*. The land between the mountains was many times broader than Roode Zand, very dry like the Carrow, and much higher than Houtniquas land, that lay on the other side of it.

That piece of land, which lay on the other

side of the mountains to the left, was called *Kankau*,

On the 22<sup>d</sup>, crossing *Brack rivier* and *Matjes drift*, and going through *Matjes kloof*, where *Lange kloof* begins, we rode past *HELBECK'S* farm to *VAN STADE'S*.

Here we observed on the plain high and long, distinct and separate, mountains, which had the same direction as the large chain of mountains before mentioned.

On the 23<sup>d</sup>, we passed *Buy's* estate in our way to *GERT VAN ROIJEN'S*, near *Diep rivier*.

The mountains which here formed *Lange kloof*, were, to the right, the long range of mountains spoken of above, and, to the left, a connected ridge, which began near *Matjes kloof*, and was lower than the long chain of mountains that lay by the side of it, and whose tops could plainly be discovered. The land which lay on the other side of the last-mentioned low ridge, and the higher ridge, is called *Camenassie*, a tract of land, which is likewise already peopled by the industrious colonists. The country behind that higher range of mountains is a poor, flat, and dry *Carrow-field*, which borders on the *Eastern Olyfant's rivier*.

The mountains in general stretched E. N. E.

On the 24<sup>th</sup>, we arrived at *TUNIS BOTA'S* farm. Here the ridge of mountains, over which we passed to the left, divided and formed a vale, where

where nothing but ridges of mountains lay before us, and which was not more than about two musquet shot in breadth. The vale which we left to the right, goes to Houtniquas mountains, over which one may get on horseback to Houtniquas woods.

Proceeding on our journey we passed on to HANS OLOFSON'S farm: here was a carriage road that led to Camenassie-land, and Olyfant's warm bath.

On the 25th, we rode farther on in Lange kloof to MAT ZONDAG'S.

The land in Lange kloof is bare, and without any shrubs or bushes, but abounds much in grass.

The cold in winter is very severe in this vale, and snow sometimes falls here which lies on the ground three or four days.

As the year before I had pretty narrowly examined this spot, and had gathered the few plants that grew upon it, I was now determined to climb up to the highest summits of the mountains, in order to observe the direction in which they ran; but I could not possibly have had a better reward for my pains, than the glorious prospect that now lay before me, in which a tract of mountains of a great many leagues (as it appeared to me) in breadth, divided into several ridges, with their intervening vales, was extended,



tended, like a map, before my eyes, and shewed me plainly that the greatest part of the road I had travelled lay over various ridges of mountains, and along various dales, on a considerable breadth of hilly country, where many thousands of men, and millions of other animals find both food and shelter; while, on the other hand, the more plain and level land, in this southernmost part of Africa, for want of water, can seldom exhibit a single quadruped, or afford water to one solitary bird.

I also observed, that the ranges of mountains to the eastward, diverged more and more from each other, so that those that lay to the left, the farther they went into the country, the more easterly was their direction.

Want of house furniture, and a turn for œconomy, had induced the husbandmen here to make lanterns out of calabashes, which was done by cutting several holes in them.

On the 26th, we set out for PETER FRERE'S, a bold and daring sportsman, and one of the best elephant-hunters in the country; a man who spoke the Hottentot language fluently.

Opposite to this spot ended the Camenasie country, and the Baggon road went from thence across the mountains.

In all this tract of country, no other business was carried on than that of grazing; and a great quantity

quantity of butter was sent from hence to town, where the farmer received no more than from three to six stivers per lb. although it stands the Company in as much as two shillings.

The husbandman, on his journey to and from the Cape, rests in the day, and travels in the cool of the night; but we were obliged to do just the reverse of this, if we wished to collect any plants and other things which constituted the whole object of our expedition. We took care therefore to turn our oxen out to graze at night, at every place where it could be done with safety. Thus, one evening here, we had turned our oxen out to graze in the plain, but not far from the farm. The evening was darker than usual; the dogs made a terrible noise, and the whole herd of oxen thronged towards the house, without our being able, as the night was so dark, to go to their assistance with fire arms. In the morning, we found that the cattle had been pursued by a tyger-wolf (*Hyæna maculata*) and that one of our oxen had been bit in the groin, and a portion of the skin, six inches broad, had been torn away; but that the intestines did not hang out, nor were they otherwise hurt. The hyæna is a bold and ravenous animal, which frequently eats the saddle from under the traveller's head, and the shoes from off his feet, while he lies sleeping in the open

open air. When one of these creatures gets into a sheepfold, it not only commits great havoc amongst the sheep, but terrifies them to such a degree, that they run all together in a heap, and squeeze each other to death.

On the 27th, having passed STEPHANUS FIREKE'S, we came to MATTHEW STREIDUNG'S; and, on the 28th, to PETER NYCKERT'S, and, afterwards, to ANDREW DE PRE'S.

Eland-boks (*Capra orcas*) were sometimes to be met with and shot in the mountains. This goat is as large as a middle-sized horse, and its flesh has an agreeable taste. The tongue, however, which, when salted and dried, is frequently carried up to the Cape for sale, is reckoned still more delicious, and is not inferior to a rein deer's tongue. This goat was said not to butt with his horns, when wounded, as the Bonteboks and Gemse-boks (*Capra oryx*) do.

I saw the kid caught of a very small and extremely scarce goat, called *Orebi* (*Capra monticola*). It was of a brown colour, scarcely larger than a cat, and very handsome. This animal was said to inhabit the plains in Lange kloof; and, it was asserted, that neither sex have horns, though, it is highly probable, that the male has.

Konka lay directly opposite on the left hand, and was a narrow piece of land between the mountains, which was already invaded by the colo-

colonists, although it was so small as to have only two farms on it.

I was every where told that this extensive country came more and more under the dominions of the Dutch colonists, to whom the Hottentots were constantly obliged to give way, and retire farther into the country. The Dutch always took possession at first of the best and most fertile parts of the land, in the wider valleys, leaving to the Hottentots, for a little while longer, the inferior tracts, between mountains, in the narrower vales, till, at length, the poor savages were driven even out of these, and obliged entirely to quit their native plains.

On the 29th we arrived, towards evening, at THOMAS FRERE'S, after a very troublesome day's journey. The roads were very slippery and heavy, in consequence of the great rains that had fallen; and the rivulets that ran in the middle of the valley, and which we were several times obliged to cross, were of an unusual depth, so that the proper place for fording them could not always be found. This occasioned my driver, unfortunately for me, to miss the right path, and he drove so deep into the river, that the water rose up to the middle of the cart, and wetted my plants, both dried and fresh, my insects, clothes, &c. quite through; so that, when we arrived at the farm at night, I was obliged

obliged to look over, with incredible pains, and dry before the fire, a great multiplicity of articles, many of which, however, were quite spoiled. I also now travelled in the cart myself, as my horse had lost much flesh, and was so much wearied by the journey that I had been obliged to leave him behind at the last farm. The water not only came up to my middle in the cart, but the bottom of the river likewise was full of mud, which was stirred up by the wheels, and which was so thick and heavy that it was with the greatest difficulty that the oxen could drag the cart through.

On the day following, being the 30th, we proceeded to *Essebosch*, a pretty little neat wood, which has acquired its name from the large trees *Essenboom*, (or *Ash* trees, *Ekebergia capensis*) that grew here; the leaf of which greatly resembles that of the European ash (*Fraxinus*). Large fig-trees too (*Ficus capensis*) the fruit of which is eaten by the baboons, grew here in abundance. As there was no farm as yet laid out hereabouts, we took up our night's lodging in the open air, at the side of a few bushes, and our saddles served us for pillows.

On the 1st of December, we went down *Kromme-rivier* country, which takes its name from *Kromme-rivier* (the crooked river) that runs meandering through it. This valley is nothing but

but, a continuation of Lange kloof; but sinks lower by degrees, and is likewise narrower, being sometimes no more than a gun-shot in breadth. It has scarcely any level ground; but slopes off entirely from the mountains on each side to the middle, where the smaller streams that run down from these mountains are collected, and form a large river.

Lange kloof and Kromme rivier, in which there are at present but few of the ancient inhabitants remaining, were formerly, in all probability, inhabited by the Heykom Hottentots, in great numbers.

At the end of this valley, to the right, the heads of the mountains began to approach closer to each other, and to be lower; till, at length, they quite disappeared, without reaching to the sea-shore. The mountains too were bent out of their course in such a manner on each side, that they now chiefly stretched towards the south-east.

We rode past VERMAK's estate, where Lange kloofs and Kromme-rivier mountains came to an absolute termination on the left; and the country now appeared very broad between the sea-shore and that chain of mountains which extended still farther to the left, past Olyfant's warm bath: in this manner, that both the mountains to the right, and those to the left, which had hitherto extended from Bokke-veld, now came to a termination; and, to the left, were

were only seen the Olyfant mountains, stretching about E. N. E. within which there were a few ranges of mountains that ran mostly E. or N. E. but were of no great extent.

So that the Olyfant mountains were seen to continue their course; but of these several ridges were plainly discerned, which at last terminated gradually in single points. The nearest visible range to the left is called *Zeeko riviers-berg*, and comes to a termination near ISAAC MEYER'S farm, where we afterwards arrived. Behind it was seen another ridge, called *Meulen-riviers Mountain*, which terminated near Koks's farm, where we staid and rested ourselves several days, as this farm was almost the farthestmost of the colony on this side. Behind the last-mentioned ridge, another was seen to peep out farther on, which was called *Kabeljauw-riviers-berg*, and was terminated by the river of the same name.

*Zeeko (or sea cow) river*, which at a small distance from the farm runs into the sea, is, in the part near the sea, tolerably well supplied with fish. The fishes found in this and other rivers all come up from the sea; higher up fish are seldom to be met with in the rivers of this part of Africa; so that there is no fishing carried on at the mouths of the rivers, and then it is done with nets, and by those only whose farms lie near the shore. One day when my landlord's

sons

sons went down to the sea shore a fishing with a few Hottentots, I accompanied them thither for the purpose of botanizing. The river was very broad here, it is true, but so choked up with sand banks that had been cast up from the sea, that when one went into it, the water did not come up higher than one's middle. I walked about for several hours quite naked, as well for the sake of bathing, as of collecting insects and shrubs that grew there on the banks, with nothing but a handkerchief about my waist, not suspecting that the sun beams would have any bad effect upon me. But, in a short time, I found that all that part of my body which was above the water, was red and inflamed. This disorder increased to such a degree that I was obliged to keep my bed for several days, and could not even bear a fine calico shirt on my body (especially over my shoulders, which were the parts most exposed to the sun's rays), till I had anointed myself with cream, in order to lubricate my parched skin.

The fields here abounded in grass, and consequently were proper for the rearing of horned cattle, which, with butter, were the only articles they could dispose of at the Cape.

They churned here almost every day, and the butter-milk, which was very seldom consumed by the cattle, formed rivulets, as it were, in the places where it had been thrown out.

The



The Hottentots in this farmer's service were numerous; among these, the girls that were employed in churning were obliged to wash themselves, and keep themselves clean, at least their hands and arms.

A curious and handsome species of Bulfinch, (*Langstaart Lonina macroura*, the long-tailed grosbeak of LATHAM) was found all over these fields, especially in such places as were boggy, or overgrown with rushes. It resembles the goldfinch in its red velvet summer dress, in which the cock at this time of the year was splendidly attired; but differed much from that bird by its long tail, which was much longer than its body. In winter the cock is grey, as the hen, who has not a long tail, is all the year round. It was curious to see this bird fly, with its long dependent tail that seemed to weigh it down, inasmuch that it could never fly straight forward, but always zigzag up and down. In windy weather its flight was much impeded by the length of its tail, so that it could not direct its course at will, but was frequently thrown out of its direction. Its slow flight (the heaviest I ever saw in the bird kind) made it easy to shoot, and when it rained, as well as in windy weather, one might almost catch it with one's hands.

The Hottentots that live hereabouts, and even those that are in the service of the Europeans, in matrimony without any ceremony or regularity. A woman too here has sometimes a husband and a substitute.

substitute. If a married Hottentot at any time goes on a journey, his wife may in his absence marry another, a circumstance that happened to my driver, who, on his return home, with all that he had earned in his expedition, found himself a widower.

Last year I had seen at different places, that the Hottentots who have no horses, made use of draught-oxen for riding and carrying burthens; and I now had an opportunity to learn how these oxen were broke in. An ox that is designed for riding must be accustomed to bear its rider a few weeks after it is calved, for which purpose first a skin is tied over its back, with which it is turned into the field along with the cow. Afterwards little Hottentot boys are set upon its back, and when the animal is thus broke in a little, another calf, quite a novice, is tied fast to its side, in order to tame it the better. This calf-riding, which was always done galloping, was entertaining enough, and the sport generally ended in the calf throwing its rider.

A small grey species of grasshopper (*Mantis fausta*) was found both here and at other places, which has obtained the name of the *Hottentots God*, and is supposed to be worshipped by them. I could not perceive any reason for this supposition, but it certainly was held in some degree of esteem; so that they did not willingly hurt it, and deemed

that person or creature fortunate on which it settled, though without paying it any sort of adoration.

As water-turtle are found here, I caught one for the sake of the blood, with a view of trying its virtues against the poison of serpents, as likewise to keep by me for occasional use. A very small quantity of blood was procured from a turtle that was not larger than the palm of one's hand. After the head was cut off, and the blood had run out, the serum was separated, and the red part that swam at top, was dried upon paper, when it scaled off and turned black.

As the species of palm called the bread-tree (*Zamia caffra*) was found in these parts, we looked for the fruit, which is very scarce, and gathered the seeds. Certain trees produce only male flowers, in a large cone without seeds, and other trees again yield a similar cone, as large as a man's head, with genuine seeds. To the under part of the scales of the male cone are fixed an infinite number of antheræ, which burst, and contain a white toughish pollen. On the female cone, seeds, as large as jordan almonds with the shells on, are contained between the scales, surrounded with a reddish pulp, which is good to eat. The fruit sprang out of the very top of the palm, frequently before there was time for the stem to be formed above the surface of the earth. The seed was supposed to come up best after being planted out,

out, if it was covered with straw, which was to be set on fire, and burnt down close to the ground; or if the seed was previously steeped in warm water.

In the whole of the extensive tract of country which we had traversed, from Roode Zand to Camtous rivier, populous as it now is, not a church is to be found. The farmers indeed had requested to have one, and, although all the rest of the clergy, as well in the town as in the country, are paid by the Company, had offered to pay the clergyman themselves, provided the church were erected in the middle of the colony, in a place most convenient for them all; proposals likewise had been given in for this purpose, and even permission asked for them to build one at their own expence near Kafferkuyls rivier, by which place most of them must pass in their journey to the Cape: but this well-meant and pious undertaking had been now for several years without success, owing to the opposition of the landroft and a few of his neighbours, who wished to have the new church built near his residence of Zwellendam, although it lies at one end of an extensive colony.

Our landlord was an elderly man, and born in Europe: he was one of the keenest sportsmen in the country, and had made long journeys at various times into the interior part of the coast of

Caffraria, in order to shoot elephants, by the sale of whose teeth he had acquired a tolerable fortune, and had finally fixed his abode here in a pleasant and advantageous spot. He related to me upon his honour several circumstances to which he had been an eye witness, and which a traveller is so very seldom fortunate enough to have an opportunity of seeing himself. Once, for instance, when he was out a hunting, having observed a sea-cow (*Hippopotamus amphibius*) that had gone a little way up from a neighbouring river, in order to calve; he, with his suite, lay still and concealed in the bushes, till the calf made its appearance, when one of them fired, and shot the mother dead on the spot; the Hottentots, who imagined that after this they could catch the calf alive, immediately ran out of their hiding-place to lay hold of it, but, though there were several of them, the new-born calf, which was still wet and slippery, got away from them, and made the best of its way to the river, without having previously received any instructions from its mother, either relative to the way it should take, or to this most natural means of saving itself. He also told me that the female elephant always kneels in the act of copulation, and that therefore the male can never line her, excepting when she is hot. Concerning lions, the mode of hunting them, their nature and manners, he knew much

much from his own experience; and I took the more pains to procure information relative to these matters, as I now had designed to wander for a long time through a country where the sky would be my only canopy, and an open plain, inhabited by wild beasts, my lodging; and as at the same time I was very sensible that it was of no little service to a traveller to be acquainted with the nature and disposition of the wild beasts, which he is carefully to avoid.

A lion may lie in a bush without moving when a man is passing by, so that the man seems only to take no notice of it. It may likewise perhaps start up, without doing any harm, if the man do but stand still, and not take to his legs. A hungry lion, however, is much more dangerous, and less merciful; yet it is not fond of attacking a man, at least it is very nice in the choice of its prey, so that it prefers a dog to an ox, and had much rather eat a Hottentot than a christian, perhaps because the Hottentot, being besmeared, always stinks, and because, as he never uses salt or spices, the juices of his body are not so acrid. It likewise rather attacks a Hottentot or slave than buffalo-beef that is hanging up; thus it happened to our landlord one night, that the lion passed through the bushes where beef of this kind was hung up, in order to seize a sleeping Hottentot. In a word, to climb up into a tree is a sure way of avoiding

the lion, but not the tyger, which frequently, when warmly pursued by the hounds, runs up into a tree, and finds a safe asylum there. On meeting a lion, one ought never to run away, but stand still, pluck up courage, and look it stern in the face. If a lion lies still without wagging its tail, there is no danger, but if it makes any motion with its tail, then it is hungry, and you are in great danger. If you are so situated that there is a pit between the lion and yourself, you may then fire on it, as it will not venture across the pit, neither will it pursue any one up an height.

In lion as the farmers have cleared the land, and laid out farms in the interior parts of the country, the lion and other fierce animals have necessarily been put to flight and destroyed. This our host knew not long since by woeful experience, but now lived in some degree of security with respect to his flocks and herds. The lion is possessed of such immense strength, that he will not only attack an ox of the largest size, but will very nimbly throw it over his shoulders, and leap over a fence four feet high with it, although at the same time the ox's legs hang dangling on the ground. No animal however is easier to extirpate than the lion, notwithstanding its great strength, agility, and sagacity. After having discovered by the track, how many lions there are in the troop, the same number of musquets

musquets are placed on the spot whither it is supposed that the lion will come; after this a piece of carrion is tied to a strong cord, which is fastened to the trigger of one of these guns; the instant that the lion touches the carrion, the gun goes off, which is so placed as to shoot the beast through the head. The other lions that are present are so far from being scared away by the report, that it may happen that one of them shall go towards the smoke, and fix its claws into the discharged gun, and all the rest, one after the other, fall before the other guns, insomuch that sometimes the whole troop is destroyed in one night. But should a lion chance to be only wounded, and not killed on one of these occasions, he will never more approach a spring-gun, and the lion thus wounded will attack a man without being impelled to it by hunger.

The hoof-distemper began now, as the heat of the summer increased, to appear amongst the horned cattle, and some of my English fellow-traveller's team were affected with it, insomuch that he was obliged to exchange them for others that appeared to be healthier.

My oxen had no other complaint than hunger, and they were so emaciated and worn out that it would seem as if no distemper could lay hold on their lean ribs and small shanks. In the mean time, after our cattle were rested, we set out to



continue our route as far as the mountains called the Snow-mountains. And as the country through which we were to pass afterwards was either inhabited by Hottentots only, or quite uninhabited, we resolved to take with us some Hottentots as interpreters, guides, and guards, and at the same time to lay in a small stock of provision.

Our worthy hosts, therefore, put up for us a parcel of wheat-biscuits, a few loaves of wheaten bread, and a small tub of butter, and likewise killed a large sheep, which was salted, and sewed up in its own skin.

The Hottentot language is not every where the same, but has very different dialects; all of them, however, are commonly pronounced with a kind of smack, or clacking of the organs of speech. This clacking I observed to be made in three different ways, which renders it almost impossible for the Europeans to speak it properly, although their children, who have been brought up among those of the Hottentots, learn to speak it fluently. The first of these modes of clacking is the *dental*, in which the tip of the tongue is struck against the teeth. The second is the *palatal*, when the noise is made by the tongue striking against the palate. The third, or *guttural*, is the most difficult of all, and performed quite low down in the throat, with

with the very root of the tongue. These clackings are the more difficult to perform, as they must be made at the very instant of uttering the word, and not before nor after. They occur not only in the beginning, but likewise in the middle, of a word; and sometimes two clackings occur in a word of two or three syllables. When several Hottentots sit conversing together, the sound is very like the clacking of so many geese. That the pronunciation of the language is troublesome to them, was very evident to me, from the gesticulations they made, and from the circumstance that they wearied their lips. They could talk, however, with a tobacco pipe in their mouths, but in very short sentences only. The language of the Caffres I observed was much easier, and was spoken with much less clacking, which was heard in some few words only.

So that the inhabitants of this southernmost promontory of Africa have a regular language; but, in other respects, are so rude and uncultivated as to have no letters, nor any method of writing or delineating them, either on paper, in wood, or on stone. It is in vain, therefore, to seek for any kind of learning, or any antique records, among them; and few nations in the world, perhaps, are less enlightened than they. Thus too the Hottentots could

could not name in their language several things in use among the colonists, such as bason, the bow of a yoke for draught oxen, a kettle, tobacco, &c.

As I was sometimes, for several weeks together, among the Hottentots, out of the bounds of the colony, I was obliged to learn something of their language; and, the better to recollect what I had learned, I formed a small vocabulary, and, with three different marks, distinguished the three usual clackings; of which the dental is marked with the letter a, the palatial with A, and the guttural with á.

KOLBE has a long list of words in the Hottentot language; and Professor SPARRMAN has even given us several dialects of it: and, as some part of what I have taken down, differs from theirs, I have here annexed it, for the use of those that are curious on the subject of languages.

1	—	—	Ko ISB
2	—	—	Ka MSE
3	—	—	ARUSE
4	—	—	GN <sub>a</sub> To I
5	—	—	METUK <sub>a</sub>
6	—	—	KRUBI
7	—	—	GN <sub>a</sub> TIGN <sub>a</sub>
8	—	—	GNINKA
9	—	—	TUMINKMA
10	—	—	GOMATSE

Dog	-	-	ARIKÆ, TUTU, TUP
Bitch	-	-	TUS
Flea	-	-	a TFI
Milk	-	-	BI, BIP
Bread	-	-	BRÈ
Give bread	-	-	BRÈ-MARÈ
Butter	-	-	BINGDI
Good day	-	-	DABÈ, DABETÈ
Hemp	-	-	DÁKHAN
Fire	-	-	eI, eIP, NeIP
Make fire	-	-	eI KOA KDI
Which is the way to the next village?			} DANNA HAA-SE aKROI aDU
Where is?	-	-	DEMMA
Cow	-	-	G6S, G6OSA
Cow's milk	-	-	G6SBIP
Good evening	-	-	GOI MOTSKI
Dwelling place	-	-	GEIHER
Bad weather	-	-	HO MA
Come hither	-	-	HÆVA HA, KONG
Come hither, my friend			HAGATSCHI
Ox	-	-	H6G6, KUMAP
Bring hither	-	-	HANKA
Horse	-	-	HAKVA, HAAP
Where is the horse?	-	-	HAKVA DEMMA HA?
Bring the horse hither			HAKVA SEO
Table	-	-	HEID
Wife	-	-	HONNES, KUS
Water	-	-	KAMMA
Lyon	-	-	KAMA
Mouth	-	-	KAM
Nice, delicious	-	-	K a NJI
Good morning	-	-	KoA MOSTSCHT
Tobacco pipe	-	-	KOP

Man	-	-	KuPP	o
Drink	-	-	KA	
Foot-path	-	-	KUDU	
House, farm	-	-	KOMMA	
It is good	-	-	KaL HEM	
Buffalo	-	-	K a w	
Sea cow	-	-	KoU	
Hole	-	-	KóU, Tw a p	
To beat	-	-	KOA	
Gun	-	-	KaBú	
Penis	-	-	HOP	
Glans penis	-	-	KoUTERE	
Father	-	-	AMBUP, TIKKOP	
Mother	-	-	ANDES, TISSOS	
Sifter	-	-	KANS, TIKANDI	
Brother	-	-	KARUP, TIKAKWA	
Fine weather	-	-	T a m	
Pot, drum	-	-	SU	
Caffre corn	-	-	SEMI	
Warm	-	-	SANG	
To eat	-	-	SINNo	
Knife	-	-	NóRAP	
Chair	-	-	NeNaMHoP	
To sleep	-	-	OM	
To sow with a needle, to darn	-	-	OM	
House	-	-	OMMA	
Eye	-	-	MU	
Give	-	-	MARÉ	
Money	-	-	MARI	
Eyes	-	-	MUM	
Hat, cap	-	-	Kaba, TABA	
Wolf	-	-	KoKA	
Egg	-	-	KaBIKA	
Cack	-	-	KóUKEKURR	

Cold	-	-	KOROSA
Waggon	-	-	KROI, KROJIM, KULE
Red glafs beads	-	-	{ KRAKWA (by the <i>Caffres</i> KITI KITI)
Elk antilope	-	-	KEN
Female elk	-	-	KENS
Elks, a troop of	-	-	KANNA
Meat, flesh	-	-	KOP
People	-	-	KEUNA
Tooth	-	-	KOM
Nose	-	-	KOYP
Iron, copper	-	-	KORUP
Breast of a woman	-	-	SAMMA
Where is the waggon?	-	-	HAVA KROJIM?
Here is the waggon	-	-	HÆVA KROJIM
Mare	-	-	HASS
Fox	-	-	GIEP
Run away	-	-	SU SE K6N
Tiger	-	-	GVAASUP
Ichneumon	-	-	eP
Sheep	-	-	GONA
Chest	-	-	GEIP
Hart beast	-	-	KAMMAP
A rock	-	-	OIP
Have you seen?	-	-	MUSKO
Drove of oxen	-	-	MANQUA
If you please	-	-	KUMSEA, HUNKOP
Turn about, drive back	-	-	KARRA
A Hottentot drefs	-	-	NAMKVA
Euphorbia viminalis	-	-	KUIJOP

The children, which among the Hottentots are numerous, at first wear rings about their legs made of rushes, instead of those that are formed  
of

of hides, till they become accustomed to them. In like manner I observed, that the Caffre boys at first exercised themselves in throwing a pointed stick; till in process of time they were able to manage the javelin.

The Hottentots are much inclined to believe in witchcraft, and when any one falls sick, or dies, they consider him as bewitched.

The Hottentots universally wore a bag just before the parts of shame, which was made of the grey part of the back of the Cape fox, and was fastened round the body with a thong. The Caffres wore a bag similar indeed to this, but made of another kind of skin, and at the same time so small that it sometimes did not cover more than the foreskin.

At the entertainments which the Hottentots made, and particularly those made to divert us, I had an opportunity of seeing their card-playing, and a kind of an instrument called Korà. It resembled at first sight a fiddlestick, and was made of a wooden stick, over which was extended a string. At the end of this was fastened the tip of a quill, and upon this they played with their lips; blowing as if it were a wind instrument, so as to make it produce a jarring sound. What they called card-playing, was a particular sport, in playing at which they talked, snapped their fingers, and laughed.

Having

Having laid in a stock of provisions for our journey, and put our fire-arms in good order, on the 9th of December, we took the road to Cabeljaus rivier, where the last farm now laid out was looked after by a servant, and belonged to VAN RHENEN, a rich burgher at the Cape.

On the 10th, we crossed Camtous rivier, which at this time formed the boundaries of the colony, and which was not suffered to extend farther. This was strictly prohibited in order that the colonists might not be induced to wage war with the courageous and intrepid Caffres, or the Company suffer any damage by that means. The country hereabouts was fine, and abounded in grass.

Proceeding farther we come to Looris rivier, where the country began to be hilly and mountainous, like that of Houtniquas, with fine woods both in the clefts of the mountains, and near the rivulets; here and there we saw large pits that had been dug, for the purpose of capturing elephants and buffaloes. In the middle of the pit stood a pole, which was very sharp at the top, and on which the animal is impaled alive, if it should chance to fall into the pit.

The Hottentot captain that resided in this neighbourhood, immediately on our arrival, paid us a visit in the evening, and encamped with part of his people not far from us. He was distinguished



guished from the rest by a cloak, made of a tyger's skin, and a staff that he carried in his hand.

On the 11th, we passed *Galgebosch* in our way to VAN STADE's rivier, where we lighted our fires, and took up our night's lodging. The Gonaquas Hottentots that lived here, and were intermixed with Caffres, visited us in large bodies, and met with a hearty reception, and, what pleased them most, some good Dutch tobacco. Several of them wore the skins of tygers, which they had themselves killed, and by this gallant action were entitled to wear them as trophies. Many carried in their hands a fox's tail, tied to a stick, with which they wiped off the sweat from their brows. As these people had a tolerable stock of cattle, we got milk from them in plenty, milked into baskets which were perfectly water-tight, but for the most part so dirty that we were obliged to strain the milk through a linen cloth.

On the 12th, in the morning, we passed VAN STADE's rivier, and arrived at two large villages consisting of a great many round huts, disposed in a circular form. The people crowded forward in shoals to our waggon, and our tobacco seemed to have the same effect on them as the magnet has on iron. The number of grown persons, appeared to me to amount to at least two or three hundred. When the greatest part of them had received a little tobacco they

retired well pleased, to a distance in the plain, or else returned home. The major part of them were dressed in calf-skins, and not in sheep-skins, like the Hottentots.

We had brought with us several things from town, with which we endeavoured either to gain their friendship, or reward their services, such as small knives, tinder-boxes, and small looking-glasses. To the chief of them we presented some looking-glasses, and were highly diverted at seeing the many pranks these simple people played with them: one or more looking at themselves in the glass at the same time, and then staring at each other, and laughing ready to burst their sides; but the most ridiculous part of the farce was, that they even looked at the back of the glass, to see whether the same figure presented itself as they saw in the glass.

These people, who were well made, and of a sprightly and undaunted appearance, adorned themselves with brushes made of the tails of animals, which they wore in their hair, on their legs, and round their waist. Some had thongs cut out of hides, and others strings of glass-beads, bound several times round their bodies. But upon no part of their dress did they set a greater value than upon small and bright metal plates of copper or brass, either round, oblong, or square. These they scowered with great care, and hung

them with a string, either in their hair, on their foreheads, on their breasts, at the back of their neck, or before their posteriors; and sometimes, if they had many of them, all round their heads. My English fellow traveller had brought with him one of those medallions struck in copper, and gilt, that had been sent by the two English ships, which were at this time sailing towards the south pole, to be distributed amongst the different nations in that quarter of the globe. This medal was given to one of the Caffres who was very familiar with us, and who was so well pleased with it, that he accompanied us on the whole of our journey and back again, with his medal hanging down glittering just before the middle of his forehead.

Some of these people had hanging before their breasts a conic purse made of the undressed skin of an animal, which was fastened about the neck by four leathern thongs, and served them for a tobacco pouch. Some of them wore about their necks a necklace made of small shells, called serpents skulls (*Cypræa moneta*) strung upon a string, and to this hung a tortoise-shell, for keeping the bukku ointment in. Most of them were armed with as many javelins as they could well hold in one hand.

The huts were covered over with mats made  
of

of rushes, which, with their milk-baskets, were so close that no water could penetrate them.

The range of mountains which, during our whole journey, we had hitherto had to the left, now came to a termination; and, to the right of us, was seen the sea. A larger range of mountains, however, proceeded farther into the country to the left.

The country hereabouts was full of wild beasts of every kind, and therefore very dangerous to travel through. We were more particularly anxious concerning our cattle, which might easily be scared away by the lions, and lost to us for ever.

We were likewise too few in number, and not sufficiently armed, to protect ourselves against the inhabitants, whose language our Hottentots now no longer perfectly understood. We therefore came to a resolution to intice from this village another troop of Hottentots to go along with us, which we accordingly did, by promising them a reward of tobacco and other trifles that they were fond of, as also to kill for them a quantity of buffaloes sufficient for their support. This promise procured us a great many more than we wanted, and our troop consisted now of above an hundred men.

*The 13th.* The country in which we now were, was called *Krakakamma*, and abounded with

grass and wood, as well as wild beasts of every kind, which were here still secure in some measure from the attacks of the colonists; these were chiefly buffaloes, elephants, two-horned rhinoceroses, striped horses and asses, (*Zebra*, *Quagga*) and several kinds of goats, particularly large herds of hartebeests, (*Capra dorcas*).

We travelled first to *Krakakamma valley*, and afterwards from hence farther downwards to the sea shore, where there was a great quantity of underwood, as well as wood of a larger growth, filled with numerous herds of buffaloes, that grazed in the adjacent plains.

In the afternoon, when the heat of the day abated, we went out with a few of our Hottentots a hunting, in hopes of killing something wherewith to satisfy the craving stomachs of our numerous retinue. After we had got a little way into the wood, we spied an extremely large herd of wild buffaloes, (*Bos caffer*), which being in the act of grazing, held down their heads, and did not observe us till we came within three hundred paces of them. At this instant the whole herd, which appeared to consist of about five or six hundred large beasts, lifted up their heads, and viewed us with attention. So large an assemblage of animals, each of which taken singly is an extremely terrible object, would have made any one shudder at the sight, even one who had

not, like me, the year before, had occasion to see their astonishing strength, and experience the rough manner in which they treat their opponents. Nevertheless, as we were now apprized of the nature of the animals, and their not readily attacking any one in the open plains, we did not dread either their strength or number, but, not to frighten them, stood still a little while, till they again stooped down to feed; when, with quick steps, we approached within forty paces of them. We were three Europeans, and as many Hottentots trained to shooting, who carried muskets, and the rest of the Hottentots were armed with their javelins. The whole herd now began to look up again, and faced us with a brisk and undaunted air; we then judged it was time to fire, and all at once let fly among them. No sooner had we fired, than the whole troop, intrepid as it otherwise was, surprised by the flash and report, turned about and made for the woods, and left us a spectacle not to be equalled in its kind. The wounded buffaloes separated from the rest of the herd, and either could not keep up with it, or else took another road.

Amongst these was an old bull buffalo, which came close to the side where we stood, and obliged us to take to our heels, and fly before him. It is true, it is impossible for a man, how fast soever he may run, to outrun these animals;

nevertheless we were so far instructed for our preservation, as to know that a man may escape tolerably well from them, as long as he is in an open and level plain; as the buffalo, which has very small eyes in proportion to the size of its head, does not see much side-ways, but only straight forward. When therefore it is come pretty near, a man has nothing more to do than to throw himself down on one side. The buffalo, which always gallops straight forward, does not observe the man that lies on the ground, neither does it miss its enemy, till he has had time enough to run out of the way. Our wounded bull came pretty near us, but passed on one side, making the best of his way to a copse, which however he did not quite reach before he fell. In the mean time, the rest of our Hottentots had followed a cow that was mortally wounded, and with their javelins killed a calf. We, for our parts, immediately went up to the fallen bull, and found that the ball had entered his chest, and penetrated through the greatest part of his body, notwithstanding which he had run at full speed several hundred paces before he fell. He was far from being young, of a dark grey colour, and almost without any hairs, which, on the younger sort, are black. The body of this animal was extremely thick, but his legs, on the other hand, short. When he lay on the ground,

his

his body was so thick, that I could not get on him without taking a running jump. When our drivers had flayed him, at least in part, we chose out the most fleshy pieces, and pickled some, and at the same time made an excellent repast on the spot. Although I had taken it into my head that the flesh of an old bull like this would have been both coarse and tough, yet, to my great astonishment, I found that it was tender, and tasted like all other game. The remainder of the bull, together with the cow and the calf, were given to the Hottentots for their share, who were not at all behind hand, but immediately made a large fire on the spot, and boiled the pieces they had cut off without delay. What they preferred, and first of all laid on the fire, were the marrow-bones, of which, when broiled, they eat the marrow with great eagerness. The guts, meat, and offals, they hung up on the branches of trees; so that, in a short time, the place looked like a slaughter-house; about which the Hottentots encamped in order to broil their victuals, eat, and sleep.

On the approach of night, my fellow travellers and I thought it best to repair to our waggons, and give orders for making our cattle fast, before it grew quite dark. In our way we passed within a few hundred paces of five lions, which, on seeing us, walked off into the woods.



Having tied our beasts to the wheels of our waggons, fired our pieces off two or three times in the air, and kindled several fires round about our encampment, all very necessary precautions for our security, as well with respect to the elephants as more particularly to the lions, we lay down to rest, each of us with a loaded musquet by his side, committing ourselves to the care of God's gracious providence. The like precautions we always observed in future, when obliged to encamp in such places where man indeed seemed to rule by day, but wild beasts bore the sway at night. These free denizens of the earth, for the most part, lie quiet and still, in the shade of woods and copses during the day, their time for feeding being in the cool of the evening and at night, at which time lions and other beasts of prey come out to seek their food, and devour the more innocent and defenceless animals. A lion cannot by dint of strength, indeed, seize a buffalo, but always has recourse to art, and lies in wait under some bush, and principally near rivulets, where the buffalo comes to drink. He then springs upon his back with the greatest agility, with his tremendous teeth biting the buffalo in the nape of his neck, and wounding him in the sides with his claws, till, quite wearied out, he sinks to the ground and dies.

On

On the 15th, in the morning, I went out to see whether the trees of the woods, of which this part of the country consisted, had yet any blossoms upon them; but found that the summer was not far enough advanced, and that the trees were so close to each other, and so full of prickles, that without cutting my way through them, I could not advance far into the wood, which, besides, was extremely dangerous, on account of the wild beasts. Here, and in other places, where it was woody, we observed near the watering-places, the fresh tracks of buffaloes, as also the tracks and dung of elephants, two-horned rhinoceroses, and other animals.

In the plains there were striped horses and asses (*Equus Zebra* and *Quagga*), hartebeests (*Capra dorcas*), koedoes (*Capra strepsiceros*) &c.

We therefore got ready and set out for Zwartkop's rivier, and the Salt-pan, not far distant from it, where we baited during the heat of the day. Near this Salt-pan, as it is called, we had the finest view in the world, which delighted us the more as it was very uncommon. This Salt-pan was now, to use the expression, in its best attire, and made a most beautiful appearance. It formed a valley of about three-quarters of a mile in diameter, and sloping off by degrees, so that the water in the middle was scarcely four feet deep. A few yards from the  
water's

water's edge this valley was encircled by a mound several fathoms high, which was overgrown with brush wood. It was rather of an oval form, and took me up a good half-hour to walk round it. The soil nearest the valley was sandy; but, higher up, it appeared to consist, in many places, of a pale slate. The whole Salt-pan, the water of which was not deep, at the same time that the bottom was covered with a smooth and level bed of salt, at this juncture, being the middle of summer and in a hot climate, exactly resembled a frozen lake covered with ice, as clear and transparent as crystal. The water had a pure saline taste without any thing bitter in it. In the heat of the day, as fast as the water evaporated, a fine salt crystallizing on the surface first appeared there in the form of glittering scales, and afterwards settled at the bottom. It was frequently driven on one side by the wind; and, if collected at that time, proved to be a very fine and pure salt. The Salt-pan had begun to grow dry towards the north-east end, but to the south-westward, to which it inclined, it was fuller; to the westward it ran out into a long neck,

It appeared to us somewhat strange, to find, so far from the sea, and at a considerable height above it, such a large and saturated pool of salt-water. But the water which deposits this salt,  
does

does not come at all from the sea, but solely from the rains, which fall in spring, and totally evaporate in summer. The whole of the soil of this country is entirely salt. The rain-water which dissolves this, runs down from the adjacent heights, and is collected in this basin, where it remains and gradually evaporates; and the longer it is evaporating the saltier it is.

The colonists who live in Lange kloof, and in the whole country extending from thence towards this side, as also in Kamdebo, Kankon and other places, are obliged to fetch their salt from this spot.

It was said, that not far from this there were two more salt-pans, which however yielded no salt till they were quite dry.

Several insects were found drowned in the salt water, some of which were such as I could not meet with on the bushes alive, during the few hours that I staid here and walked about the copses, which my curiosity induced me to do, although it was a very dangerous spot, on account of the lions.

Our Hottentots, of whom we had now but a few in our suite, and whom we had left to take care of our oxen that were turned out to grass, we found fast asleep, overcome by the heat of the day. Towards evening, we drove a little farther on, and arrived at *Kuka*, where the brook

was

was already a mere stagnant puddle, and had only a brackish water in it; nevertheless we took up our night's lodging here.

We were surprised to find here a poor farmer, who had encamped in this place, with his wife and children, by stealth, in order to feed and augment his small herd. And indeed these poor people were no less astonished, not to say terrified, at our arrival, in the idea, that we either had, or might, inform the government against them, for residing out of the appointed boundaries. The farmer had only a small hut made of branches of trees for his family, and another adjacent to it, by way of kitchen. We visited them in their little mansion, and, at our request, were entertained by them with milk. But we had not been long seated before the whole basin of milk was covered with a swarm of flies, so as to be quite black with them; and the hut was so infested with flies, that we could not open our mouths to speak. Within so small a space I never beheld, before nor since, such an amazing number of these insects.

We therefore hastened to our carts; and having kindled our fires, and pitched our camp at a little distance from the hut, listened the whole night to the howling of wolves, and the dreadful roaring of lions.

On

On the morning following, being the 16th of December, we proceeded to great *Sunday-river*, the banks of which were very steep, and the adjacent fields arid and meagre.

The major part of our ample retinue of Hottentots had now left us, after having got, in the course of the journey, venison enough to feast on, and, as we were approaching nearer and nearer to a country which would soon be changed to a perfect desert, where no game nor venison was to be hoped for; and where it was expected that want of water would be in the highest degree experienced. And, indeed, we now not only found ourselves almost alone, but the oxen belonging to my English fellow-traveller were so afflicted with the hoof distemper, that several of them were lame, and some of them were hardly fit to be put any longer to the waggon.

In consequence of this we held a council with the drivers; and, after mature deliberation, resolved (though sore against our wills) to turn back, not finding it practicable to proceed, with emaciated and sick cattle like ours, through a barren and desert country, to the Dutch settlements near the Snow mountains and in Camdeboo.

We did not, however, neglect previously to enquire of the Gonoquas Hottentots concerning the nature of the country, the watering places for cattle, the wild beasts there, &c. and found

and found that the plain was already very much dried up, and that long and forced marches (to use the expression) must have been made between the few brackish watering places that were to be met with in the way.

It is however not always very easy to get the truth out of the Hottentots. One must never attack them with questions to the point, when one wishes to know the truth of any thing; but it must be fished out of them by degrees, and as it were discoursing upon other subjects. The Hottentots are also extremely reserved, and wish before hand to know whether their visitors are good or bad people. Besides, as the Hottentots had now left us, we were deprived of the interpreters we should want, should we chance, in our road, to fall in with the Caffres or other nations. The Caffres, it is true, are not bad in themselves; but, as they are in great want of iron, they are sometimes so greedy after it, as to make no conscience of murdering a Christian for the sake of getting the iron from off the wheels of his waggon, which they forge and grind to make heads for their javelins. These Caffres, a few years before, had murdered HEUPNAER and some of his company, who, in order to barter for elephants' teeth, had travelled into the country of the Caffres and Tambukki.

The

The Snow-mountains (*Sneeuwberg*) whither we had intended to direct our course, is a tract of land which lies very high, and, as it were, on a mountain, with other elevated tracts lying near it. It has acquired its name from the cold which prevails there, and the snow that falls upon it. Sometimes the snow lies there from one year to the other; and then the colonists are obliged to remove from thence to the Lower-lands, as it is called. To the eastward of the Snow-mountains, and farther to the northward, above the country of the Caffres, lies that of the Tambukki; and, to this joins a people that are whiter than the Hottentots, with curling hair, and are called Little Chinese.

The Caffres, whose country properly begins near the Great Fish-river (*Groote Visch-rivier*), raise a kind of pease and beans, and a species of *Holcus*, and, at the same time, are in possession of large herds of cattle.

As soon as the afternoon began to feel cool, and we had, in some degree, investigated the plants which were to be found here, near Kuka-kamma, we set out on our journey homeward, not by the same way by which we had come, but by the upper road to VAN STADE'S *rivier*, and from thence to *Zeeka rivier*, where we arrived safe on the 20th of December.



In the environs of Van Stadens River, were the finest woods I had seen in the whole country. Few of the trees, however, were as yet in bloom. The assagay tree (*Eurhiza faginea*) of which the Hottentots and Caffres make the shafts of their javelins, grew here in abundance, and began now to develope its diminutive blossoms. A great number of butterflies (*Papiliones*) that are otherwise so very scarce in this part of Africa, flew round about the tops of the trees, without our being able to reach them.

On one side of our road, I observed a heap of boughs of trees, on which most of the Hottentots threw a few twigs as they passed, and, on enquiring the reason, was told that it was the grave of a dead Hottentot.

On our return we passed a few days before Christmas, with our old friend JACOB KOS, where we found sufficient employment in drying, and getting in order, the thick-leaved and succulent plants which we had gathered in our last expedition up the country, and where our oxen in some measure recruited their strength and flesh. The Calvinists do not keep Christmas, but every one goes about his business as usual; but New-year's day is thus far kept as a holiday, that on this day neighbours visit each other.

A small vineyard was planted here, and likewise at a few miles farther near Kroppe rivier; but the grapes

grapes did not ripen very well, on which account the wine was rather sour, and sometimes so sour that it could not be drank, but was only used for distilling brandy, from a process which, by some farmers, was carried on with profit.

In the Christmas holidays, we proceeded on our journey up towards Kromme rivier, and Lange kloof, where, opposite to THOMAS FRERE's farm, is a waggon road across the mountains to *Sitskamma*.

Instead of wheel-barrows, for which timber was wanting, the husbandmen used calf and sheepskins made into bags, in which they carried their manure to their gardens.

On the 28th we arrived at HANNES OLOFSON's farm, and from thence, turning to the right, rode over the mountains to ANDERS OLOFSON's near *Riet-valley*, in *Camenassie* land, a tract of country that lay between the mountains, was narrow, and exhibited several scattered mountains and eminences. It seemed to be as high as Lange kloof, and the soil was dry and poor.

The Hottentots called by the name of *Nenta*, a plant (*Zygophyllum herbaceum repens*), which was said to be poisonous to sheep, as also another, a shrub of the same genus, (*Zygophyllum sessilifolium*.)

On the 29th, we rode from this spot to PETER JORDAN's estate, situated near *Olyfant's warm-bath*, and the river called (the Eastern) *Elephant's-river*.

The broad tract over which we travelled, was Carrow field all over, exhibiting a few bushes, no grass, and very little water.

*Kon*, was a name given by the Hottentots to a shrub that grew here (*Mesembryanthemum emarcidum*) and was famous all over the country. The Hottentots come far and near to fetch this shrub with the root, leaves, and all, which they beat together, and afterwards twist them up like pig-tail tobacco; after which they let the mass ferment, and keep it by them for chewing, especially when they are thirsty. If it be chewed immediately after the fermentation, it intoxicates. The word *kon*, is said to signify a quid; the colonists call it *Canna-root*. It is found in the driest fields only, and is gathered chiefly by the Hottentots, who live near this spot. These afterwards hawk it about, frequently to a great distance; and exchange it for cattle and other commodities. No Hottentot or Caffre in the whole country has either money or any thing of a similar nature to trade with; but all their commerce consists in bartering either with cattle or other commodities.

On the 30th, we visited the warm-bath, which rises at the foot of the large ridge of mountains, and at a few fathoms distance from it. The stones at the foot of the mountain formed a very black iron ore, somewhat like the slag of iron, and the earth

earth near it was brownish. The top of the mountain contains a great white quartz. The water is very warm, but not boiling hot; so that one may sit in it at its source. It has indeed three sources; the largest bubbles up to the Eastward out of a great number of springs of different sizes, the cavity of it being above two yards across, and it is this that is most used. The second lies a few fathoms to the left, and boils up out of one single cavity. The third and least lies a few fathoms from the second. On the surface of the water, was seen a thin and fine blue pellicle, and on the twigs of trees and stones that were near it, was precipitated a saffron-coloured ochre. It had an inky taste, but hardly any smell; from an infusion of tea, the water became bluish, and the powder of bark made it blackish, which shewed that it contained iron. It was not fit for dressing victuals; but as it was said, might be used for washing, without staining the linen. The earth that lay near, and round about the veins of the spring, was of a very loose texture and a brownish colour, and at the same time contained a portion of salt, and minute shining particles of iron. The crystals of the salt were extremely minute and fine, and were found not only in the loose earth, but also on pieces of wood that lay in the earth. On several pieces of wood that lay in the water were found, besides the

schre above mentioned, thin and brittle scales, which glittered a little, and, by the farmers, were thought to be silver, but seemed to be nothing more than scales of iron. When one sits in the bath, the circulation of the blood is greatly increased, and one is in danger of swooning. The water, it is true, is chiefly used for bathing in; some people however drink it likewise. The water never receives any increase either from rain, or drought, though, as the farmers testified, it does from thunder. The time for using the water, is a little before or at sunrise, and late in the cool of the evening, as the water is too hot during the heat of the day. The invalids sit directly over the veins of the spring, and more or less deep in them.

In order to have a view of the country on the other side of the mountains, I climbed up to their highest summits, and saw, at no great distance, a ridge of mountains, which was lower than this that I stood on, and, between these, the country was as broad as Lange kloof, and consisted of hills and vallies. The tract of country that lay behind the lower ridge was flat and poor Carrow-land, and so long and broad, without any mountains, that the eye could not reach its boundaries. There were no farms nor houses on this extensive plain, over which the farmers travel from Camdeboo across Hex-rivier, to the Cape. It was said however that farther on there were

were mountains, which probably extend from Roggeveld to the Sneeuw-berg.

Here therefore were the last ridges of that tremendous mass of mountains, which extend from Houtniquas land and Hartequas kloof, and again to the northward from Roode Zands and Kartous clefts, directly across the Carrow that lies on the other side of the Bokke-veld. And indeed it is not only along the foot of this range of mountains that the colonists have laid out their best and principal farms, but they have also got between the ridges of the mountains, and set themselves down in all the intermediate valleys.

That immensely dry Carrow-plain, which commences behind the last mentioned mass of mountains, and extends in length from the N. W. to the S. E. end of the southern-most point of Africa, and in breadth to Roggeveld, and the Snow-mountains, for want of water, cannot be inhabited; and scarcely any animals reside there, except for a short time, in or immediately after the rainy season, when a little salt water is found here and there in some of the hollow places. Those colonists therefore that have farms on the other side of this tract, either in Roggeveld, or the Snow-mountains, are obliged to wait for that time for crossing so desert a country, when they are under the necessity of pitching their camp near such places

where a little water is to be had, between which spots, sometimes a journey of ten or twelve hours long, must be performed with all possible speed in the night. It is therefore necessary to know these watering places well; because, if one should meet with any Hottentots, they would not readily inform one, even if they knew of any watering place, but keep it a secret to themselves, in order to be able to hide themselves, in case they should at any time wish to run away. Grass is hardly to be met with in this tract, so that it is with difficulty that a horse can find fodder there, but the oxen put up both with brackish water and the salt leaves of the shrubs and bushes. In the day-time, when the sun shines out hot, if one casts one's eye over a smooth and arid plain like this, the eye is affected by a tremulous motion in the air, just as though one were looking at a flame.

The Hottentots who traverse these dry Carrow fields, use several means, not only to assuage their hunger, but more particularly to quench their thirst. Besides the above mentioned plant called *Kón* or *Gunna*, they use two others, viz, one called *Kamekà* or *Barup*, which is said to be a large and watery root; and another called *Ku*, which is likewise, according to report, a large and succulent root.

The

The plants as well herbs as bushes, stand very thin in the Carrow-veld; and, in such a burning hot climate, where not a drop of rain falls for the space of eight months at least, it is almost inconceivable how they can thrive at all. Their stems and branches likewise have the appearance of being brittle and quite dried up; but the leaves, on the other hand, are very thick and filled with a briny fluid, and remain green all the year through. These fresh and ever-verdant tops and leaves, however, may perhaps receive from the air, which at night is cool, some moisture for their preservation and nourishment. The ground appears quite burned up, is of a yellowish red colour, and consists of clay with ochres of iron and common salt.

1774. On the 1st of January, directing our course homewards, we arrived at JAN VAN STADE's farm, and afterwards passing an estate belonging to one GERT VAN ROYEN, and another belonging to a VAN FORS, came to the villa which GERT VAN ROYEN occupied himself.

We let our drivers and Hottentots go on with the carts through Hartequas klooof, with orders to wait for us at the Company's post at Rietvalley; and I, with my English fellow-traveler, determined to go on horseback over the dry Carrow, which lay to the right, and afterwards



proceed through *Platte kloof*. But this expedition did not end very fortunately; for, as in this level plain, which is seldom visited by travellers, there were no tracks to follow, we missed our road, and the longer we travelled the farther we went astray, so that at last we could not even find our way back again. We rode on however, as fast as our horses could go, and the sun began to go down without our having perceived the least trace of a house or farm. At length the sun being set, and no hopes left, we retired a little way back to a valley, where there was a small brook, with a few trees on its borders; and, in this brook, there was still some water.

Here we thought it advisable to take up our lodging for the night. Accordingly we unsaddled our horses, and tied them up, with the halter round one of their legs, that they should not run away; and then, by means of our guns, we made a large fire of Canna-bushes (*Salifola aphylla*). After this we lay down near the fire, with the saddles under our heads; but could not get a wink of sleep, on account of an intolerable sensation of cold, which, though not so very intense in itself, yet, by reason of the burning heat we had endured in the daytime, was severely felt by us, and forced us to rise several times in the course of an hour, in order

order to mend the fire, and warm ourselves all over. We had derived this advantage from our guns, that we could always make a fire; but we had no hopes of finding any thing in this plain to shoot, by which we might satisfy the cravings of our stomachs. I had therefore taken the precaution to put into my shooting-bag a few biscuits and pieces of sugar-candy, which were extremely welcome to us at this juncture.

As soon as it was morning, we looked about us for our horses, but found that they were vanished, which did not a little add to our concern, situated as we were in a desert, where our fate was uncertain. After having searched the valley all around, we went up upon the heights, and behind these we at last found our horses, which without doubt were upon the point of going farther, to look out for better fodder. Having saddled them, we directed our course obliquely towards the mountains, where we arrived towards evening, at the house of a farmer, who was so poor as scarcely to be master of any thing more than the roof over his head.

Here we took up our night's lodging, and afterwards made our way to *Hartequas-kloof*, where we met with our people and our carts.

Near *Hartequas-kloof*, a new range or ridge of mountains commences, which joins the former, the cleft serving as a band of connexion between them,

them. So that the Carrow-veld can be seen behind the first ridge, when one rides into the cleft through the next range of mountains near *Groote Paardekraal*.

It is not long since that this whole tract of land from Hartequas-kloof down to Camtous-rivier, which is now filled with settlements, was first peopled; and twenty-three years ago there was not a single farm, when, in the year seventeen hundred and fifty, Governor TULBAGH sent a caravan out to this coast, with a view to gain certain intelligence with respect to the country and its inhabitants. TULBAGH, who still lives in the grateful hearts of the inhabitants of the Cape, was a governor, who considered that he was raised to the elevated station he enjoyed under government, and appointed to be ruler over an extensive country, not merely to live in luxury, pamper his pride, and accumulate riches, but to unite with the company's lawful interests the happiness of the colonists, and the advancement and welfare of the colony. This gentleman was also anxious to have the country by degrees farther explored; for which purpose, in the year seventeen hundred and fifty, he fitted out a caravan, consisting of one hundred and fifty soldiers from the castle, and two burghers, of which an officer of the name of BEUTELAAR was appointed the commander. With these were sent, at the Company's expence, eleven waggons, a great number of

of draught-oxen, and of others for killing, and a considerable quantity of ammunition and provision. The expedition was to be made into the country of the Caffres, and afterwards up towards that of the Tambukkis, and then back again, through the Snow-mountains and Camdebo; but, on account of the haughtiness and stupidity of the commander, little was done in the business, for which reason, on his return home, he was sent away out of the country; a punishment he richly deserved. He was a strict and rigorous commander, and punished with severity. He likewise beat the drum all the way, inso-much that all the game that was to have been shot scared away, particularly by the two farmers who went in his suite; and his people at length grew extremely mutinous. When he encamped any where at night, the waggons were all placed in a ring, within which the cattle and other animals were put, and the tents also pitched. At last, when he arrived at the country of the Caffres, he gave the Caffre captain, Paloo, a grenadier's cap, and another to his brother, which is said to have excited a war amongst the Caffres. The only thing he did for the benefit of the Company was, that in the harbour near Zwartkops river he set up the Company's arms, cut in stone. This journey lasted eight months. At that time there was not a single farm on the other  
side.

side of Hartequas-kloof; but the roads were so unknown and unbeaten, that the waggons were often obliged to be dragged, by the people to whom they belonged, across the most difficult places.

Being come from Hartequas-kloof to *Gouds-rivier*, we staid a day there in order to rest our cattle, which besides were so grievously afflicted with the hoof distemper, that my companion was obliged to leave one of his oxen behind here, which could get no farther. Here too the weather was amazingly warm, warmer indeed than I have ever felt it, either before or since, insomuch that the farmers shut both the doors and window-shutters, in order to keep the sun out, and their houses cool. The birds could scarcely fly, and the air was almost too hot to be breathed. The heat was without doubt several degrees above 100 by FAHRENHEIT's thermometer.

The following days, continuing our route, we arrived at *Riet-valley*, one of the Company's posts, where we remained a few days to rest ourselves, and particularly for the sake of paying another visit to Groote Vader's bosch, (or *Grand-father's-wood*) and seeing if the different kinds of trees there were come into blossom, as we had already got pretty far into January, and consequently the summer was farther advanced than it had been at any time before, when we had visited this wood.

On the 14th of January accordingly, we went thither, but were not more successful now than we had been before with respect to finding the trees in blossom, much less with fruit on them; some of them, however, were on the point of budding.

Here were, at this time, for the Company's account, two wood-men, who, after felling the trees, dragged them to such spots from whence they might be taken up and put into waggon. The trees were chiefly got out of the wood by oxen, by means of a cord fastened round the body of the tree; as no vehicle of any kind could possibly be used there.

As I had no hopes of ever visiting this place again, I made a point now of collecting and laying up to dry branches with leaves of every species of tree, and at the same time of becoming perfectly acquainted with the use they made in this country of each species.

The uses of the different sorts of trees that grew in and round about the wood, were as follows:

Black iron wood, (*Zwarte Yzerhout*, *Gardenia Rothmannia*) is hard and strong: it is used for axle-trees and the poles of waggon.

Yellow wood (*Geelhout*, *Nex crocea*) is of a yellow colour, almost like box, of a close texture, and handsome. It is used for planks and beams in the construction of houses, for tables, doors, cupboards, window-frames, and butter-churns:

Camassie

Camassie wood (*Camassie-hout*), is merely a shrub, and consequently produces small pieces only, which serve for veneering, and to form borders on furniture, as likewise for making planes and other fine and delicate tools. This is one of the finest and heaviest kinds of wood.

The wood of the Red-pear-tree (*Roope peer*) is used for making the bodies, under and upper axle-trees, and the lower parts of waggons.

The Bucku-tree (*Bucku-beut, Olea Capensis*) is the best wood for making wheels and waggons.

The Red alder (*Roope Else, Cunonia capensis*) is likewise very proper for making waggon-wheels, the naves of wheels and chairs.

The Ath (*Essenbout, Effenboom, Houtniquas Effen, Ekebergia capensis*) is a large tree, hard, and of a close texture, and is used for making tools and implements of various kinds.

Of the *Stinkhout* there are two sorts, the white and the brown. The brown is very beautiful, being of a dark colour with bright streaks and dashes, much like walnut-tree. Of this are made clothes-presses, desks, chairs, tables, and other costly kinds of furniture. When it is first cut down it stinks, a circumstance from which it has obtained its present name; but, in process of time, when it has been exposed to the open air, the disagreeable odour vanishes.

The

The wood of the Olive tree, (*Olyve hout*, *Olea Europæa*) is very heavy, and of a brown colour. I have often seen at the farmers' houses chairs made of this wood, which felt very heavy in the hand. This strong wood is also used in the construction of mills.

Wild Catjepiring (*Gardenia Thunbergia*) is a hard and strong kind of wood, and on this account used for clubs.

*Witte Essen* (or white ash) is used for planks, for waggon-racks, and for the boards in waggons, for boards for shoe-makers to cut leather on, and sometimes for cupboards.

Zwart-bast (*Royena villosa*) is used for the bodies of waggons, and to make yokes for draught-oxen.

Keurhout (*Sophora capensis*) is used for wheels and the bodies of waggons.

The Almond tree, (*Amandelhout*) is used for the heels of shoes, and for shoe-maker's lasts.

The *Affagay tree* (*Affagay boom*, *Curtisia faginea*) is used for the poles of waggons, and as shafts for the Hottentots' javelins.

Dorn-hout (*Mimosa nilotica*) is used for *Lock-shoes*, to put under waggon wheels, as likewise for the bows of yokes for draught oxen, and for making charcoal.

The Waageboom (*Protea grandiflora*) for fuel and making charcoal.

The



The Kreupelboom (*Protea speciosa*). The bark is used by tanners for dressing and tanning leather.

The Leepelboom is made into spoons and wooden bowls.

The largest trees in the African woods, as well in this as in others, were the following: the Geelhout (*Ilex crocea*), the Bucku (*Olea capensis*), the Tarchonarithus camphoratus, and arbo-reus, the Roode-else (*Canonia capensis*) and the Wite-else, the Stinkhout, the Assagayhout (*Cur-tisia*) the wild Chesnut (*wilde Castanien, brabe-jum stellatum*) the wild Fig tree (*wilde Vygeboom, Ficus capensis*) the Keureboom (*Sephora capensis*) the Mimosa nilotica and the Esse-boom (*Eke-bergia capensis*).

On the hills grew the *Ornithogalum altissimum*, which was now in full blossom, and decorated the plain with its long and crowded spikes of flowers. It was said to be very common every fourth year, and, in the intervening years, hardly to be seen.

On the 18th we passed through Zwellendam to STEINS farm.

On the 19th we crossed over at the ferry, where Breede-rivier and Zonder-end unite, and then went over *Hessaquas kloof*, and past GYLLENHUYSEN'S estate to VOLLENHOVENS. At Breede-rivier, where the river Zonder-end unites with it, ends that mountain which stretches out

out from *Rode Zand*, and directly opposite this place the *Zwellendam* mountains form an angle.

On the 20th, proceeding on our route, we went past *MELK's* farm to the Company's post at *Tigerhoek*, where not only a great number of cows are kept for making butter on the Company's account, but likewise in the adjacent woods a quantity of timber is felled for making all kinds of implements for the Company's own use.

The workmen are at liberty to cut down and fell some wood and timber, by way of assisting to support them, but no husbandman is suffered to fell any here. In *Houtniquas* and other woods indeed, the husbandman is at liberty to cut timber, but in some places, not without the special permission of government, and paying a contribution of five rix-dollars.

In this tract resided the Blue goat, as it is called, (*Blauwe bok*, *Tseiran*, *Capra leucophaea*); which is one of the scarcest in the whole country: it is white, intermixed with black hairs. The blue goat is said to be very neglectful of her young, insomuch that they are often devoured by wild beasts; and this is the reason that is given for its being so scarce. Its flesh had a better taste than that of the other species of goats.

Here were also a great many Zebras or striped horses (*Equus zebra*). There is a penalty of fifty rix-dollars on shooting one of these animals; and if any one can be caught alive, it is to be sent to the governor. The old ones are hardly ever to be caught, and are never tamed. The young ones seldom live, and although seemingly tame, are by no means to be trusted.

After this passing by JURJIN LINDE's farm, we arrived at a post of the Company's, near *Zoete-melks valley*, where twenty-four men and a sergeant are kept for the sole purpose of felling timber in the adjacent woods. From this place the Company receives the greatest part of its ship and common timber, of which three large waggon-loads are sent every month up to the Cape. The labourers here also are permitted to cut a reasonable quantity, and sell it on their own account. The large pieces of timber, such as beams, &c. are dragged out of the wood by oxen, and, it must be confessed, not without the greatest difficulty.

To the smaller pieces, such as wedges, handles for axes, gun-stocks, wheel-timber, axle-trees, &c. the form is given before they are carried out of the wood. When a very large tree is felled, it is left for some time to split of itself; then it is cloven and cut up.

On the 1st of April 1792, we arrived at the Cape. Here

Here I had an opportunity of seeing how they prepared the wheat-straw used for thatching. The sheaves with the ears on were struck against a block, till the grain run out and the ears dropped off. The business goes on much slower in this method of thrashing than when the corn is trodden out by horses; but the straw is preserved whole by it and even.

On the 24th, we passed by the *Ziekenhuys* (or hospital) a small post of the Company's, which is subject to the former post near Zoete Melks valley, and in which there are only two men, and went forward to GROENEWAL'S farm, and afterwards to GYLLENHUYSEN'S near *Zwart-rivier*, (the Black-river). The Black-mountains which commenced near GROENEWAL'S farm, came to a termination here. They were not very high.

On the 25th we travelled on to BADENHORST'S and BAYER'S estates, near *Booter-rivier*.

Here I shot a cat spotted with black (*Viverra*); the skin smelled so strong of musk, that when it was hung up in the cart to dry, I could not endure the stench of it. It is in consequence of this strong smell that the animal is not easily caught by the dogs.

The ridge of mountains which we had seen terminate near Hessaquas kloof, began at the side of Kleine Houthoek, behind Fransche-hoek. Within the mountains of Groot Hout-hoek,

a ridge was also seen to shoot out, along the sea-shore, which went almost as far as Muscle-bay. Within this last, another ridge projects, which comes to a termination between GYLLENHUYSEN'S and GROENEWAL'S farms, and, directly opposite to BADENHORST'S farm, has a high peak, called the *Tower of Babel*. These two ridges are not united with the other mountains, but leave an open space, near Booter-rivier.

On the 26th, passing over *Grootehout-boek*, *Palmit's* and *Steenbrasemey rivers*, we arrived at the *Hottentot's Holland* mountain, on which there are several farms.

Baboons, a sort of large and ill conditioned monkies, with tails no longer than their thighs, are found in these mountains. This animal is long a growing, and, when full grown, is almost as large as a blood-hound; at this period, it should not be kept tied up with a string only; for, without an iron chain, it bites every thing asunder. Several dogs together, indeed, may catch a baboon, but one or two seldom can; because if the baboon, which is surprisngly quick and nimble, gets hold of the dog by the hind feet, he swings it round, till the dog is quite giddy, and as it were drunk. With his large teeth he bites violently, and defends himself obstinately.

Finally, we went down the mountain, over its steep hills, and then over the level plain to the Cape.

---

THE CAPE, 1774.

---

BEING arrived in town so late in the year, after a journey of five months, I was obliged to use dispatch, in order that I might be able to embrace the opportunity of sending, in the beginning of this year, 1774, to the Botanic gardens of Amsterdam, Leyden, and Leeuwarden, by the homeward-bound ships sailing for Europe, a considerable quantity of bulbous roots, herbs, seeds and growing plants; and also, to my other patrons, a great number of bulbous roots, seeds, insects, stuffed birds, and other scarce animals.

The four first months in the year are the most busy at the Cape, when the Dutch ships, as well as those that belong to foreign nations, return from the East Indies, and others arrive from Europe; so that there are at this time about twenty or thirty ships in the road. The first Dutch homeward-bound fleet too now lay ready, and I had an opportunity of sending part of my collections by it; and the remainder afterwards, as fast as they were ready, by the ships that sailed later.

A ship from Holland, the *Bekvliet*, arrived

here, after a long and unfortunate voyage. Through the captain's neglect and ignorance, the ship had got so much under the African coast as to lose its proper winds, and to be obliged to make *Angola*, after first making *Waalvisch* bay, with only nine men in health on board. During this long voyage the fever had raged among the crew, which was said to have been very generally as well as plentifully blood, so that the greatest part of it had died. Complaint was made both against the surgeon and the captain for not having understood their business. The former died on the passage, and the latter received the punishment he richly deserved. The sick had not only been supplied with improper medicines, but also, in other respects been treated with great negligence. One morning four men were reported as dead; one of whom, just as they were going to sew him up in his hammock, was found alive by the sail-maker, although he soon after breathed his last. Another morning five men had been reported dead, all of them had been sewed up in their hammocks, and two had already been thrown overboard, when the third, the instant he was put on the plank, called out, '*Master Boatswain, I am alive still!*' to which the Boatswain, with unseasonable jocularly, replied, '*You alive, indeed! what, do you pretend to know better than the surgeon?*'

For every sick man sent to the hospital the captain pays two skellings, and he keeps back, in return, the man's allowance on board.

The building of the new hospital was not very far advanced this summer, neither indeed could the work go on very fast. Of ninety men who were allotted for this purpose, few were at work, and a great part of them were on furlough, or were set upon other work on the hospital's account.

Besides a handsome house, built in the Company's garden in town, the governor has also one at *Rondebosch*, and another at *Nieuwland*, both out of town, to which he may retire at pleasure, and unbend his mind when oppressed with the cares of state. Another such house was now to be built likewise for his accommodation at *Beay-fals*.

The Company has very fine gardens both at *Rondebosch* and *Nieuwland*, from whence the ships and the hospital are supplied with vegetables.

Since the Governor VAN DER STELL, in the beginning of this century, had appropriated to himself a considerable portion, and that the best, of the land; and the same had been done by several of the Company's servants, to the great prejudice of the burghers and colonists, they lie under a strict prohibition against holding any farms. In lieu thereof, after being obliged to



dispose of their farms, several perquisites have been allowed them; such as, to the dispencier or purveyor, five per cent. upon imported, and the same on exported, wares; as likewise upon grain, butter, &c. The collector has two and a half per cent. on the monies, the store-keeper four, the commissary of the hospital five, the inspector of the auctions five per cent. on all goods and merchandize sold by auction; and all this, besides their usual monthly salary. So that it is only some few of the higher people in office that have a small villa for their pleasure near the Cape, but, from whence, no commodities must be carried out and disposed of.

The ships that arrived here, brought the news that Baron VAN PLETTENBERG had been nominated Governor of the Cape and the Colony, and had been shortly after installed in his office.

The governor, together with seven counsellors of police, has the supreme direction and command, as well with respect to the Company's traffic here, as also to the whole œconomy of the colony, without being subject to the government of Batavia, which have otherwise the supreme command over all the factories in India.

All criminal causes come under the cognizance and jurisdiction of the grand court of justice. In this the commandant of the garrison presides, and the governor has nothing to do

do with it, excepting merely to sign his name to death-warrants.

Finally, there are two other courts of judicature in the colony. One of these is at Stellenbosch, to which four parishes are subject, with their churches, viz. Stellenbosch, Drakenstein, Zwartland, and Roode Zand; the other is at Zwelldam, and comprehends one very large and extensive parish, which, however, has not yet been provided either with a church or minister.

The Cape of Good Hope, although it was first discovered by the Portuguese above three hundred years ago, was frequented by them for the space of one hundred years and upwards, and, afterwards, by the Dutch East India Company's ships for more than half a century, before possession was taken of any part of the country, or any cultivation was bestowed upon it, so that the colony is not above a hundred and twenty years old; for, in the year 1650, when the Dutch ships, on their return from the Indies, touched here and took in refreshments, for which they bartered with the Hottentots, the country was, for the first time, surveyed with any degree of attention, by a surgeon of the name of JAN VAN RIEBEEK, who belonged to the fleet, and had some knowledge of botany; and as he found both the climate and the

the soil adapted to the cultivation of culinary vegetables and fruit trees, on his return home he proposed to the directors to establish a colony here.

On mature deliberation the proposal was agreed to, and JAN VAN RIEBEEK was sent out as admiral and commander in chief, with four ships, which were stored with materials for building, carpenters, and seeds of all kinds. On his arrival at the Cape, he treated with the Hottentots for the purchase of a piece of ground, on which was erected a fortress, storehouse, and hospital; and, at the same time, the first foundations were laid of this great and flourishing colony, which does more honour to mankind than all the victories of ALEXANDER the Great, and much more than all the important conquests the Dutch arms have been able to make in every other part of the world.

The sum for which the first piece of land was purchased, is very differently reported, as well as the quantity of the land itself. The first purchase sum is said to have amounted to 50,000 guilders in wares, and by another purchase to have been augmented with 30,000 guilders more; which, although it may actually be so great in the Company's books, yet it seems to me absolutely incredible, that the Hottentots should ever have received the major part

part of it. The last purchase is said to have extended as far as Mosselbaay, but this is the less true, or even probable, as during the time that VAN RIEBEEK was governor of the Cape, as he afterwards was; his farthest discoveries reached only to that mountain, which is called after him, *Riebeek's castle*, and stands at a good distance within the long range of mountains. In my opinion, the land purchased at first was no more than that tract of country which lies between Table-mountain and Zout-rivier, from whence the colony has since been continually more and more extended in the same manner as it is now daily enlarged and augmented. The citadel was at first built of wood and earth; and it was not till the year 1664, that, together with its fortifications, it was built of stone. Near Zout-rivier, (*Salt-rivier*) a small fort, called (*Keer de koe*) *Turn the cow*, was also erected for the purpose of protecting the Company's cattle that grazed in the field, which it commanded; and to hinder them either from going across the river to the Hottentot's lands, or from being stolen by the natives of the place. With this view, therefore; near the fort a stable was built for fifty horses, with which the Hottentots, who were very swift of foot, and disappeared in an instant, might be pursued with all possible speed. This, together with a farm near Constantia, laid out by VAN RIEBEEK, was without doubt the first and inconsiderable

siderable commencement of this settlement. This infant establishment was probably not meant to extend so far as it has done since, but was intended only for the cultivation of such articles as were necessary for supplying the shipping that arrived there with refreshments. But, on a closer examination of the climate, the fertility of the soil, and the weakness of the natives, it was resolved to extend the settlement, and several Europeans were persuaded to emigrate and settle here, and to cultivate a considerable tract of land, which was granted to them and their heirs for ever. Shortly after this marriageable girls were sent out from the orphan-houses, for the purpose of still more increasing the colony; the inhabitants of which got at first, on trust, implements that were necessary for the cultivation of the land, and spread themselves out to Stellenbosch and Drakenstein, (where the French Protestant refugees in particular strengthened the settlement) and afterwards on the other side of the mountains to Roode Zand. The whole of Zwartland was afterwards peopled, though a sandy and more meagre soil. In fine, within these last 30 years the colony has increased to such a degree, and with such rapidity, that not only the country from Roode Zand and Hottentot's Holland mountains, has been occupied and inhabited as far as Zwellendam, but also as far as Mosselbaay, Houtniquas,

Houtniquas, Lange-kloof, Kromme-river, and all the way to Camtous-rivier, the Bokke-and Rogge-velds, Camdebo, and the Snow-mountains.

The colony of the Cape takes in the town with its parish and church, Paarl with its parish and church, the Tyger-mountains, &c. and extends as far as Mosselbanks-rivier and Baay-fals.

The colony of Stellenbosch was founded by the governor SIMON VANDER STEEL, in 1670, like a cottage, and provided with a court-house and church, at the distance of eight miles from the Cape. It extends from the Tyger-mountains to Hottentot's Holland, and nearly to Baay-fals, and, at the northern end, to Paarl and Mosselbank.

Drakenstein was founded in 1670, with a very small church, and stands so close to Stellenbosch, that it might with great propriety be subject to it. And indeed this was considered as a separate colony, more out of compliment than necessity.

The Company paid only four skellings for a live sheep, and the Burghers in the town paid one skelling (rather more than six-pence English) for twelve pounds of mutton.

A great many officers belonging to the ships lodged in the same house with me. A mate paid less per diem than a captain, as his pay was less, although he was equally well lodged, and equally free

free from restraint, and had the same table and attendance; and this regulation appeared to me in many respects as equitable as it was handsome and delicate.

Charcoal is a very dear article at the Cape, and is generally carried thither from Europe. For a chaldron of charcoal, which ought to contain thirty-six schepels, (or bushels) of which, however, only thirty-two are delivered out to the purchaser, the blacksmiths pay eighteen rix-dollars, and eight rix-dollars for one hundred weight of iron.

Bulbous plants, in all probability, repose at times, or they are not seen every year in equal quantities. In some places one sees them in one year in great abundance, and another year scarcely any.

When a slave plays any knavish trick, or does mischief to any of the neighbours, the farmer who owns him is generally obliged to make good the damage, and frequently to pay one half of the value of the slave, though at the same time the slave likewise may chance to undergo corporal punishment for it.

When an inferior servant of the Company trespasses, he usually undergoes corporal punishment; but a burgher is fined. The former contributes to the reformation of manners, and the latter to lining the Fiscal's pockets.

The

The laws respecting marriage at the Cape differ in many respects from those that are in force at other places; and divorces frequently happen here, attended with singular circumstances. The wife of one SARDYN, who had been a soldier seventeen years, and at this time kept a public house and a dancing house for the reception of the common people, was proved in court, by the evidence of two witnesses, to have had a criminal connexion with a drummer. The prosecutor was allowed, it is true, to part with his wife, but then she was exempted from all farther punishment; while he, on the contrary, was flogged and sent to Batavia, without being suffered to receive the least benefit from his property.

A certain hatter in the town, who was a bachelor, had got two of his slaves with child. For the child he had by one of them, he, in quality of its father, demanded baptism, and accordingly this was baptized, and consequently free, while the other girl's child remained unbaptized and a slave.

The winter of this year, in the months of June, July, and August, was very cold, with a great deal of rain; and on the 6th of July particularly, both the Devil's-mountain and Table-mountain were covered with snow and hail. In several places, the vines, as well as many vegetables



getables in the kitchen gardens, had been killed or greatly damaged by the frost.

In the Company's garden there was a very beautiful covered walk, formed of chefnut-trees, which were now very thick and large. It was this year cut down root and branch by order of the governor, for the purpose of making different kinds of furniture of its elegant wood; and in its stead were planted oaks, which, however, are as little likely to restore the beauty of the garden, as those curious animals are to return thither, which the highly respectable Governor TULBAGH had taken pains to collect together there, from the interior parts of Africa; but which, after his death, were turned out by his successor to become a prey to ravenous beasts.

The fruit of a species of *Mesembryanthemum* was sometimes brought to the town as a rarity, and was called *Rosa de Jericho*. When it is put into water, it gradually opens all its seed-vessels, and exactly resembles a sun; and when it becomes dry again, it contracts itself and closes by degrees. This is no less a necessary than singular property, which points out the admirable institution of an all-wise Creator; in as much as this plant, which is found in the most arid plains, keeps its seeds fast locked up in time of drought; but when the rainy season comes, and the seeds  
can

can grow, it opens its receptacles, and lets fall the seeds, in order that they may be dispersed abroad. The water in which this fruit has lain is sometimes given to women that are near their time, and is thought to procure them an easy delivery.

Ordinary public houses are much more rarely to be met with here than they are in Europe, and taverns still more so, as every body has a quantity of wine in his own house, sufficient for himself and his friends. Some there are however for the lower class of people, though very different from those which abound so much in our more refined quarter of the globe; being designed not so much for drinking and tipping, of which drunkenness, noise, and riotous disorder are the frequent concomitants, as for mere diversion and recreation. The inferior kinds of public houses therefore are at the same time dancing houses, where every evening musicians are to be found, and the guests, by paying for their wine only (but at a very dear rate) have an opportunity of dancing. No card playing is suffered, and the dancing is over at a certain hour in the night, when every one goes quietly home, without making a noise or affrighting others, which would not be easily tolerated by the night-watch, nor go unpunished by the government.

At my leisure hours I never neglected to visit the hills, mountains, and fields, near the town. For the purpose of carrying a book and other things necessary for putting up my seeds and plants, I usually took with me a hired slave. This year, through the kindness of the surgeon, I got a man out of the hospital to carry my apparatus, who had been brought by a singular destiny to this southernmost point of Africa. He was born in Germany, and, for the sake of trafficking, had travelled much, and had lived for some time in Holland, France, and England, where he resided last, and carried on a small trade in certain drugs, and some chemical preparations. In the course of this business, having embarked for France, the ship was driven by a storm towards the coast of Holland, where it was wrecked, and he lost all his little property. On getting a-shore, he sold his knee-buckles, and, with the trifling viaticum produced by them, set out for Amsterdam, where he met with an old acquaintance, who offered him his assistance; and, under the pretext of procuring him a lodging, took him to a kidnapper's. Here his friend called for brandy, victuals, and wine, of which they both partook. At length, when he and his friend parted, he observed that the landlord gave the latter two ducats. Immediately upon this he himself was prevented from going

going out; he then found, to his cost, that he was kidnapped; and, being no stranger to the Dutch language, threatened the kidnapper to lodge a complaint against him, if he did not instantly set him at liberty. The kidnapper then began to make some inquiries about his residence, means of support, &c. and, as he could not pay his reckoning, absolutely refused to let him go. When mustered on board of ship, whither he had been carried, without having been previously taken to the East-India house and received there, he complained to the director; but, as the poor fellow could not possibly pay for what the kidnapper had received of the Company to fit him out, he was obliged, nolens volens, to sail for the Cape, where he arrived sick and was taken to the hospital. This poor man accompanied me twice in my excursions; but soon regained his liberty by running away, and getting on board of one of the English ships that lay in the road.

Pomegranates grew in several of the gardens, but were not exposed to sale, nor much eaten in the town. But chestnuts (*Æsculus pavia*) were sold here in plenty, and eaten by way of dessert, roasted, with a little butter.

By the ships that arrived from Europe, I had not only the pleasure to receive letters from my patrons in Amsterdam, intimating their satis-

faction at what I had sent them, but also received a considerable sum in ducats, for the purpose of paying off part of the debt I had contracted during the two last years.

There had arrived from England, in order to proceed to Bengal, Lady Ann Monson, who had undertaken this long and tedious voyage, not only for the purpose of accompanying her husband, who went out as colonel of the regiment in the East Indies; but also with a view to indulge her passion for natural history. This learned lady, during the time she staid here, made several very fine collections, and particularly in the animal kingdom. And, as I had frequently had the pleasure, together with Mr. Mason, of accompanying her to the adjacent farms, and; at the same time, of contributing greatly to the enlargement of her collections, she had the goodness, before her departure, to make me a present of a valuable ring, in remembrance of her, and of the friendship with which she had honoured me. She was a lady about sixty years of age, who, amongst other languages, had also some knowledge of the Latin, and had, at her own expence, brought with her a draughtsman, in order to assist her in collecting and delineating scarce specimens of natural history.

The

The government at the Cape had resolved to send, this year, a vessel called a *Hoeker*, to Madagascar, to barter for slaves; and the Governor Baron VAN PLETTENBERG had the kindness to offer to send me out as surgeon to the ship. But although I had much wished to visit so large and remarkable an island, still my inclination to see the northern part of Africa was much more prevalent. I therefore begged to be excused from making this voyage; and recommended a friend and countryman of mine, Mr. OLDENBURG, who had been practising botany for the space of two years that he had accompanied me in my excursions, to go as surgeon's mate. My recommendation was taken; and Mr. OLDENBURG even made several collections of plants; but did not live to return from so unwholesome and scorching a climate.

This winter Alderman BERG shewed me a very curious Fungus (*Hydnora*) which had been sent to him, as a great rarity, by a farmer, from the interior part of the country. This fungus, which was called *Jackall's kost* (or Jackall's food) being, on examination, found to be, with respect to the parts of fructification, the most extraordinary plant of any hitherto known, confirmed my resolution of visiting the northern parts of the Cape; and excited in me a

with to examine this fungus, with several other plants, in their native soil, however arid and barren.

I fitted myself out as in the preceding year, in the month of September, and again had Mr. MASON, the English gardener, for my fellow-traveller, although he was not much inclined to make any long excursion this year.

### JOURNEY TO ROGGEVELD.

ON the 29th of September, 1774, I set out with my fellow-traveller, on my third journey to the interior part of Africa. After crossing Zout-rivier and Mosselbank's rivier, we arrived at Vischershoek, a corn-farm of the Company's, occupied by the Governor. This year eighty barrels of seed had been sown.

The stranguary raged amongst the cattle here, and was occasioned by the *Euphorbia genistoides*. As a sovereign remedy for this distemper,

distemper, the farmers gave the cattle a tea-cup full of powdered ostfish egg shells mixed with vinegar. The resinous clot of Euphorbia, which stuck fast in the urethra, was sometimes extracted, when it appeared quite white, and about half a finger in length.

On the 30th, we rode past ENGELHAK's farm to MATH. GREEP's, near Mosselbank's river. In these low sandy plains, and in the dwarf-bushes upon them, there were hares in abundance, insomuch that one might shoot as many as one chose; but no body set any value upon this kind of game, the flesh of which had so dry a taste.

Here I heard much talk of a Hottentot *Water-melon*, which is said to be a large and succulent root, called *Kou*, by the Hottentots, who grind it down to meal, and bake it like bread.

On the 2d of October, we crossed Mosselbank's river to JURGEN KUTSE's, and from thence proceeded to ABRAHAM BOSMAN's, near Paarl's-berg.

Paarl Mountain is neither very high nor of great extent in length, but it abounds in water, so as amply to supply the farms that lie on each side, and a large mill situated at the foot of it.

The church stands on the east side of the mountain.

The farmers here chiefly cultivated vines, the stocks of which are often of fifty year's



growth, and produce a delicious and full-bodied wine. Wheat was not much cultivated here, and the quantity of culinary vegetables was but small, as was also the number of the cattle.

Here we staid a couple of days in order to investigate the mountains with due care and accuracy. Having arrived at the top from the eastern side, we observed a place called the Company's Cellar (*Kelder*). This consisted of a somewhat concave and large rock, which had fallen over another rock inclining towards it. These two rocks together formed an arched cellar, as it were, open at both ends, and possessing an agreeable coolness.

The Paarl diamonds were two very large, bare, steep, and almost conic, mountains, the foot of which was so wide at bottom, that it required an hour to walk round it.

On the 5th, we proceeded to HANNES VAN AARDE's, near *Paardeberg*, which is a little higher than Paarl mountain; this stands separate, and has taken its name from the wild Cape Horses (or *Zebnas*) which formerly were to be seen here in great numbers. At this time there was only a dozen of these beautiful animals, and these were protected by government, and were far from being shy.

On the 7th, we passed on to LOSPER's estate, and

On

On the 8th, passing by PETER LOSPER's and JOHANNES WALTHER's farm, we came to DREYER's estate, near *Riebeeck castle*, a large mountain, so named after VAN RIEBEEK, the founder and first governor of this colony. The mountain was very high, and its sides were steep.

My fellow traveller and I, one day, climbed up to the high tops of this mountain, whilst our oxen, which we had ordered to be taken off from the waggons, kept grazing at the side of it. We were obliged to make almost the whole circle of the mountain before we could get to the peak we wished to ascend. When arrived upon this summit, we perceived our waggons standing at the foot of the mountain; but saw, at the same time, that we were separated from them by such steep precipices on this side, that it appeared to us impossible to reach them, without returning by the same way that we had come, which was nearly three miles about. However, whilst we were searching here after some curious plants, and laying them up in our books, I stumbled upon a very near, but, at the same time, dangerous way, to get to the other side of the mountain's perpendicular flanks. This was a chink of a few fathoms length, and so narrow as to be capable of admitting a middle-sized man only. Through this I ventured

crawl on my hands and feet, and was fortunate enough to get safe over to the other side, from whence it was only the distance of a musquet-shot to our waggon. My fellow-traveller, together with his dog, stood astonished at my adventurous exploit, the one howling, and the other almost crying; and, at the same time, vexed to think that he should be obliged to go along a long way round about, without once daring to take the direct path. My courage was rewarded with a small plant which I got in the chinks, and which I afterwards sought in vain in other places.

On the 11th, we came to *Vliermuys drift* and ferry, after having passed *LOMBART'S* and *OWERHOLSEN'S* estates, and *Honingberg*, which is a low mountain, and of a small extent.

On the 12th, we arrived at *WILHELM BURGER'S* grazing farm, near *Matje's drift* and river, where our waggon and cart were conveyed over by boats, and the oxen swam across.

On the 13th, I observed a rainbow, which was extremely pale, with the dullest colours imaginable, being formed merely out of a rising fog.

On the 14th, we arrived at *HANNERGAMP'S* farm, near *Picquet-berg*, which here stretched N. and S. but on the eastern side, to the northward, had several bendings, the ridges of which

ran S. E. and N. W. Towards the northern end, the mountain goes up almost to the long chain of mountains, from whence a point projects, forming a new range of mountains, the ridges of which run on to the sea-shore. From this it should seem, as if Picquet-mountain had a different direction from all other mountains; but it is only on the eastern side that such a ridge runs, and, at the northern end, the mountain is continued farther, and runs a great way out to the S. E. and N. W. This mountain is higher than Riebeeck Castle, and, in the east and north, has a great many steep and inaccessible rocks, with flat and level surfaces at top.

Here grew a shrub called Zand-olys (*Dodonaea angustifolia*), the wood of which was of a hard nature. This was dried, and a decoction of it was drank in fevers, by way of a purgative.

Tygers infested the bushes in these sandy plains; and I saw several persons that had been bitten by them, though nobody had been killed. I was assured by many people, that a tyger preferred a wild goat to a sheep. The tyger is supposed to be more treacherous, and less magnanimous, than the lion. He seldom fails to rush upon a man who passes the thicket where he lies concealed; and it is impossible for him to hear the cry of *sa, sa*, without attacking

tacking the person that utters the sound. I was told of a slave in Madagascar, who having stepped behind a thicket to ease nature, was attacked by a tyger, and wounded so severely that he fainted away through loss of blood; but, seizing the tyger at the same time by the throat, quite stifled him, so that the tyger was found dead, and the slave near him in a swoon. The Cape tyger is small, and about the size of a dog.

Elephants were formerly very numerous in these parts; but, at present, they are quite extirpated. The best method to escape from these large beasts, whose height sometimes reaches to eighteen feet, is either to fly to the water, or to get into some fissure of a rock.

Near *Picquet-mountain* we, for the first time, discovered and shot a dove (*Rooede Turtelduyv*, *Columba Senegalensis*). This bird is generally found farther up the country, and is said not to have been seen so high up towards the Cape till within the last seven years.

The *Stapelia incarnata*, a very branchy plant without leaves, was found in the vicinity of the mountains, though it was rather scarce; the Hottentots ate it, after peeling off the edges and prickles.

*Vogel-valley* was a kind of swamp, which lay at the foot of the mountain opposite *Paarl*, and was frequented by sea-fowls and snipes.

All the roads here were sandy and heavy, like those about Saldahna-bay.

Near Picquet-berg to the northward, stood *Captain Kloof's mountain*, and within this, farther to the northward, *Drie Fonteins-berg*; and then *Babians-berg*, or the Baboons mountain, which, with its several different heads, stretched on to the sea-shore.

Travelling farther on we came to CARRELSPECK's farm, situated under Picquet Mountain; from thence to GERDT SMIDT's, and afterwards to DIRK KUTSE's, where *Verlooren-valley* has its origin, and springs from a mountain belonging to the long chain of mountains; and, finally, to AND. GREEF's.

The estates in this tract are embellished with vineyards, corn-fields, and beautiful gardens.

Here I met with a lemon, which contained another within it, furnished with a red rind. Neither of these two lemons had any seed, and the rind of the inner lemon was said to have even a four taste.

Here I also saw a goose's egg, which contained another egg inclosed within it. The external egg had a yolk, but the inner none.

Ostriches abound in all these parts. They frequently do great damage to the farmers, by coming in flocks into their fields, and destroying the ears of wheat, so that nothing but the bare

bare straw itself is left behind. The body of this bird is not higher than the corn, and when it devours the ears, it bends down its long neck, so that it cannot be seen at a distance; but, on the least noise, it rears its head and long neck, and can thus foresee its danger in time, and make its escape, before the farmer gets within gun-shot of it.

When this bird runs it has a proud and haughty look, and seems not to make much haste, although it be in great distress, especially if the wind is with it; and when the wind blows a little, it flaps with its wings, which greatly assists it in its flight. It is then impossible to overtake it with the swiftest horse, except when the weather is exceedingly warm and at the same time calm, or when its wings have been shot off.

One morning, as I rode past a place where a hen ostrich sat on her nest, the bird sprang up and pursued me, with a view to prevent my noticing her young ones, or her eggs. Every time I turned my horse towards her, she retreated ten or twelve paces; but as soon as I rode on she pursued me again.

The farmers here likewise informed me, that a stone or two is sometimes found in the ostrich's eggs; which is hard, white, rather flat and smooth, and about the size of a bean. These stones are cut  
and

and made into buttons, but I never had the good fortune to see any of them.

Partridges (*Tetrao*) abound here and in many other parts of the country. They did not immediately take wing when we rode full trot after them, but they ran so swift along the road that we could hardly keep pace with them; at length they took flight side-ways, with loud and violent screams.

*Ferlooren-valley* is the name given to a rivulet that derives its source from the above-mentioned range of mountains, and empties itself into the sea. Its banks are in many places over-grown with reeds and rushes (*Carex*, *Arundo*), which sometimes shoot up to the height of several yards, insomuch that the rivulet, in such places, cannot be seen. In these impenetrable recesses an innumerable multitude of birds have their haunts and places of refuge, such as different sorts of herons (*Ardea major* and *Cerulea*), Ducks (*Anates*), and Coots (*Fulicæ*). In some places it was narrow, and in others broad; but in particular it grew wider and wider the nearer it approached to the sea. In some places there were large hols and deep reservoirs. It runs into the ocean to the northward, and, when it is low, the mouth appears dry, and the current there intirely choaked up with the sand and stagnating. The nearer it approaches the sea, the deeper it grows



in the middle, and the freer it is from reeds. It has many windings; and, in its course, runs between two tolerably high mountains. The water is sweet and good; but near the sea, from the intermixture of the salt water, and especially in the dry season, it grows saltish. We encamped several days along its banks in the open air, till we came to its mouth, in a sandy and barren field, where no colonists dwelt, and where there were only a few places for grazing cattle, which were mostly committed to the care of the Hottentots.

At the beginning of Verlooren-valley, opposite the end of Picquet mountain, projects a ridge of mountains, which runs all the way down to the Strand, where Verlooren-valley ends, and forms the heights on one side of this rivulet.

From Picquet-berg some ridges of mountains also project, which terminate on the other side of Verlooren-valley.

The large and long range of mountains which extends from Cape Falso, near Hottentot's Holland, across the whole country, terminates here in scattered and broken hills and eminences, so that it was not necessary to cross the above-mentioned range at this northern end, as at Roode-Zand and Pickenier's kloofs.

Near

Near a farm where Hottentots only tended the cattle, we experienced the inconvenience of being infested with vermin. We encamped, it is true, at a considerable distance from their habitations; but before our arrival, they had spread their skin-coverings, which swarmed with vermin, upon the adjacent fields, and our pillows, on which we used to sit in the shade of our waggons, were presently filled with them, so that after several days painful labour we could hardly get rid of our hungry and troublesome guests.

Serpents abounded greatly in these sandy and bushy plains. Not a day passed that we did not catch several, and put them into the brandy-kegs. Whilst we were sitting on the ground to eat our homely meals, they ran across my legs and thighs as well as those of my fellow travellers, without once biting any of us. A serpent once twisted round my left leg, and, without biting me, suffered itself to be gently shaken off. Another came creeping out from under my body, whilst I lay on the ground, and afterwards crawled, as cold as ice, over the bare leg of one of the company that sat near me, without doing the least hurt to any of us. From this it may plainly be inferred, that serpents do not attempt to bite, unless in self defence, when trampled upon, or otherwise hurt. Many times did

vol. II. L serpents

serpents run across the road, and not unfrequently between the horses' feet,<sup>6</sup> without doing the horses any injury.

The sand-moles, of which here were vast numbers, had made so many holes in the ground that it was with great difficulty and danger the traveller could get on, as his horse sometimes fell deep into them, and very frequently stumbled.

From Verlooren valley we travelled on to *Lange valley*, which is a river similar to the former, but much less; and from hence we had a very long and dry carrow-field to traverse before we got near the mountains again, and to a place called the Gentlemen's hotel (*Heeren logement.*)

The heights were very sandy, the country dry, and the grazing farms scarce, at which the farmers themselves likewise did not live, but only kept some hired Hottentots to tend their cattle, which is here the only thing they attended to; as the drought and the barrenness of the soil prevent them from growing corn or planting orchards.

On the 25th, before we reached the Gentlemen's hotel, we passed several small vales in our way of a very trifling depth, which, from the heat of the weather, were already quite dried up. These had a strange and singular appearance, as the clay which, during the rainy season, had been dissolved

dissolved and agitated in water, was now deposited in various strata, or laminæ of different degrees of thickness, which had split in consequence of the heat, and were seen very distinctly. The lowermost layer was the coarsest, and contained a great quantity of extraneous particles, which, in consequence of their weight, had settled there first. The uppermost layer was both purer and finer, and so dry as to stick to the lips and tongue like a new tobacco pipe. This, as well as other African minerals, I collected, and have presented them to the royal academy at Upsal for their collection of minerals.

In my way to the Gentlemen's hotel, I found a scarce and long-sought for plant, viz. the *Codon Royeni*, but did not see more than one shrub of it, which however I think I never shall forget. It was one of the hottest days in summer, and the heat was so intolerable, that we were afraid that our beasts would grow faint and drop down quite exhausted. By this insufferable and tormenting heat our bodies were swelled up, as it were, and the pores opened in the highest degree. The bushes we met with, were covered all over with white, brittle, and transparent prickles, which, when my fellow traveller and I suddenly fell upon them, and strove which should pluck the most flowers with our naked hands, scratched them in such a terrible manner, that for

several days we experienced great pain and inconvenience.

At length we arrived quite exhausted to the Gentlemen's hotel, which was a vale between the mountains, with a pretty high hill. Up this hill we had to drive before we could get into another tract of country, which however was not very fertile.

This place, which is pleasant, being ornamented with a small wood and a rivulet of fresh water, is called the Gentlemen's hotel, because on one side of the mountain there is a large cavern to the westward, like a hall, formed by two rocks, which were hollowed out by the hand of time. I climbed up to it, and found the names of several travellers written on the sides. Near this was another hollow vault, but somewhat less.

In the former of these caves there was a small fissure, in which a tree, probably the *Sideroxylon*, had taken root, and stood in a very flourishing condition, being above eight feet in height; although it had no more water for its nourishment and support than the trifling quantity that was retained by the fissure in the rainy season.

Upon the whole, the mountains hereabouts were dry, barren, and of a brittle texture, appearing as if they had been burned, and containing a great number of large, bare, and loose stones.

Whilst

Whilst we refreshed ourselves here and our wearied cattle, a farmer arrived on horseback from Olyfant's rivier, who informed us that a lion inhabited the spot by which we were to pass, and that it had lately been seen upon the road, and had pursued a Hottentot there.

However, as we had no other way than this dangerous one to chuse, we set out on the following day, viz. *the 26th*, and, the better to be on our guard, we rode the whole day with our guns, laid across our arms, cocked and loaded with ball; and late in the evening, when it was quite dark, arrived at PETER VAN SEELE's, near *Olyfant's-river*, where we staid a few days, as the situation was comfortable and the people obliging and hospitable.

The road was almost every where sandy, and the heights we rode over presented nothing but bare rocks, with a red sand stone, interspersed with pebbles, that appeared to have been inclosed in the sand-stone before it had hardened into a rock, in like manner as their surface seemed to have been polished, before their inclosure, to the degree of smoothness they now exhibited, by the violent motion of the waves.

Here were several mountains flat at top, like the Table mountain, which terminated behind Olyfant's river, before they reached the sea-

shore, between which and the mountains it is said to be a day's journey over a broad and level plain.

The Bokke-veld mountain also ended near the sea-shore, on the other side of Olyfant's river; they are of a considerable height, and do not go off with a gradual slope.

*Kamerup* was the name given here to the Hottentot's Water-melon, a large succulent root.

*Karup* again signified the root of a species of *Lobelia*, which was eaten by the Hottentots.

*Moor-wortel* is an umbelliferous plant, from the root of which and honey the Hottentots make, by fermentation, an intoxicating liquor.

A wild goose (*Anas ægyptiaca*) took up its residence in great Olyfant's river immediately below the farm, and did great damage to the farmer's wheat-fields. It had been fired on before, and wounded with small shot, but escaped alive. This made it so shy and cautious, that on the slightest view of the people of the house it would fly to the other side of the river, so that no body could come within gunshot of it. I being a stranger, it seemed to be less fearful of me, a circumstance which, one day, as it came on the side of the river next the house, gave me an opportunity of shooting it, to the great satisfaction of my host.

As we now had to travel through a dry and barren desert, we took care to lay in proper provision.

vision here for the journey, viz. biscuits, bread, butter, and fresh meat, with which our worthy hostess very obligingly furnished us. We sent all our baggage over Olyfant's river which was pretty broad, in a small boat, and afterwards made the oxen swim across with the waggon. The river was deep in several places, and a beautiful wood, consisting of trees of various kinds, especially the *Mimosa nilotica*, adorned its banks.

After this, on the 30th, we rode down by the foot of the mountains, the first and largest projecting point of which was called *Windboek*, and the other *Maskamma*. We arrived at a grazing farm, which belonged to one Ras, and was called *Trutru*. Here, on some of the lesser hills, I found the Hottentots water-melon, which I had been long in search of, and desirous of knowing. The root was almost as round as a ball, above six inches in diameter, of a yellowish colour, and about as hard as an ordinary turnep. The taste of it was agreeable and refreshing. It is much eaten by the Hottentots. Its blossom was not quite full blown; but it seemed to me to belong to the order of the *Contorta*, and I thought it might be referred more especially to the *Ceropegia*, or the *Periploca* genus.

The field was always dry; in the clefts indeed, and sometimes at the foot of the mountains, there



was water; but the land was so poor, that no farms could be laid out there.

We saw the *Bokkeveld* mountains lying before us, which extended far towards the sea-side, and that with several projecting points, just like so many ranges of mountains.

On the 31st, we proceeded through the desert; in which the farther we advanced, the drier it grew. Our journey through the desert lasted three days at least: and in the whole of this tract we found only three places which at this time afforded a little salt-water. But these were the more difficult to find, as they did not lie near the road, but at a good distance from it. A stranger easily passes by them, and thus endangers his own life and that of his cattle. Very happily for us, we fell in with a farmer from the Cape that was travelling the same road; but with our weak cattle we could not keep pace with him. We therefore requested, that he would fit up a stick with a linen rag on it at the places where we ought to bait, and in the neighbourhood of which we might look for so extraordinary a phenomenon as salt-water is in these thirsty plains. The first night we luckily hit upon the watering place called *Single Dornboom's rivier*, but not the second, so that our cattle were nearly exhausted by heat and thirst, before we reached, which

which we did not do till the third evening, the *Bokke-land mountains*, where we baited all night near a small rivulet of fresh water, called *Dorn-rivier*, after having passed a place called (*Leeu-weedant*, or *Leeuwejagt*) *Lions-dance*.

In the winter, when it is set in for rain, the farmers remove for some time with their cattle to this part, which is at this time the most proper for breeding of sheep, but not always for other cattle. And indeed the sheep in these barren fields grow sometimes so fat, that their flesh cannot be eaten. The leanest are therefore always selected for slaughter. When a butcher has purchased a flock of sheep, and driven them 130 or 150 miles to the Cape, they are generally reckoned fat enough to be killed.

All the mountains here stretched N. N. E. towards the sea, and S. S. W. into the country, where they grew very flat; towards the summits they were quite level, as if their heads had been lopped off.

To the left a ridge of mountains was seen to commence, which ran along the sea-shore, and was not very high.

In this Carrow-land grew the most singular *Mesembryanthemums*, and those in the greatest quantity; on the other hand but very few *Cras-sulas*, *Euphorbias* and *Cotyledons*.

On

On the 2d of November, we rode up the Bokke-land mountains with two pair of oxen, with which the farmer, who had passed us, kindly assisted us, ours being quite fatigued and disabled, and the mountains so steep that several Hottentots were obliged to hold the waggons fast with cords, to prevent them oversetting. This mountain was not only very steep, but likewise very hilly, and abounded with slate; above there was a steep ridge, and the sides of the crown itself were almost perpendicular. At the top of all the mountain was level, the air colder, and the plain abounded in grass.

Bokkeveld lies between the 30th and 31st deg. South of the Equator.

In ascending this mountain, we discovered a species of Aloe (*Aloe dichotoma*) the stem of which, when of a proper thickness, is hollowed out, and used by the Hottentots as a quiver for their arrows.

-Weary, but not a little pleased, we afterwards arrived at CLAS LOSPER's farm, whither we intended indeed to have gone the preceding year, but were prevented by an accident. In this honest farmer, during the few days stay we made with him, we found as generous a host as we had before found in him a faithful guide and kind assistant. He was the richest grazier in the whole

whole country; and was at this time in possession of at least 12,000 sheep, and above 600 full-grown horned cattle, besides about 200 calves.

We now left a tract of land to the left, nearer to the sea, which is occupied and inhabited by two rich and powerful nations, the little and great *Namaquas*. These are occupied in grazing; and their cattle appeared to me to be of quite a different kind from those of the Caffres and colonists, being for the most part long legged, large, and without a bunch on the back.

*Bokke-land*, or *Goat-land*, which we had now reached, is nothing else than a tolerably high mountain, which is level at the top, and towards the edges of its summit forms a variety of projecting angles, pointing to the sea side. It consists of different strata; the uppermost of which is sand-stone, in many places interlarded with polished round pebbles. The sand-stone is for the most part laminate like slate, and moulders away into pieces by rain.

This country being all over exceedingly barren, and consequently not much frequented by the colonists, there were several small societies of Hottentots, scattered up and down in it, who were in possession of some very inconsiderable herds of cattle; and a great many of them were employed as servants by the few farmers that lived here, who repaid their services with cattle and other trifling gratuities.

With

With these as well as other Hottentots who live farther up the country near *Roggeveld*, and who were once more numerous and rich than they are at present, the Dutch Company formerly carried on a bartering trade; but, on account of the injustice and violence which the factors that were sent to them were guilty of, and which the governors frequently connived at, not deeming it their duty to contend for the rights of nature and humanity, when neither the Company's nor their own private interest was concerned, it has now almost entirely ceased. When a corporal was sent out by the governor with a few men to barter with the Hottentots for their oxen, against arrack, glass beads, iron and tobacco, he not only got their oxen for slaughter, but their calves, cows, and sheep. And this exchange was not always with the Hottentots' good will and consent, but by compulsion, and frequently by force. Besides this, they were base enough to dilute the arrack with water, and thus to adulterate it. This mode of bartering occasioned by degrees such a disgust, that some of the Hottentots neglected to augment their stock, and others entirely left the places of their residence, and ran away; after which they sometimes stole cattle from the farmers, who by degrees seized upon their land. Not long ago, Corporal **FELDMAN** procured by barter 500 oxen, with the

the greatest part of which he enriched himself, returning only fifty into the Company's slaughter-house. This bartering traffic, which was not very advantageous to the Company, but unjust and cruel towards the Hottentots, has now quite ceased as well in this North Western, as in the South Eastern part of Africa, especially since the land is well peopled, and the farmers, who abound in cattle, are now capable of delivering as many soever as may be wanted. Should such traffic ever take place again, it ought to be with the Caffres and Namaquas, who are possessed of a great quantity of cattle, and whose lands have not hitherto suffered in the least by the encroachments from the colonists.

From Bokkeland we saw the Roggeveld mountains to the eastward, and, nearer hand, the Hantums mountains to the northward, and still farther to the northward, a range of mountains, behind which lay, according to report, an immense long plain without mountains, but furnished with several salt-pans, and inhabited by Boshiesman-Hottentots. All the above-mentioned mountains lay high, and at the top as it were of the Bokkeland mountains.

The Boshiesman Hottentots inhabit the most indifferent, poor, bare, and cold part of this southernmost point of Africa, towards the N. and E. from Namaquas-land, across Roggeveld, and

as far as the Snow-mountains. And indeed this nation is the poorest and most destitute of all. They have seldom or ever any cattle, and frequently no fixed abode, but wander about the country, and support themselves by plunder and theft. They often live without either clothes or huts; and I was informed by some farmers worthy of credit, that these people sometimes creep down at night into caverns and holes in the earth, many together till the cave is full, when the uppermost covers himself with the skin of a Dassi (*Cavia capensis*) to keep out the cold and bad weather. They are of a yellowish brown colour, and something less than the Hottentots, with very small and delicate limbs. The belly, which projects extremely, constitutes almost the whole of the man.

These Boshiesmen had, for the space of several years, molested the colonists here, as likewise in Roggeveld and near the Snow-mountains, stolen their cattle, murdered many of the colonists themselves, and set fire to their farms. At different times parties had been sent out to disperse them, and last year in particular, three large parties had been sent into three different quarters.

A party consisting of a hundred men, of which thirty-two were christians, and the rest Hottentots in their service, had been sent out against some Namaquas Boshiesmen, and now met us on  
their

their return. In this expedition they had killed about a hundred, and made prisoners of twenty, chiefly small children, some of whom they at this present juncture had with them. It was said that in a similar expedition in 1765, 186 had been killed. None of the christians that went on this expedition were either killed or wounded.

The Hottentots are considered as allies, and not suffered to be made slaves of; but such Hottentots as are taken prisoners in war, especially if young, are for some time the property of the captor, and obliged to serve without wages, but are not to be disposed of to others. If any of the colonists take an Hottentot orphan to bring up, it must serve, it is true, without wages, till it is twenty-five years old; but, on arriving at that age, it is at liberty to go where it pleases, or to continue in service at a stated salary.

Although this Bokkeland, which also has the name of the Lower Bokkeveld, lies very high, yet it is said that snow very seldom falls here.

For the protection of the property of the colonists against the ravages of the Hottentots, the Company had, to the eastward, established several posts one after another; but to the westward, on the other side of the mountain, not one was established, although it is there that such posts are most necessary and important. The farmers towards this coast must therefore themselves be armed.



armed in order to defend themselves against these plundering Boshiefmen; and on this occasion the more wealthy farmers generally supply the other with powder, ball, and men. One of the farmers is commonly chosen for their leader, who is then exempted from all other borough service. When a large party is sent out, the government supplies them, on the Company's account, with brandy, hand-cuffs, powder and shot.

The Boshiefmen exercise their violence and depredations not only on the christian colonists, but have, previous to this, by their thefts, ruined the major part of the Hottentot natives, many of whom have since gone into the service of the colonists.

When any strangers arrive at a farm, the Hottentots belonging to it always give each of them a name suited to his appearance, profession, or other external circumstances; this happened in several different places to me and my companions.

When we were encamped in the open air, which was frequently the case, and had forgot to procure fire by means of our guns, the Hottentots made use of another method, which was no less curious than infallible. They took two pieces of hard wood, one of which was cylindrical, and the other flat, with a hole in it; the flat piece was laid down on the ground, and the foot

foot placed on one end of it to keep it fast; after which some dry grass was laid round the hole, and the cylindrical stick being put into the hole, it was twirled round between the hands with such velocity, that the friction arising from it set the grass on fire.

When we stewed our meat in the open field the Hottentots would sometimes come, after it was taken out of the pot, and first besmear themselves all over with the grease, and afterwards rub the foot of the pot all over their bodies.

The Boshiesmen sometimes make use of javelins, but the shafts are shorter and thicker than those of the Caffres Assagays; which they use not only to throw, but likewise, and indeed chiefly, for the purpose of killing the cattle they have stolen; but their principal arms, which they use in war and for their own defence in general, are bows and poisoned arrows, and these they are taught to handle with great dexterity. The arrow is armed with a thin triangular piece of iron, fastened with a string to a bone of a finger's length, to the end of which again is fastened a reed. This iron as well as the bone is afterwards rubbed with poison extracted from serpents. The Boshiesmen are the most expert marksmen of all the Hottentots, and are said to be able to shoot their arrows to the distance of 280 paces. They also know how to avoid

the arrows of others with the greatest nimbleness and dexterity, just as balloons do when stones are thrown at them; and if they could but see the musquet-balls of the Europeans, they would think themselves able to escape them likewise. To running the Boshiefmen Hottentots are so inured, as not to be excelled in it by any others; but can almost hold out longer than a horse. On the level plains they are easily overtaken by a man on horseback; but very seldom if the road be stony, and never in mountainous places.

They can endure hunger a long time; but when they have a plentiful supply, will eat so immoderately as to distend their bellies to an amazing size. When oppressed by hunger, they tie a belt round their bodies, which they gradually draw tighter, till the naval is brought close to the back-bone.

When a Boshiefman has caught a serpent, and killed it, he does not, according to report, cut off its head, but bites it off, and then cutting out the vesicle containing the poison, dries it in the sun till it becomes viscid and tough, and then mixes it with the juice of a poisonous tree, (frequently the *Cestrum venenatum*), which makes the poison adhere the faster to the arrow.

The Hottentots and Boshiefmen are said to fortify themselves against poisoned darts and the bite

bite of venomous animals, by suffering themselves to be gradually bitten by serpents, scorpions, and other venomous creatures, till they become accustomed to it; but these trials sometimes cost them their lives. The urine of an Hottentot thus prepared is esteemed an excellent antidote or counterpoison, and is therefore drunk by such as have been bitten by serpents.

When it thunders, the Boshiesmen are very angry and curse bitterly, thinking, that the storm is occasioned by some evil being.

Poisonous bulbous plants, (*Giftbolles*; *Amaryllis diffieba*) grow in several places common, with their beautiful clusters of flowers. The root, which is poisonous, is almost as big as one's fist. The Hottentots use it chiefly for poisoning the arrows with which they shoot the smaller kind of game, such as Spring-bucks (*Capra pygargus*) and the like. Those bulbs that grow in the shade are thought to possess a stronger poison than those which are exposed to the sun.

On the following days we rode along Bokkeland to Hantum. The country inclined gently and gradually towards it. The Hantum country began with scattered ridges of mountains; farther up the country stood a high mountain, which was more particularly called *Hantum mountain*, and had a cut, or open cleft, through which we rode. The mountain was smooth and level at

the top, and in height appeared equal to Roggeveld.

After we had got to the end of Bokke-land, the country grew, the farther we travelled, a drier Carrow, with considerable rivers, which had still brackish water in them, but in summer are quite dried up.

In Hantum we passed VAN RHEN's grazing farm, near *Riet-fontein*, and afterwards rode by HENDRIK LAU's grazing farm, to ABRAHAM VAN WYK's farm. This VAN WYK was a lusty, fat man; as soon as the dogs, by their barking, announced the arrival of strangers, he stood at the door to bid us welcome. My fellow traveller and I were not a little surprised, in a country so extremely barren, and through which we had travelled several days without seeing a single living creature, now to find so lusty and corpulent a man, and one that did so much credit to his keeper.

In this tract we found the Fungus we had so long sought and wished to see, (*Hydnora Africana*) which without doubt is one of the most extraordinary plants that have been discovered of late years. It always grows under the branches of the shrub, *Euphorbia tirucalli*, and upon its roots. The lower part of it, which is the fruit, is eaten by the Hottentots, Viverræ, Foxes and other animals.

On the 13th we proceeded to CHRISTIAN Bock's, and •

On the 14th, to *Rbonnofter-rivier*, where we were obliged to unyoke our cattle and stay all night; although a lion had two days before killed a zebra near this spot, which it had not yet had time to devour.

The lions have their haunts in every part of these mountains; and are, on account of the farmers' herds of cattle, as disagreeable neighbours as the Boshiesmen. And indeed there were several people here who had been in danger from these dreadful beasts of prey. Amongst others was mentioned a farmer of the name of KORF, who lived not far off.

A lion had stationed itself amongst the rushes of a rivulet that ran near the farm, so as to deter the servants from going out to fetch water, or tend the cattle. The farmer himself therefore, accompanied by a few terrified Hottentots, resolved to attack it, and endeavour to drive it away. But as it lay concealed in the thick rushes, he could not see to take aim, but was obliged to fire several shot at random into the rushes. The lion, enraged at this, rushed out upon the farmer, who, having fired off his piece, was now quite defenceless, and at the same time deserted by his fugitive Hottentots. As soon as the lion had laid hold of him, he plucked up cou-

rage, and thrust one of his hands down the lion's throat, which saved him from being torn to pieces, till at length he fainted away from loss of blood. After this the lion left him, and retreated into the rushes again for a few days. When the farmer at last recovered, he found that he was not only terribly wounded in his sides by the lion's talons, but one of his hands was so much torn and lacerated by the animal's teeth, that there were no hopes of its being healed. On entering the house and being a little revived, he took an ax in his hand, laid the wounded hand on a block, put the ax on it, and ordered one of his servants to strike the ax with a club. Having thus cut off his own hand, he dressed it with cow-dung, and tied a bladder over it, and at length healed the wounds with the usual salve, made of a decoction of odoriferous herbs, lard, and a little wax.

I heard another anecdote of an old farmer, who, together with his son, had gone out in order to drive away a lion from his farm. The lion had suddenly leaped upon the old man's back, and in that situation, before it had had time to kill him, was shot dead by the son.

Another instance was related to me of the widow of one WAGENAAR, near the Snow-mountains, who had gone out to scare a lion away from her cattle; when the beast seizing on her,  
first

first ate off one of her arms, and at length, when she fainted, devoured her head. After this it had likewise devoured a Hottentot maid servant, who had ran to her mistress's assistance. The children who had seen this shocking sight through the crevices of the door, dug themselves out through the earth under the back wall of the house, and from thence ran away to the nearest farm.

From this dangerous place we went to *Daunis*, where the settlement had been destroyed by the Boshiesmen by fire, and the owner with his people forced to run away.

The country here was level, with several mountains running N. E. and S. W. Directly before us lay the Roggeveld mountains.

*Moorwortel*, (an umbelliferous plant) was also spoken of here as a root, from which, with water and honey, the Hottentots prepare an intoxicating liquor. This root is said to be taken up principally in the months of November and December.

On *the 15th* we rode along *Drooge-rivier*, where we were informed by two farmers who overtook us, that a lion had followed our track the day before, but, on seeing some sheep, had turned about in pursuit of them.

On *the 16th* we travelled along the foot of the Roggeveld mountains, and then, through a valley



formed by them, called *Port*, and at last went up the mountain to WILHELM STENKAMP's farm.

Here the country was called the *Lowermost Roggeveld*, not because it lies lower than the other Roggevelds, (*Ryefelds*) but because it lies farthest from the Cape. These as well as the others have been so named from a kind of rye which grows wild here in abundance near the bushes.

The winter is very cold, with frost and snow, for which reason no cattle can be kept here, instead of which they are driven down to Carrow. The settlers in the lowermost Roggeveld, who are in possession of good houses, sometimes pass the winter there; but those who live in the middle Roggeveld, always remove from thence.

The whole country is destitute of wood, and has only a few small shrubs and bushes of the *Mesembryanthemum*, *Pteronia*, *Stoebe* kinds, and a few others, such as *Othonnas*, &c. The country produces good fodder for sheep and horses only, of which there are great numbers, but very little horned-cattle, on most of the farms.

The uppermost stratum of this mountain is sand-stone, which is hard and breaks in large pieces, and very fit for building of houses. The middle stratum is slate, which may be discerned

cerned in the clefts, and this bed is wider than the former. The lowermost stratum is red sand and clay, interspersed with round stones of different sizes.

*Roggeveld* is a mountain which has been inhabited by the colonists for these thirty years past. It consists of eminences and vallies, and has no ridges of any remarkable height, so that it cannot be called level, but hilly.

The farms are not situated far up the country, but near the edges of the summit of the mountain and all along it, so that the part inhabited is yet very small.

The soil in the lowermost *Roggeveld* is a dark brown mould, intermixed with a small quantity of loose and brittle clay. It does not rain either at *Roggeveld* or at *Camdeboo* in winter, but only in spring and summer; and the rain is then always accompanied with thunder storms.

On the 18th we proceeded to *JACOB LAUE's*, and,

On the 20th, to *ADRIAN LAUE's* farm. From the edge of the summit of the mountain here we saw the *Carrow* lying underneath us, as also *Windhoek*, *Maskamma*, the *Table-mountains* near *Olyfant's rivier*, the cold *Bokkevelds*, and *Roode-Zands Winterhoek*, all in a row.

The *Roode Zand* and *Bokkeveld* mountains were lower than *Roggeveld*. *Carrow* lay be-

tween

tween these, higher than that Carrowfield which we had passed through between Olyfant's rivier and Bokkeland, and almost as high as Maskamma and the Bokkeland mountains.

On *the 21st* we came to GERT VAN WYK's.

The above-mentioned farms were always situated in vallies between the heights.

Although the summer drew near, it was very cold and froze at nights. The afternoon's breeze also was always cold.

On *the 23d* we arrived at THOMAS NEL's farm; and afterwards to ADRIAN VAN WYK's, near the edge of the top of the mountain, where a tremendously deep valley extends down to Carrow; from hence a road leads to Carrow and Mostert's hock.

Here I saw a Hottentot female servant that was born with the left arm imperfect, and ending near the elbow. The mother was for murdering this child at the birth, (according to the custom of the Hottentots, it being a cripple) but was prevented by a humane colonist.

I was surprized to find that the Hottentots, who were in the service of the farmers, and were mostly naked, could endure the cold here so well. They had no other covering than a sheep-skin about their backs; the woolly side being worn next to the skin in the winter, and the smooth side in the summer. It was but seldom  
that

that they had shoes to their feet. It sometimes happens, however, that they are frozen to death.

It is a custom with the Hottentots in these parts to bury their dead in the clefts of the mountains; and such as fell into a swoon, had the hard fate to be buried immediately. Wild cucumbers is the name given to the *Coloquintida* (*Cucumis colocynthis*). They were said to be eaten by the Hottentots, and even by the colonists, after being pickled with vinegar, although they taste very bitter. The sheep feed eagerly on them. The *Stapelia articulata repens*, a thick plant without leaves, is eaten by the Hottentots as also by the colonists, after being pickled in the same manner as cucumbers.

Karré-hout (*Rhus*) is a kind of wood which the Hottentots in this part of the country used for making bows.

The road all over Roggeveld was rough, and full of round and sharp loose stones.

The spring-bok comes hither sometimes from the interior parts, and goes as far as the Bokkevelds, or somewhat farther. At the expiration of a certain number of years they emigrate in the same manner as the Lemmings in Swedish Lapland, arriving in troops of millions, and going in a long field one after the other, eating away all the herbage wherever they pass, and suffering nothing to obstruct them in their march. If any

of them bring forth on the road, they leave their young behind. If any of the farmers fire amongst them, they continue their route nevertheless without interruption, and are not even intimidated by lions and other beasts of prey, who follow the herd, and make great havock amongst them. After they have passed through any farmer's grounds, hardly any thing is left for his cattle to eat, nor any water to drink. The corn-fields must be watched night and day, otherwise they would entirely destroy the corn, and the farmers would be reduced to want.

On the 24th, we came to a spring in the open field, where we encamped all night, and,

On the 25th, we crossed the mountain to PAUL KERSTE's near *Kreutsfontein*. In the afternoon, when we were ready to set out from hence, and our horses were saddled, my horse had the misfortune to be bitten in the breast by a serpent, as they were watering him at the brook just below the farm. In consequence of this his whole foot grew stiff and swelled as I rode on, and the swelling increased to such a degree, that, before I had got a stone's-throw from the farm, he could proceed no farther, and I was obliged to leave him on the spot. A small serpent not quite six inches long, which was said to be very venomous, and was found here in abundance, was supposed to be the perpetrator of this mischief.

travelling

Here

vision

Here began the *Middle Roggeveld*, which was only divided from the former by means of a few mountainous ridges.

On the 26th we arrived at CORNELIUS KUTSE'S.

His son had a short time before been bitten in the hand by a venomous serpent. His hand had been scarified immediately, and a cupping-glass applied, in order to extract the poison from it. After this it was steeped in a solution of vitriol, which was said to have been rendered quite black by it. An onion was next applied, and afterwards turtle-blood. This latter, when laid on the wound in a dry state, was said to dissolve and turn to a fluid blood, that exhibited signs of effervescence: as the poison of serpents has a stronger attraction for turtle-blood than for human blood, so as to attract the poison to itself.

Every farmer travelling from Roggeveld to the Cape through Mosterts-hoek, pays annually a certain sum towards repairing the roads. The farmers who live far up the country, have generally the misfortune to be poorer, and to be subject to greater expence than others.

We fell in here with another party, that had been in pursuit of the Boshiesmen quite up into Roggeveld. This party consisted of about ninety odd persons, of whom forty-seven were christians. They had killed and taken prisoners  
nearly

nearly 230 Boshiesmen. One of the colonists had been shot in the knee with an arrow, which had cost him his life. The third detachment, which had been sent to the Snow-mountains, had killed 400 Boshiesmen; of this party seven had been wounded by arrows, but none died.

It sometimes happens, that the Boshiesmen take away at once the farmer's whole herd whilst grazing, and frequently even kill the herdsman. They afterwards drive their booty higher up into the country, night and day, as fast as they can, till they arrive at a place where they think themselves perfectly secure. What they cannot take with them they kill with their javelins; and, in their flight, place spies on the heights of the mountains, to look out carefully, and see whether they are pursued by the colonists. These spies are relieved by others, and give intelligence if the party is pursued; in which case they all hide themselves, if possible, in the mountains. In their flight they kill, roast, and eat by turns. When they have stolen a considerable number of cattle, and are arrived at some place where they think themselves tolerably secure, they encamp there with their cattle, and make huts (*Kraals*) of *Mesembryanthemum* bushes or of mats, in which they live together as long as their food lasts. The detachment had seen one of these *Kraals*, or encampments formed of huts in two rows,

rows, like a village, in which they had counted on one side upwards of fifty huts, from which all the Boshiesmen have removed.

In Roggeveld alone the Boshiesmen had, in the last two years, stolen more than 10,000 sheep, besides oxen, and murdered many of the colonists, their slaves, and Hottentots.

When the Boshiesmen are pursued by the colonists on horseback, they retreat to the mountains, where, like baboons, they post themselves on the edges of the summits and in the inaccessible places, and are always afraid of the plains. They sometimes creep into the clefts, and from these bulwarks let fly their arrows.

The weapons with which they defend themselves against their enemies, are bows and poisoned arrows. By way of defence against these, the colonists cause a skin to be held before them, in which the arrows stick fast, that frequently come like a shower of rain. The Boshiesmen, when they perceive that their arrows do not penetrate, do not fire a second volley. A Boshiesman who is mortally wounded by a ball, is never found either crying or lamenting in any shape whatever.

These people first chew Canna (*Mesembryanthemum*), and afterwards smoke it. They besmear themselves with greasy substances, and over that with red chalk; in times of scarcity they feed on serpents,



serpents, lizards, the flesh of zebras, lions, and baboons, upon bulbous roots, ants' eggs, &c.

On *the 29th* we rode along Visch-rivier past OLIVIER's farm, to JACOBUS THERON's. A misfortune, which I least expected on a smooth and plain road, attended me however this day. Thro' the carelessness of my Hottentots, who drove against a stone that lay in the road, my cart overturned, the tilt over it was torn asunder, and many of my boxes and packets of herbs were lost.

I here saw necklaces and ornaments for the waist, which the Hottentots had made of the shells of ostriches' eggs, ground in the form of small round rings, and which made a very fine appearance.

The cold in this Roggeveld is very intense in winter, and snow falls with frost. The farmers, therefore, live here only a few months in the year, viz. from October to May; build here their houses and sow their wheat, which they are obliged to leave to the mercy of the Boshiesmen, during the time that they remove down to the Carrow-field below, where it rains certain months in the year, so that they can remain there with their cattle till the approaching dry season obliges them to remove up the mountain to Roggeveld again.

On *the 1st of December*, we travelled farther on to ESTERHUYSEN's farm, where we were obliged

obliged to stay a couple of days, on account of the stormy, inclement weather, which continued with frost, rain, hail, and snow, for the space of twenty-four hours, and not only confined us to our room, but obliged us to put on our great-coats, as a defence against such an unexpected and unusual degree of cold, which was partly occasioned by the height of the mountain, and partly by the violence of the north and north-west winds.

The mountain, compared to the Carrow-field below, was at least as high as Table mountain is at the Cape, and a high road for carriages runs from hence to Carrow.

On *the 3d*, in the morning, we set out from this cold place to go down the mountain, and could not, as we had wished, continue our journey farther up Roggeveld, as our beasts were too poor and too tender footed, to continue longer on this sharp and rugged mountain.

In the morning when we set out, the ice still lay on the summit of the mountain, as far as to its very edges, of the thickness of a rix dollar.

The road down the mountain lay over several steep heights and abrupt declivities like very high and broad steps, for which reason not only the two hind wheels were obliged to be locked, but the waggon itself to be held fast by the Hottentots, by means of ropes, in order to prevent it from over-

setting and falling down upon the oxen. The uppermost declivity was the steepest, and called (*Uytzyk*) *Look-out*, on account of the extensive view it commanded; the other was called *Maurice's heights*.

While we were on the heights of the mountain, it was intensely cold; but, the lower we descended, the calmer and warmer the air became, till in about three hours time we got down to Carrow, when the heat began to grow intolerable.

We had now before us a very large and extensive field in the dry and barren Carrow to traverse, before we could reach an inhabited place. We had therefore supplied ourselves at the last farm, with as much provision as was necessary for a few days, and with this set out on our journey through a scorching desert, so destitute of water that even a sparrow could not subsist in it, and so devoid of every living creature, that only a few rats were to be seen here and there in holes in the earth, which probably find, in the succulent leaves of the shrubs in these parts, somewhat that serves both to appease their hunger and quench their thirst.

Sun-rise called forth every morning these earth-rats, whose nests always ran slanting downwards, with their entrance facing the east. We tried to shoot some of them as they popped their heads out, but found them, to our great surprise

as well as disappointment, inexpressibly quick in with-drawing into their holes as soon as they saw the flash of the pan. I tried several times with an excellent gun to hit one of them, but found it impracticable, till I fell upon the method of putting a piece of paper before the pan, which prevented them from seeing the flash of the prime.

On *the 4th*, setting out from MEYBURG'S farm which lay at the foot of the mountain, we came to *Goudblom's kloof*, and, on *the 5th*, through smaller vallies to the river of Misfortune (*Onge-lucks rivier*), so called on account of a farmer having been quite eaten up here by a lion. Here we rested two days, waiting for the arrival of a farmer, who was going to the Cape, and who had promised to assist us with his oxen across the dryest of all the Carrows which lay before us. But as he did not arrive according to his promise, and this baiting place was such that both man and beast ran the risk not only of starving for want of food, but likewise of dying of thirst, we were obliged to use all our efforts, and, on *the 7th*, from eleven o'clock at night to the next morning, make a long journey to a little rivulet that ran before a mountain called *Paardeberg*, which was small and solitary.

The tract of country which we had left behind us, was full of small mountains and ridges of

mountains, some detached, others connected together, and running W. N. W., towards Roggeveld and the Bokkeveld mountains. The small quantity of water which was here to be found in a very few places and in small cavities, was not only salt, but likewise so thick and turbid with clay and other impurities, that we were obliged to lay a handkerchief over it, in order to suck a little of it into our mouths.

There is another road indeed farther down, which is less mountainous and smoother, but at the same time also affords less water.

On the 8th we passed the above-mentioned Paardeberg in our way to *Dorn-rivier*. Hitherto the Carrow had with few exceptions led down with a gradual descent all over its surface, inclining from the Roggeveld to the Bokkeveld mountains, and was almost every where free from bushes.

On the 9th, we left Dorn-rivier, and taking the road through the valley formed by the mountains between Carrow and Bokkeveld, arrived at last at a settlement and farm belonging to VANDER MERVEL'S widow.

This good house-wife used a curious method of separating lentils from the wheat with which they were mixed. She threw it all to her fowls, who carefully picked up every grain of wheat, and left the lentils behind untouched.

The

The leaves of the *Indigofera arborea* were boiled, and the decoction was said to be a good remedy against the gravel and stone.

The strata in the mountains, as they were seen in the vallies, inclined very much here, and were even singularly crooked. The ridge of mountains also inclined here considerably to the eastward.

On the 11th we departed from hence, having first bought a large ram, which we salted in its own skin. Our route continued till we arrived at a place called *Verkeerde valley*, which is one of the pleasantest spots I have seen in the whole country. It is situated between two rows of mountains with great plenty of grass, and a fen abounding in water, almost like a small lake. As we wanted leisure to inspect and look after our collections, and our cattle stood in greater need of rest and refreshment, we agreed to remain in this pleasant though uninhabited spot for a few days, and eat our salted mutton in solitude.

On the 14th we passed through a valley in the mountains, called (*Straet*) *Street* to DE Vos's estate near *Hex-rivier*.

We were now returned, as I may say, to Christendom, or to those tracts in which the settlements lay closer to each other; after having for the space of several weeks, for the most part wandered in deserts, often encamped in the open

air, and in the most dangerous places, and several times been in want of the necessaries of life.

Near this farm a branch of Hex-rivier takes its rise in the mountains, which branch unites within the vale with the larger branch that runs here, and likewise springs out of the mountains.

On the 16th we rode past JORDAN's farm to VAN DE MERVEL's estate, and,

On the 17th, through *Hex rivier's kloof* to Roode Zand.

Hex rivier's kloof has no heights, is quite level and smooth, and we were obliged to cross the stream several times. On the tops of the mountains which stood on each side, there still lay a great deal of snow or hail.

*Roode Katt* is the name here given to a kind of red lynx, with long locks of hair at the extremities of its ears, and the tip of its tail black. PENNANT calls it a *Persian cat*, and BUFFON *Caracal*. Hist. Nat. de Quadr. Tom. ix. Tab. 24. The skin of it was said by the farmers to be very efficacious, as a discutient when applied to parts affected with cold, or rheumatism.

In the mountains, between the clefts of the naked rock, resides a kind of jumping rat (*Ferboa capensis*) which the farmers considered as a species of hare, and called it *Berghaas* or *Springhaas*. This animal is of a curious make; its fore feet being extremely short, but the hind feet nearly

as long as the whole body, which enables the creature to leap to a surprising distance.

The strata of the mountains were sometimes wreathed, and sometimes very much inclined.

The ridge of mountains therefore which we had to pass through, was, all the way from Carrow-field hither to the outlet of Hex rivier near Roode Zand, very broad, intersected with narrower vallies both length-ways and across.

From Roode Zand we took the usual way through it's kloof, which has a considerable eminence that must be crossed; but the rest of the road runs along the side of the mountain.

Roode Zand is, as it were, the key to the whole country behind the chain of mountains, which runs across the whole point. Most of the farmers therefore, who travel annually to the Cape, pass this way, except those who take the road across Hottentots Holland. On this occasion a surgeon had established himself at Roode Zand, and set up a small apothecary's shop, which brought him in a handsome income. The medicines were all well paid for, insomuch that a purging powder did not cost less than half a rix dollar. Sometimes they brought the sick hither, as well colonists as slaves, and left them under the surgeon's care till their return. Several in the abundance of their friendship endeavoured to persuade me to establish myself here. But the



love I bore to botany and my native country prevented me from accepting the offer.

*Riebeck casteel* was now observed to extend with a long tail much lower than the mountain itself, towards the south east.

We took our route afterwards past *Paardeberg* through *Koopmans* rivier, a rivulet, which is a branch of *Berg-rivier*, and farther through *Burger's* drift across *Berg-rivier*, and past *Elfis Kraal* to the Cape, where I arrived safe and sound on *the 29th of December*, with a heart filled with the deepest adoration of that divine Being, which, during my three years travels in this country, had not only preserved my life and health, but also permitted me to make several useful discoveries in it, to his glory and the future benefit of mankind.

---

---

## THE CAPE, 1775.

---

---

**HOTTENTOTS** is the common denomination of all those nations which inhabit the southern angle of Africa, and are extended on each side of the Cape of Good Hope. How far the country of these people extends is not yet accurately known; but though they are divided into a multitude of tribes, which differ from one another in many respects, yet it is clearly to be perceived that they all originate from one and the same stock; and that they differ widely from the negroes and moors who inhabit the other coasts of Africa.

The Hottentots in general are short, especially the women, although some among them are found that are five or six feet high. Their colour is neither black nor white, but yellowish; and their

their exterior black appearance is owing to the filth which adheres to their bodies in consequence of their besmearing themselves.

The form and lineaments of the face characterize this as well as other nations. Their cheek-bones are very prominent, which makes them always appear meagre and lean; the nose is flattened towards the root, and thick and blunt at the tip, but not very short; their lips are rather thick, their hair jet black like spun wool, and seldom thick, more frequently thin, resembling the nap upon cloth. They have very little hair upon their chin and privy parts. The spine in particular is very much bent, so that I never saw any one so hollow-backed as the Hottentots. I have seen some of them whose backs were bent in, and their buttocks projected to such a degree, that two people might sit on them. And although the Hottentots are very lean, yet the constant practice of besmearing themselves distends their skin, and especially the womens' breasts, to an inconceivable degree, so that, in this particular, they can challenge all other nations. The Boshiesmen have more prominent bellies than the rest.

The patriarchal form of government has from time immemorial existed amongst them, and still obtains with many; and this has been the origin of the many larger and smaller tribes and families,

lies, into which they formerly were, and their survivors still are, divided. Such tribes formerly were the Gunjemans, Kokoquas, Sussaquas, Odi-quas, Chirigriquas, Koopmans, Hessaquas, Son-quas, Dunquas, Damaquas, Gauris, Attaquas, Heykoms, Houteniquas, and Camtours Hottentots, of which few exist at present; and such at this time are the little and great Namaquas, Gonaquas, Caffres, Boshiesmen, &c. Of these probably some may in former times have been subdivided into still smaller tribes.

The Hottentots love filth in the highest degree; they besmear their bodies with fat and greasy substances, over which they rub cow-dung, fat, and similar substances. By this means the pores are stopped up and the skin covered with a surface, which defends them in summer against the scorching heat of the sun, and from the cold in winter. Amongst their ointments they mix the powder of a strong smelling herb, which they called Bucku, (a species of *Diosma*, frequently the *Pulebella*), and which gives them so disagreeable, so fetid, and at the same time so rank an odour, that I sometimes could not bear the smell of the Hottentots that drove my waggon.

Their dress is very simple,, most of them wear a sheep's skin thrown across their shoulders, and another over their loins, the hairy side being worn next the body in winter, and the other side  
in

in summer. These sheep-skins prepared, cover the body behind, but leave it almost entirely naked before. The women, by way of covering, use a short, square, and sometimes a double piece of skin, that reaches half way down their thighs, and the men a case of fox's skin, like a purse, tied with a thong about their bodies. The Gonaquas Hottentots and Caffres use such a dress of calf-skin, and their chiefs of tyger-skin.

Their legs are bare, and their feet for the most part without shoes; but round rings made of the hides of animals adorn their legs, especially those of the women, from the instep to the calf of the leg, and prevent them from being bitten by serpents. In time of need they likewise serve them for food, when they broil these rings and eat them.

Their heads are frequently without any covering at all; but sometimes they wear a conical skin-cap; and the women in some places make use of a broad wreath of Buffalo's skin, ornamented with small shells.

Their necks and waists are ornamented with different coloured glass beads, which they procure by barter from the Europeans. To the necklace they sometimes fasten a turtle-shell, in which they keep Bocku. The Caffres put Porcupine's quills into their ears (*Hystrix*), and some of the women that live farthest to the eastward, use ear-rings of copper, to set off their brown beauty.

The

The Caffres wear ivory rings, and frequently several of them on the left arm; and some, in default of these, wear rings of brass, or iron. All the Hottentots, but more especially the Caffres, set a great value upon shining plates of copper, brass, or iron, which they hang in their hair, or on other parts of the body.

They are all graziers, except the Boshiesmen, and are sometimes in possession of numerous herds of cattle, especially the Caffres and Namaquas people, upon whose domains the Europeans have not yet been able to make any encroachments. These subsist on their flocks and herds, and hunt different wild beasts, especially Buffaloes and wild goats of various sorts, (sometimes very large ones), with Sea-cows and Elephants. They live besides on the roots of several plants, such as Irises, Ixias, Moreas, Gladioluses, and others, the beans of the Guajacum afrum, &c. The men use likewise cow's milk, which they milk themselves, and the women sheep's milk. To quench their thirst, they mostly drink water, milk and water, and, when urged by necessity, chew Mesembryanthemums, Albucas, and other succulent herbs. The mens' business is to go to war, hunt, milk, kill the cattle, and fabricate arms; the womens', to look after the children, fetch wood, dig up bulbous roots, and dress the victuals. The meat

is eaten both ~~roasted~~ and boiled, but for the most part half raw, without salt, spices, or bread. They make a fire by rubbing two pieces of hard wood quickly against each other.

The Caffres are the only people in this part of Africa that apply themselves in the least to agriculture. They cultivate Caffre-corn (*Holcus*) beans, hemp, &c. The rest do not till the earth at all, except some few who now and then sow a handful of hemp.

Their huts are built with sprays of trees, which are fixed in the ground, and bent in arches, so as to make the hut round at top, and about four feet high. These are afterwards covered with mats made of rushes, and on one side an opening about two feet high is left at bottom, which serves the double purpose of a door and chimney, the fire-place being near the opening. Such huts as these, built in a circle of a greater or smaller extent according to circumstances, form a village, within which the cattle, at least the sheep, are kept in the night, and secured from beasts of prey. As long as the grass lasts on the spot they live there without removing; but as soon as it fails, or any one dies, the whole village removes to another place: so that the Hottentots, like the Laplanders and Arabians, are Nomades, or wandering shepherds. A few of them live together in one of these huts, and lie coiled up with  
their

their knees drawn up to their heads, dispersed around the internal walls of it.

The language, which frequently is almost the only thing that distinguishes the indolent Hottentots from the brute creation, is poor, unlike any other in the world, is pronounced with a clack of the tongue, and is never written.

With respect to household furniture, they have little or none. The same dress that covers a part of their body by day, serves them also for bedding at night. Their victuals are boiled in leathern sacks and water, with stones made red hot, but sometimes in earthen pots. Milk is kept in leathern sacks, bladders of animals, and baskets made of platted rushes, perfectly water-tight. These, a tobacco-pouch of skin, a tobacco-pipe of stone or wood, and their weapons, constitute the whole catalogue of their effects. Their defensive weapons against their enemies and wild beasts consist of darting-sticks (*Kirris*) javelins (*Affagay*) and bows with poisoned arrows.

To the use of intoxicating substances they are much addicted. From a decoction of certain indigenous roots and honey, they prepare an inebriating kind of mead. They are very fond of arrack and brandy, and take delight in smoking tobacco, either pure, or mixed with hemp, and, when they cannot procure these, wild *Dakka* (*Phlomis*) or the dung of the two-horned Rhinoceros,



noceros, or of Elephants. The inhabitants of the southern part of Africa contract marriage early, and with little ceremony. When the suitor has made his intentions known, and obtained the girl's and her parents' consent, a day is fixed for the wedding, which is solemnized by the priest belonging to the village, who besprinkles the bride and bridegroom with his urine. After that an ox or sheep is killed, according to the circumstances of the parties, and the company entertained; the men and women sitting in separate circles, according to their custom, and always squat on their heels, as they have neither chairs nor sofas. One circumstance however attending their weddings is highly laudable, which is, that though at other times they are much given to drunkenness, they never drink on this occasion; neither do they dance and play upon musical instruments.

To their new-born children they give a name, which is generally that of some wild or domestic animal.

A youth is not suffered to marry till he is made a man, which is at the age of eighteen; when the village master of the ceremonies besprinkles him with urine, and separates him from that time forward from his mother and other women.

Formerly the Hottentots, according to KOLBE, used castration. This operation was generally

generally performed, the left testicle being cut out, that they might not beget twins, and that they might be enabled to run with greater ease.

A Hottentot sometimes takes two wives, and it frequently happens that a woman marries two husbands, although adultery under certain circumstances is punished with death. A widow who marries a second time, must have the first joint of a finger cut off, and loses another joint for the third, and so on for each time that she enters into wedlock.

Idleness is so predominant amongst the greatest part of the Hottentots that few of the brutes surpass them in that vice. Some sleep out all their time and are only awakened by the urgent calls of hunger, that forces them at length to rise and seek for food. When they have killed any wild animal, they lay themselves round a fire in common, to broil their meat, eat, and sleep by turns, as long as there is any thing left to eat, and till hunger drives them from it again.

In consequence of this extreme supineness they have little or no religion. It should seem indeed that they were not intirely ignorant of the existence of a powerful supreme Being, and they appear also to acknowledge the immortality of the soul after its separation from the body; but they have no temples, pay no kind of worship to any divinity, and give themselves no thought about rewards or punishments after death. They

have much clearer notions of an evil spirit, whom they fear, believing him to be the occasion of sickness, death, thunder, and every calamity that befalls them.

At the new and full moon they dance and make merry; but it does not appear very probable that their rejoicing thus is any kind of religious ceremony, or that they worship the moon.

A small insect, an inconsiderable Grass-hopper, (*Mantis fausta*) is by many considered as an animal of a fortunate omen; but I never found that any worship was paid to it, nor could I learn it with a certainty from others.

Circumcision is a ceremony used by many, and may probably be of high antiquity, although not commonly practised at present.

Several barbarous usages and customs are still to be found amongst those who live in their native state of wildness, and without intercourse with the christians. Old and superannuated persons are buried alive, or else carried away to some cleft in the mountains with provision for a few days, where they are either starved to death, or fall a prey to some wild beast.

In like manner children are exposed and left to their fate on various occasions; as for instance, when a woman dies, either during her lying-in, or immediately after it, the child in such cases is buried along with the mother, as no one can  
bring

bring it up amongst people who have no notion of nurses. If a woman brings forth twins, and thinks herself not able to rear them both, one of them is exposed. If they are both boys, the strongest and most healthy is kept: if one of them is a girl, it is her lot to be exposed; as is likewise the fate of any one that comes a cripple into the world.

Such as live near the European colonists, bury their dead in the ground, while others lay them in the clefts of mountains or in caves. The corpse being taken out of the hut through a hole in the side, and not through the door, is wrapped up in the sheep-skin dress the defunct wore while living, and is carried away in hand by three or four bearers. A procession of men and women in two separate bodies follows with loud cries; after which if the deceased was a person of any property, some animal is killed and eaten.

They are very superstitious, and put great faith in witch-craft. If any one falls sick; they think that he has been bewitched; and consequently shriek and pommel him with their fists, in order to keep life in him, or make him well. If he dies, their cries increase, the corpse is buried in a few hours, and the whole village removes to some other place.

The eldest son is sole heir to his father's property.

In arts and sciences they are as rude and uncultivated as they are in every other respect. The Caffres are the only tribe among them that till the ground at all. The major part of them have herds of cattle. Some have neither house nor home, nor indeed any fixed abode whatever. The Namaquas Hottentots, who, in their country, have mountains that produce copper and iron ore, know how to extract these metals in the most simple manner, which they afterwards forge for use. Their traffic is not extensive: indeed it consists only in bartering certain commodities against others. They have therefore no money nor coin of any sort, neither do they stand in need of any.

To guard their herds, they employ very ugly, but bold and spirited dogs.

Greasy substances constitute the greatest dainties of the Hottentots. They drink the blubber of Sea-cows like water, and the tail of a sheep, which consists intirely of fat, they prefer to any other part.

They hunt both single and in parties. Every one hunts and shoots what he can for his own use; but general hunts are undertaken by whole villages; either against large troops of wild animals, or when they are annoyed by beasts of prey that commit ravages among their herds, on which

which occasion every man quits his hut, and goes out armed, as against a common enemy.

Their grand festivals are generally accompanied with singing, and different sorts of instrumental music, as also with dances, that are extremely singular, and indeed peculiar to themselves. They have likewise a droll uncommon ceremony of driving whole herds of sheep through the smoke, right across the fire, to secure them from the attacks of wild dogs.

In a people so deeply plunged in sloth, and so overwhelmed with filth, as the Hottentots actually are, one would not expect to find the least trace of pride. It is however to be found even among these, the most wretched of the human race; for they not only adorn their bodies with all manner of finery, as they conceive it to be; but when they are visited by strangers, paint their faces with various figures of brown and black paint.

Of the new year, a period which most nations and even the heathens themselves almost all over the face of the earth, observe and celebrate with more or less rejoicing and festivity, the Hottentots do not seem to have any knowledge, neither do they take the least account of the course of nature. The only thing they remark is, that every year they see the bulbous plants push out of the ground, blossom, and decay, and, according to this almanack, they reckon their own ages, which

nevertheless they themselves seldom or never know with any certainty. It is therefore in vain to try to ascertain their age; or to search for antique relicks and monuments; in order to discover the antiquity of the country, how long it has been peopled, whence its first inhabitants came; and what changes and revolutions it has undergone. The country has no ancient ruins, either of subverted palaces, demolished castles, or devastated cities. The people neither know the origin nor reason of the ceremonies and customs in use amongst them, and few of them can give an account of any thing that has happened before their father's time. Since the Europeans have begun to inhabit this angle of the southern part of Africa; the country has undergone many changes. The natives have by degrees, in part become extinct, in consequence of the ravages made by various epidemic diseases, and in part retreated farther up the country; and a colony of the children and progeny of Japhet has propagated and multiplied to a great extent in their place. In a country where, 150 years ago, among a vast number of other wild animals, the most savage beasts of prey reigned sovereign and triumphant; one may now for the most part travel safely without fear or dread; and where formerly herds only grazed, one now sees several Indian and most of our European seeds, cultivated, vineyards

vineyards and orchards laid out, and culinary vegetables planted. A multitude of tame animals has been imported hither from Europe, such as horses, cows, hogs and several kinds of fowls ; in like manner as many useful products of the vegetable kingdom, have been naturalized under the industrious hand of the colonists and a kind climate. The pease and beans here are very good. Asparagus, peaches, apricots, have a tolerable flavour, as have also apples (and especially rennets) plums, pears, oranges and straw-berries. The grapes as well as the raisins, and the wine that is made of them, are of different degrees of goodness, and sometimes excellent. Melons, water-melons, Gojavus, pomgranates, are also tolerably good ; but goose-berries, currants, cherries and nuts do not thrive. Mulberries, almonds, figs, walnuts, chesnuts and lemons, do not yield in point of goodness to the European. Esculent roots and culinary vegetables thrive in general well in this country, and often grow up superior to the European, from whence the seed of the greatest part of them is brought every year. Turneps, turnep-rooted cabbages, potatoes, alliaceous plants of every kind, fallads, cabbages, and especially cauliflowers, are cultivated therefore in great quantities, as also wheat, not only for the use of the inhabitants, but for the supply of the many ships that touch here in their way to and



from India, since the Christians first made a settlement at the Cape of Good Hope. Several shorter and longer journies have been made, from time to time, into the interior parts, both by individuals and on the Company's account, with a view to gain authentic intelligence of the country and its inhabitants. These journeys have been undertaken by different parties, some larger and some smaller, some to the northern and others to the south-east side of this angle of Africa. Those that have come to my knowledge are the following: in 1669, a journey was made to Saldahna bay, which was then for the first time taken possession of by the Dutch Company. In 1670, two serjeants, KRUYDHOF and CRUSE, were sent out to Mossel baay and Helena baay, which were at the same time taken possession of. In 1683, Ensign OLOF BERG made a journey to the country of the Namaquas, and in 1685 the governor SIMON VAN DER STEEL, with fifty-six Europeans, two Macassars, three slaves, and six burghers, equipped with two pieces of artillery, eight carts, seven waggons, (besides those belonging to the burghers, one boat and a great quantity of draught-oxen, horses, provision, powder, muskets and commodities for bartering, made a long voyage into the country of the Namaquas, as far as the tropics. This expedition had chiefly the copper mountains for its object, to examine whether the

the ore there was worth working, and whether there was sufficient wood and water for that purpose, or any harbour near at hand, from which the ore might have been brought in vessels. This journey lasted fifteen weeks.

During the time that the bartering traffic with the Hottentots was allowed the settlers, long journeys were frequently made into the interior parts of the country : as for instance, in the year 1702, by forty-five burghers with four waggons into the country of the Caffres ; in 1704, into that of the Namaquas, and in 1705, by thirty or forty farmers, each accompanied by his Hottentot, farther up into the same tract of country.

In 1705, the landroft STARRENBURG, made a journey by order of government, into the country of the Namaquas, particularly for the purpose of bartering for a large quantity of cattle for the use of the Company. He was accompanied by a corporal, and HARTOG a gardener, besides slaves and a great many Hottentots.

In the year 1761, governor TULBAGH sent to the northern side of the country, which I was now exploring, a caravan, consisting of seventeen christians, sixty-eight Hottentots, and fifteen waggons, which had been given in charge to a burgher of the name of HOP. On this same expedition were sent out, at the expence of the Company, BAINK a land surveyor, AUCE a gardener,

dener, and RYKVOET a surgeon, with three wag-gons, a large boat, powder, shot, iron, tobacco, &c. This caravan was sent out in consequence of a farmer who had travelled far into the country on this side, having given intelligence to the governor, that he had been told by a Hottentot of a people who lived farther up the country, and who wore linen clothes, were of a yellow colour, and went in and out of the mountains there, near a large river. Hence it was concluded that some Portuguese settlement was established on the coast, which government ought to find out. Part of the company set out from the Cape on the 16th of July, and the rest joined them near Olyfant's rivier in thirty-one deg. forty min. lat. and thirty-eight deg. eighteen min. long. They proceeded on their journey till the 6th of December, 120  $\frac{1}{2}$  miles due north from the Cape, to twenty-six deg. eighteen min. lat. and thirty-seven deg. thirty-seven min. long. from whence they returned and arrived at the Cape on the 27th of April, 1762, without having discovered the yellow nation they had been told of. This is the longest journey ever attempted by Europeans towards this side, where the country is very dry, deficient in water, and mountainous, and the roads sometimes very stony. On this journey the governor had not sent any of the military, who before, very little to his satisfaction, had made an expensive

expensive journey to the eastward; but only burghers and farmers. This journey, however, did not terminate so well as might have been expected, the private interest of individuals having laid many obstacles in the way. Want of water and stony roads without doubt made the voyage both difficult and troublesome; as the feet of the draught-oxen were greatly hurt, and many of them died in consequence of this circumstance; but the permission which the farmers had from government to barter with the Hot-tentots, during the journey, for fresh beasts, without any expence to them, and of which they made a very imprudent use, may have contributed to render this journey abortive.

In fact, the farmers, through motives of covetousness, and a wish to lighten the waggons of the heavy load of iron they had brought with them for the purpose of barter, began to traffic extensively at their first setting out, instead of reserving this advantageous trade for their return. In consequence of this procedure the caravan was overstocked with a drove of oxen, numbers of which were obliged to be left behind on account of the heaviness of the roads, while the rest served greatly to diminish the scanty supply of water for the oxen that were necessary for drawing the waggons along. It is true, the vice-governor KLOPPENBORG had also a few years ago, in company with a land-surveyor, a merchant, and

a surgeon, made a journey to the northward of the Cape; but, as this expedition did not extend beyond the bounds of the colony, it was of no consequence, nor in any other way remarkable.

Beautiful as the country is to the eastward, fertile, abounding in grass, and well peopled, it is equally dry, barren, uncultivated, and uninhabited to the northward of the Cape, and the farther you proceed, the more barren and desert-like it grows.

After passing three or four ridges of mountains to the northward, you arrive at a country something higher than the Cape shore, but lower than the vallies which lie between the ridges of mountains you have just left behind. This land is called Carrow, or Carrow-field. It seems to go like a broad belt over the whole of this angle of Africa, from the sea-side at the north-western end, to the ocean on the south-eastern side. I do not suppose the breadth to be alike all over; but in some places it requires six whole days (or rather long nights) journies. The sun is quite scorching here in the day-time, and the nights are rather cold. The great want of water here for the space of eight months, during which time not a drop of rain falls, together with the aridity of the soil, is the cause that this desert produces nothing but a few herbs and bushes with thick fleshy leaves, such as *Craffulas*, *Mesembryanthemum*, *Cotyledons*, *Cacalias*, *Stapelias*; and that neither man  
nor

nor beast can live there in summer, as also that no grass can grow, nor any useful grain be cultivated. The soil consists of clay impregnated with iron ochre and a great quantity of sea-salt.

During the time I spent in travelling through different parts of this desert, I did not see a single sparrow, much less any quadruped there, excepting rats in holes in the earth, which probably can subsist a long time without water, and quench their thirst with the succulent and saltish leaves produced by the bushes.

After crossing this extensive and dry desert, which to the eye appears very nearly level, or at most rising a little and slowly to the northward, you encounter a very high mountain, the top of which it would take almost a whole day's journey to reach. This Roggeveld mountain has very little earth on it, exhibiting in most places the smooth and naked rock; neither does it slope off like other mountains, but is for the most part level, and extends in this manner so far to the northward, that the end of it is not known to the colonists. The climate at this height, although several degrees nearer than the Cape to the sun and the Equator, is not only cold, but the cold is so intense that the ground in winter is for a long time covered with snow, hail, and ice.

According to my usual practice the preceding years, as soon as I arrived in town, I made it my first

first care to send to Europe, by the returning ships, the collections I had made during my last tour.

The vessel too which had been sent the preceding year to Madagascar, in order to purchase slaves for the Company's service, was now arrived. Amongst other articles which some of the crew brought with them, were in particular a large quantity of the *Cypræa tigris*, a handsome shell, which is used for making snuff-boxes, another of the *Buccinum rufum*, and of the creatures known by the name of Madagascar cats, *Lemur catta*. With respect to the latter, I was curious to see whether the eyes were such as the late Professor LINNÆUS has described them, viz. with one pupil oblong and the other round. In this both the pupils were round and very small in the day time, like those of other animals. This species of Lemur somewhat resembles a cat, with its long tail, diversified with black and white ringlets; it is very nimble, and when tied to an upright pole, up and down on which it runs on all fours with the greatest celerity imaginable, affords a very amusing spectacle.

M. MELK, a rich and wealthy farmer, had, some years before, built a house of stone, below the town near the beach, lower down than the lion's-tail, under pretext of using it for a store-house; but when it was finished, he made a present of it to the Lutheran congregation here for a church,

a church, after having furnished it with suitable windows. Happy would it be if the congregation, which is numerous, could likewise have a Lutheran clergyman of its own, and hear the word of God preached in its original purity, and at the same time enjoy the benefit of the sacraments.

I never knew disorders in the throat more common or refractory than they are at the Cape, and especially in the town. They are occasioned by the sudden changes of weather from heat to cold. The glands of the throat swell with such violence, that the patient is in danger of being suffocated, and they almost always come to supuration. Some are infested with this malady several times in a year, and neither sex is exempted from it.

The sides of the streets in the town were planted with great numbers of European oaks (*Quercus Robur*) which served both to adorn and shade the houses.

The smoking of tobacco in the streets was now severely prohibited, as in consequence of it fires had broke out here, as has been the case in other places.

The sky of the southern hemisphere wore an aspect in a great measure strange to me. Some of the known constellations had a different situation from what they have north of the Equator, and some were absolutely missing. Charles's-wain, which



which in winter so truly and faithfully points out to the farmer how far the night is advanced, was here sunk below the horizon, and the Cape clouds, as two dark spots in the firmament are called, seemed to be a similar token to the inhabitants here. I was extremely sorry, however, that I had not taken more pains to learn so noble a science, and would with pleasure have exchanged for one single constellation all those definitions with which I had formerly burthened my memory, together with a great number of words in the dead languages, the learning of which had taken up the best part of my younger days, that might have been better employed in studying this divine science.

I now received from Amsterdam not only a sum of money, but also letters of recommendation to the Governor-general VANDER PARRA at Batavia, in consequence of which I had to prepare for a voyage to the East Indies, and as far as the empire of Japan. In the three years I had passed in the southern parts of Africa, I had travelled over as much both of the desert and inhabited part of the country as the nature of my equipment, which was below mediocrity, would admit. I had also, during the same time, received many favors from the governor and other gentlemen in the administration, as likewise much friendship both from my own countrymen and the

the other inhabitants of the place, and could, therefore, not without the greatest gratitude and heart-felt acknowledgment, recollect the many kindnesses they had shewn me, which, as long as I live, I shall never forget.

But, previous to my departure, I had the good fortune to get acquainted with M. HOLMBERG, a worthy countryman of mine, and one of the council, who was on his voyage homeward from Surat, where for several years he had been in the service of the Dutch East India Company, to the great satisfaction of his superiors, and had acquired such a knowledge of commerce as few possess, or know how to value. This gentleman honoured me with his particular friendship, and also furnished me with letters of recommendation to M. RADERMACHER, one of the council at Batavia, which proved of much greater utility to me than I had reason to expect.

---

 VOYAGE TO JAVA, 1775.
 

---

ON the 2d of March, 1775, I left the Cape that was so dear to me, and (not without the most tender regret at taking leave of so many friends) embarked for Batavia on board the Loo, commanded by Captain BERG, in the capacity of surgeon-extraordinary.

On board the same ship sailed also a young man, who gave himself out for a Prince of the imperial family, and Count of LEUWENSTEIN, who unfortunately had been kidnapped and sent off to the Cape, and was now obliged to accompany us to Java; the government at the Cape not daring, (for reasons to me unknown) to send him back to Holland. According to his own account, he had arrived with his servant at *Nimeguen*, and where he lodged at a kidnapper's, who  
had

had robbed him of his property that was contained in a large trunk, and had locked him up for three days, after which he had sent him to a kidnapper in Amsterdam. At this latter place he with his servant were locked up fast, as prisoners, for the space of three weeks, and at length sent to the Texel, without having previously been at the India-house, or passed any kind of muster. His servant had, during the voyage, suffered much by sickness, and he himself had enlisted for a soldier; all that was left of his property being only a suit of red and a valuable ring. He had been laid up sick during the whole voyage, and in this condition was put into the hospital at the Cape, where he happened to be known and recognized by some of his countrymen. The government at the Cape, however, after having examined into his case, gave orders that he should make the voyage to Batavia as a passenger, and dine at the officers' table.

We continued our voyage to the southward with a fair wind to lat. forty deg. after which we steered to the eastward, when our watches lost above a quarter of an hour in the four and twenty, in proportion as the wind increased and as we sailed quick.

On the 5th of April, in the afternoon, saw *St. Paul*. The night following we passed between  
P 2 that

that island and the isle of Amsterdam, which latter we had still in sight on the 6th.

The Dutch ale, which the company sends out for the use of the officers, was now divided between them, after the second mate's proposal had been rejected of selling it and dividing the money. Wine and ale, and other articles, which the Company sends out for the use of the officers' table, are seldom used at meals, as they ought to be, but are either totally embezzled by the captain and chief mate; or, if they are given out, it is either after they are damaged, or else exchanged for worse articles of the same kind. This circumstance renders it necessary for every one to supply himself with several articles, concerning which on board of other ships he need not give himself any trouble.

On the 2d of May we saw *Mons* island, and on the 3d, discovered land from the top-mast-head, which, on the day following, we could likewise see from the deck.

The nearer we approached to a warmer climate, the more did the number of our sick increase. The major part were afflicted with the scurvy, and several had got rheumatisms, from the change of climate.

At length we came in sight of the island of *Java*, and were highly pleased to arrive at a country which was the main object of the wishes of many,

many, but which was also destined to be the grave of the major part of them.

The mountains of Java, as well as those of the surrounding islands, were all cloathed with verdure and overgrown with wood, presenting to the eye a pleasing and lively prospect. Those mountains which lay farther up the country were here, as in other places, always higher, and the land itself rose gradually higher from the water-side.

On the 9th we passed *Klapper* island.

The streights of *Sunda* we entered between *Java* and *Prince island*. Here we had a calm, which greatly retarded us. On every side we saw scattered islands of different sizes; the water was often very shallow, and in the night we let go the anchor.

On the 12th, the supercargo was fetched away by a yacht; together with the Company's letters and other papers, in order to be dispatched to *Batavia*. In consequence of such procedure, the government is always informed of every thing before the vessel gets into the road.

On the 14th, several Javanese came in their small boats, or *Praws*, to the ship. These praws had a deck or floor of loose planks, and under it a great many partitions were made, in which they carried with them for sale, bread, eggs, pine-apples, cocoa-nuts, pisang, gojavus, salad, radishes, and other fruits and culinary vegetables.

Some of them staid in the boats, in order to throw up the articles they sold; whilst others came on board to receive what was thrown up, together with the money for it. It was no unpleasing sight to see how dexterous they were at their business, and how nimbly they caught the eggs without letting any of them fall. These Javanese were very circumspect with respect to the money which they received, and endeavoured to get new coin that had not lost its gloss by wear.

The ship's crew was cautioned not to eat too much fruit, or too many greens, and was more particularly desired to refrain from that delicious but unwholesome fruit the pine-apple, as this fruit would be very apt to produce a diarrhoea or dysentery, in habits like theirs infested with the scurvy, and in stomachs not accustomed to much diet.

During our voyage through the *streights*, we very often let go the anchor and hove it up again; we were obliged to let it fall for want of wind, that the ship might not be driven astern by the stream.

We sailed past *Bantam*, which lay on our right. This is the residence of a king of that country, who solely and intirely depends on the Dutch East India Company. The town is fortified, and has a citadel with a garrison of 300 Dutch soldiers, who are kept there at the Company's expence,

pence, under pretext of being the king's life-guards, but are set in fact to keep a watchful eye over him, that he may not undertake any thing against the Company's interest, or sell any pepper to other nations.

The island of *Java* is about 140 leagues in length from E. to W. and from 20 to 25 leagues in breadth. It lies in six deg. south latitude from N. to S. and about 124 deg. E. longitude.

On the 18<sup>th</sup>, we arrived safe in Batavia road, and to our great joy let go the anchor there; the road is extensive, with a muddy bottom. The ships lie not very far from the town, up to which you sail in boats along the river. The road is not very deep, and this, as well as the water near the shore, is rendered shallower every year.

The day following I went on shore with the captain, and put up at the *Heeren Logement* (as it is called, or *Gentlemens' hotel*) which is a very large house for the accommodation of strangers.

On one side of the river, and near its mouth, stands an edifice called a Water castle, intended to command the road; this was at that time very much out of repair, so that large pieces of it fell daily into the river, and were carried away by the stream.

The town is strongly fortified, intirely surrounded with walls, and furnished with several gates, near which a number of soldiers lie on guard, and which are locked at night. The



walls, however, are not particularly strong, nor very thick. The citadel is situated at one end of the town, and near the sea-side, is tolerably large, and contains the town-hall, a dwelling-house, a warehouse, and several other necessary buildings. Without as well as within the town there are canals, the sides of which are lined with brick. Through these boats pass, both large and small, and convey pot-herbs, fruit, and other articles for sale, to different parts of the town, as also fresh grass for horses. The canals are seldom above four feet in depth, and empty their water into the road.

The town is remarkably large and well-built; the houses are mostly of stone, and are elegant, with spacious rooms, which are open to the free air, in order that they may be refreshing and cool in this burning climate. The streets are not paved; as the stones being heated by the scorching rays of the sun, would hurt the feet of the slaves, who go bare-footed, as also of the horses, which here are not shod. A row of flag-stones, however, is frequently laid for the accommodation of the Europeans.

Here, just as in Amsterdam, is to be found a mixture of all nations and languages. There are some of almost every nation in India, who carry on a profitable traffic in this capital of the East Indies.

Exclusive of the Javaneſe, who are the original inhabitants of the iſland, the Chineſe conſtitute the major part of its inhabitants, and live not only in the town and its ſuburbs, but alſo in the country. Theſe people carry on, like the Jews in Holland, a very extenſive trade, and cultivate moſt of the arts and handicraft profeſſions. They dreſs for the moſt part here in the ſame manner as in China; in frocks, with their heads ſhaved, and only a round ſpot left at the crown, the hair of which is platted into a long queue.

It is true, Dutch is the current language of the Europeans here; but the ſlaves and other Indian nations chiefly uſe the Malay tongue, which is ſo common all over the eaſtern and ſome of the weſtern part of the Eaſt Indies, that a man can make his way with it every where, as is the caſe with the French language in Europe.

I had already ſent off from the ſhip the letters of recommendation which I brought with me, viz. to the governor-general VAN DER PARRA, from the burgomaſter TEMMINK in Amſterdam, to M. RADERMACHER, one of the council, from M. HOLMBERG, and to Dr. HOFEMAN, from Dr. LE SNEUR at the Cape. My firſt buſineſs now was to wait upon them all, and they ſeemed to vie with each other in ſhewing me every poſſible attention, friendſhip, and favor, which will ever endear their names to me.

As

As the governor-general gives audience, receives reports from all persons in office, and issues orders every day between seven and eight o'clock in the morning, before the heat becomes insupportable, and as I did not get on shore before noon, I could not have the honor to wait upon him till four o'clock in the afternoon, when he received me in the most friendly manner, and assured me of his protection and assistance in every thing I should want for my intended voyage to Japan. The governor lived now at his country house at a small distance from the town, where the air is fresher and wholesomer.

The same evening I waited on Dr. HOFFMAN, but did not find him at home. The next morning, before I went out, he called on me at my inn, gave me an invitation to live with him and make use of his table, and carried me in his coach to the Company's dispensary, where he lived and which he had under his care. Besides the letter of recommendation from Dr. LE SUEUR at the Cape, I had borrowed a sum of money from that gentleman to pay the debts I had contracted there, which sum I had engaged to pay to Dr. HOFFMAN out of my salary which I was to receive at Batavia. From this circumstance the gentleman saw clearly that I was not one of those travellers who had amassed Indian riches, and that during my three years stay at the Cape I had  
 been

been more successful in accumulating plants and natural curiosities than gold. This he also mentioned to M. RADERMACHER, whose physician he was, and this gentleman immediately gave him fifty ducats for me, before I had had time to wait on him, and even before he was become personally acquainted with the man, for the narrowness of whose circumstances he felt so nobly.

The many, and I might almost say daily, visits I paid this gentleman, whose table I was obliged to use at least twice a week, gave me an opportunity of observing, with pleasure and satisfaction, his elevated mind, and his great zeal for the arts and sciences, which he not only cherished and admired in others, but also himself cultivated and possessed, in a country where otherwise Mammon is the sole idol and object of their worship.

As the ships destined for Japan were not to set sail till after the expiration of three months, I seized the opportunity of getting information as well concerning the country, and more especially its natural history, as with respect to the profitable trade of the Company; Batavia being the capital and centre of their commerce between Holland and their numberless factories, offices, and settlements in India.

In the mean time I was, on the first meeting of the council, appointed surgeon to the largest of the ships destined for Japan, called the Admiral's ship,

ship, and the chief commissioner of commerce who was to go this year to the same place, received orders to retain me there, and to allow me to accompany him as physician of the embassy on his journey to the imperial court, whither he was to go in quality of ambassador during his stay in that country.

Through the kind attention of M. RADERMACHER, I had, for a companion and guide in my botanical excursions, a well behaved sensible Javanese, who was pretty well acquainted with the Malay names of trees and herbs, and their medicinal virtues and uses, amongst his countrymen, which he always communicated to me, and which I noted down in my pocket book.

All the streets in the town were planted on each side with large trees, which, in the heat of the day, afforded a cool and refreshing shade. These trees were generally the *Inophyllum calophyllum* and *calaba*, *Canarium commune*, and some others still scarcer. In the yards I saw very high and thick trees of the *Guetarda speciosa*. The largest tree I ever saw was a *Casuarina equisetifolia*, which stood near the rivulet, and extended its spreading branches to a vast distance.

Although the heat, as appears from Fahrenheit's thermometer, which generally stands between eighty and eighty-six degrees, is not so very intense,

tense; it is nevertheless exceedingly troublesome and disagreeable; first, from the situation of the town which lies low near the water-side, and then, in consequence of the exhalations from the sea and bogs stagnating the air, and from there being little or no wind to disperse these vapours and purify the atmosphere. Towards the evening indeed a light breeze springs up from the land, but of little or no signification. Hence one has but a weary life of it here; as it is impossible to be out or at least to walk between nine and four o'clock in the day, without being quite overcome with heat and dissolved in sweat, though one's dress be ever so light and airy.

The clothes worn by the Europeans are made exactly in the European fashion; but the waistcoat and breeches are generally of white cotton, or of black satin, and the frocks of thin Indian silk. Though the whole dress sometimes does not weigh above a pound or two, yet one's coat is a heavy burthen in this hot climate; and the violent perspiration renders it necessary for one to change one's shirt and drawers once or twice a day, although they be made of fine cotton, which absorbs the perspirable matter.

All the people in office, after they have been at the governor-general's levee, whither they go at a very early hour, transact their business, it is true, between nine and twelve o'clock; but then it

it is within doors, where, it is in some degree cool. And, if they are obliged to be out during that time, they use coaches. These coaches are small and light, furnished with thin silk curtains instead of windows, which keep out the rays of the sun and admit the air. The horses used here are for the most part small. Some content themselves with one horse chaises.

As in every other thing, so likewise in their equipages, great attention is paid to etiquette, and none, except such as are of a certain rank, are allowed gilt carriages; others that are inferior to these use painted, or even plain, coaches. The gentlemen of the council have running footmen.

Many of the Europeans here, it is true, wear wigs, but most of them wear their own hair, and that in general quite plain and without any frisure; and a powdered head is seldom seen in this country.

The ladies here wear neither caps nor hats; but tie up their hair, which is only anointed with oil and has no powder in it, in a large knot on the crown of their heads; and adorn it with jewels and wreaths of odoriferous flowers.

In the evenings when the ladies pay visits to each other, they are decorated in a particular manner about the head with a wreath of flowers of the *Nyctanthes sambac*, run up on a thread. These flowers are brought every day fresh to town

town for sale. The smell of them is inconceivably delightful, like that of orange and lemon flowers; the whole house is filled with the fragrant scent, enhancing, if possible, the charms of the ladies company and of the society of the fair sex.

In so scorching a climate as this we cannot wonder, that a general custom prevails amongst the Europeans, of taking a nap for a couple of hours in the afternoon during the hottest part of the day. At this time a slave generally stands before the sofa, who, with a large fan, keeps off the gnats, and procures his master an agreeable and cool repose.

The days and nights are nearly of equal length the whole year round, and the sun passing almost vertically over head, rises and sets about six o'clock morning and evening. And as the sun sets perpendicular, here is no pleasing appearance of twilight after sun set, as there is in the northern countries. As soon as the sun is below the horizon it grows immediately dark, and the air is cooler throughout the whole night.

The great pleasure which the coolness of the evenings would otherwise afford, is indeed here almost totally destroyed by the uneasiness and trouble which the musquitoes generally occasion. These insects not only disturb one's repose by a continual buzzing in one's ears, but their sting is venomous and occasions large tumors, in consequence of which the face and hands



hands are totally disfigured, and sometimes a temporary blindness ensues. This circumstance is attended with another inconvenience, which is, that the doors and windows of the bed-chambers are obliged to be kept shut, or, if they are left open, the musquitoes must be driven out in the evening. It is remarkable, that strangers are more than others liable to be pestered by these musquitoes, and suffer more from their sting; but, after a few weeks stay in the country, they are less persecuted by them. The musquitoes either must find their scorbutic fluids more relishing, or else their saline and foul humours must occasion a greater swelling.

The bed-clothes consist generally of a matrafs, some few pillows, a sheet, and a counterpane of fine cotton.

In the evenings, from six to nine, parties are formed among the Europeans throughout the whole town, who then banish their cares by conversation, incessant smoaking, and a good glass of European wine, generally red. Every one calls on his friend without invitation; and, as soon as the clock strikes nine, each retires to his respective home, unless he is asked to stay to supper. When a gentleman goes to pay a visit he generally has a coat, wig, hat, and sword on, a stick in his hand, and is attended by a slave who carries a large umbrella. As soon as the usual compliments

compliments are passed he takes off his wig, and puts on his shorn head a thin white cotton night-cap; after which he takes off his coat, and gives his sword, hat, and stick, to his slave, who carries them home again. The evening is then spent on an elevated platform within the steps and on the outside of the house. The first reception is generally a glass of Dutch ale, after which the health of every person in company is drank round, till each has emptied his bottle, or fourteen glasses, and sometimes more, but seldom less. If a stranger should happen to come in at such times, he is always welcome. Sometimes a card party is formed. When it strikes nine, one or more slaves arrive, if it be dark, with torches, to light their master home.

Hospitality is in great esteem here. The better sort of people keep open table once or twice a week, to which both the invited and not invited are welcome. A stranger, who is to stay a short time, needs only hire a small house, and buy a slave to attend him. And, after having formed one or more acquaintances, he needs not take much care about food, because, besides having free access to his patron's table, he will always be asked to dinner if he pays a visit to any body between eleven and twelve o'clock. At this time the place-men return home from their offices, when they take a whet either of arrack, geneva,

geneva, or white French wine, or else Japanese sacki.

Although I lived at Dr. HOFFMAN's house, and had free access to his table, I was obliged twice a week to dine with M. RADERMACHER, at whose table there was a select company of most of the gentlemen in office, who had acquired in Europe any remarkable degree of knowledge in some useful science.

The water is not very wholesome nor good to drink, being impregnated with saline particles, which generally occasion diarrhœas, and sometimes even the bloody flux, in strangers who are newly arrived and afflicted with the scurvy. The inhabitants of the town, therefore, let it stand to settle for some time in large Japanese earthen jars, after which they plunge red-hot iron bars in it, when it may be drank without any bad consequences, and is for the most part used for making tea or coffee, or drunk mixed with red wine.

The suburbs, which lie to the land side, are very large and handsome, and are inhabited by Europeans, as well as Chinese and other Indian nations.

Somewhat farther up the country stands a great number of pleasure-houses, with the finest gardens to them, where the most respectable and wealthy part of the inhabitants pass their leisure hours,

hours, the air being here more pure and wholesome than in the town. At several of these houses I saw large earthen vessels filled with water, in which several beautiful gold fish, displaying their resplendent forms, glide sportively along under that singular herb the *Pistia stratiotes*, which had been planted there in order to afford the fishes shade. This herb, the roots of which do not take first hold in the ground, I saw in great plenty floating in all the pools and ditches.

The Europeans are commonly waited on by slaves from several Indian islands, of whom they keep great numbers in their houses, as the heat of climate will not permit two slaves to do as much as one at the Cape. The ladies especially are attended by a great number of female slaves, and seldom pay a visit without a whole retinue of these attendants.

The Javanese, the original inhabitants of the country, are pretty tall, of a yellow complexion, and their lineaments not disagreeable. They are not suffered to be made slaves of, but are a free people, governed by their own emperor, kings, and governors. They speak a language different from the Malay, and for the most part profess the doctrine of Mahomet, which is kept up among them by their own national priests, of whom some have visited Mecca, and others not.

Besides Dutch, the language in current use here

is the Malay, which is a dialect of the Arabic, and is written with Arabic characters. Into this language the bible is translated, various vocabularies and grammars have been drawn up, and prayer books and other books of a religious nature written in it. The language is easy to learn and to speak; quite simple and artless, and pleasing to the ear. The Company has built a church, and keeps priests in the town, for the different nations who understand this language and profess the Christian religion. The Company likewise keeps in its service a translator both of the Malay and the Javanese language. A kind of broken Portuguese is also spoken here, as well as in most of the Indian settlements, where the Portuguese used formerly to trade, and whither they had diffused their language; on which account there is still a Portuguese church and congregation in the town, besides one supported at the Company's expence, to which a number of black Christians resort, who have several doctrinal books printed in that language.

The Malay books that I could procure, were the following:

Malaica Collectanea Vocabularia, or *Malay Dictionary*, Pars I. Batavia, 1707, 4to.

Dictionaryum Malaico-Latinum & Latino-malaicum opera & Studio Davidis Hex, Bataviæ, 1707, 4to. *A Malay and Latin, and Latin and Malay Dictionary.*

Dictionaryum

Dictionary of te Woord ende Spraak Boek in de Duytsche en de Maleysche Tale, F. de H. Batavia, 1707, 4to. *a Dutch and Malay Dictionary.*

Tweede Deel van de Collectanea Malaica Vocabularia, Batavia, 1708, 4to. *Contains two Malay Dictionaries printed together.*

Maleische Spraak-Kunst; or *A Malay Grammar*, by GEORGE HENDRIC WERNDLY. Amsterdam, 1726, 8vo.

Elkitâb, itu, Segala Surat, Perdijandjian lama dan baharuw, Amsterdam, 1733, 4to. *Or the Holy Bible translated into the Malay language. The New Testament follows, bound up with it in the same volume, printed in 1731.*

Sj J X R Segala Mafmur p Dâûd, or *David's Psalms*. Amsterdam, 1735, 4to.

Ta X Limu-l Dini'l Mefe H H i ji, ijâ itu, Pang 'adjaran 'agama. Amsterdam, 1735, 4to.

Nieuwe Woordenschat in Neder duitfch, Maleidsch en Portugeesch, Batavia, 1780, 8vo. *A Dutch, Malay, and Portuguese Dictionary.*

The Portuguese books which came to my hands, were the following:

Do Vehlo Testamento, o Primeiro Tomo, Batavia, 1748, 8vo.

Do Vehlo Testamento, o Segundo Tomo, Batavia, 1753, 8vo.

O Novo Testamento, Batavia, 1773, 8vo.

Catechismo. Colombo, 1778, 8vo.

Os CL. Psalms David, or *The Portuguese Psalm book set to Music, used in India*, printed at Colombo, 8vo: *The latest edition is that of 1778*, and was sent to me from Batavia after my return home. All these printed books in the Malay and Portuguese tongue, I presented to the Royal Academy at Upsal, in whose library they are kept, as also several other scarce and valuable books, printed in the Cingalese, Malay, and Tamullish languages.

The Malay language being absolutely necessary to such as intend to stay for any length of time in India, and especially to those who are to travel through several places in that country, it is indispensable for every stranger to make it his study, as he cannot even have a slave to attend upon him, before he has learned the most common words of it. My first care, therefore, at Batavia was to learn this language, and, for the better assisting of my memory, to form a small vocabulary of such words as I supposed would most commonly occur. This small dictionary is not very extensive, but may perhaps be of use to such as in their voyage to China touch at Java, or other places; and I have thought proper to insert it here, in hopes either to give pleasure, or render service to those who have some knowledge of other oriental languages.

A

ABOVE	-	-	Diatas
Afraid	-	-	Takkot
Again	-	-	Kombali
—— to get back again			Dappat kombali
to Agree with		-	Jadi samaratta
Alone	-	-	Sandiri
Alfo	-	-	Ratta
Altogether, every one	-		Samonja
Angry	-	-	Jahat
Animal	-	-	Binatang
to Answer	-	-	Menjaut
Arm, coat sleeve		-	Pundak
Askes	-	-	Aba
to Ask, to question		-	Tanja
—— to desire		-	Minta
to Attend upon		-	Jaga
Aunt	-	-	Bibi
Avaricious	-	-	Kikir
Awry	-	-	Mara guscar



## B

Bank of a river	Pingir
to Baptize -	Kria farani
Bafon, flop-bafon	"Mankock
Battle -	Prang
to Be, he is -	Ada, dia, ada
To Bear, to carry	Pikol
Beast -	Binatang
Beard -	Jingot
to Become -	Tinjal
Bed, bedstead	Tempat tidor
Behind -	Diblakkan
to Bend -	Menjumba
Beneath -	Dibauwa
to Begin -	Mulai
to Believe -	Pertjaja
Better -	Lebi bai
Big -	Besar
to Bind -	Ikat
Bird, bird's nest	Burong, ruma burong
to Bite -	Pigit
Bitter -	Pait
Black -	Ittam
Bladder -	Tjop
to Bleed, let blood	Kular darat
Blind -	Buta
Blood -	Dara
Blue -	Biru

Bone	-	-	Tulang
Body	-	-	Badang
Bosom	-	-	Panko
Brain	-	-	Ottaknia
Brafs	-	-	Tambaga Koning
Bread	-	-	Rotti
to Break	-	-	Pitja
to Break upon the wheel	-	-	Pukkul biffi
Breath	-	-	Napas
Breeches	-	-	Tjelana
to Brew	-	-	Jambatan
Bride	-	-	Panganting
Bride-groom	-	-	Tunangan
Bridge	-	-	Somor
to Bring, to bring hither	-	-	Bauwa
to Bring, or breed up	-	-	Piara
Bristle	-	-	Dada
Broad	-	-	Lebar
Broom	-	-	Sapapo
Brother	-	-	Sudana laki
Buffalo	-	-	Banting
to Bury	-	-	Tanam
to Burn	-	-	Angus
to Build a house	-	-	Kria ruma
Butter	-	-	Mantega
Button	-	-	Kantjing
to Buy	-	-	Bili
By degrees	-	-	Abifitu nanti

## C

to Call	-	-	Pargil
Camel	-	-	Onta
Candle	-	-	Liling
Candle-stick	-	-	Tampat liling
Cannon	-	-	Marian
Capacious	-	-	Lebar
Capon	-	-	Ajam Kabiri
Cards	-	-	Pendek
to take Care of	-	-	Simpang
Carpenter	-	-	Tukan kajo
Carry, bring hither	-	-	Bauwa
to Carry, to bear	-	-	Pikol
to Cast	-	-	Saling
to Cast out	-	-	Lempar, buang
Castle	-	-	Benteng
Cat	-	-	Kotjing
Cavern, Hole	-	-	Lobang
Cause, Occasion	-	-	Jangdern pandanja
to Cease, end	-	-	Suda
Century	-	-	Salamanja
Chair	-	-	Karoffi
Chalk	-	-	Kapor hollandia
to Change	-	-	Tukkar
Cheefe	-	-	Kas
Cheap	-	-	Mura
Chest	-	-	Petti
to Chew	-	-	Mama

Child	-	-	Beranak
Child-bed	-	-	Tampat tidor beranak
to Choose	-	-	Pili
Church	-	-	Mesigit
Cinnamon	-	-	Kajomanis
to Cleave, to Split	-	-	Beladua
to Climb, climb up	-	-	Najik
to Clothe	-	-	Pakki
Clothes	-	-	Pakkian
Cloves	-	-	Tjinke
Coarse	-	-	Kassar
Coach	-	-	Padate
Cock	-	-	Ajam lakj lakj
Colour	-	-	Dinta
Comb	-	-	Sisir
to Come	-	-	Dattang
to Command	-	-	Suru
Company	-	-	Sobat Sobat
Comrade	-	-	Tanan
to Concern	-	-	Faduli
to Confide	-	-	Pertjaja
Cook	-	-	Tukan-massak
to Cook, or dress victuals	-	-	Massak
Cool	-	-	Arang
Copper	-	-	Tambaga
Corner	-	-	Ujong
Courage	-	-	Tiappe
Countenance	-	-	Mukka
to Count, to reckon	-	-	Bilang
to Cover	-	-	Selimo
Corpse	-	-	Banke

Cow	-	-	Sampi
Crippled	-	-	Pintjang
Crocodile	-	-	Buaja
Crooked	-	-	Blako
to Cry	-	-	Manangi
to Curtsy	-	-	Menjumba
to Cut	-	-	Pottong

## D

to Dance	-	Mingibing
Dark	-	Glapp
Dark (thick) weather		Hari glapp
to Darn	-	Tiffi
Daughter	-	Anak prompuang
Day	-	Hari
Dead	-	Maut
Deaf	-	Tuli
Dear, not cheap		Mahal
Deep	-	Dalam
Deformed (maimed)		Pintjang
a Defart	-	Utan
to Delire, request		Minta
to Die	-	Matti
to Dig	-	Korek tanna
Diligent	-	Radjing
Dirty, dirt	-	Kotor tai
Disorder, not in order		Banjier

Ditch

Ditch	-	-	Kuntji
to Divide	-	-	Bagi
Dog	-	-	Anjing
to Do one's needs	-	-	Barrak
Door	-	-	Pinto
Double, twice	-	-	Dua kali
Dough	-	-	Tupong
Dove	-	-	Burung dara
to Drag, to carry	-	-	Pikol
to Dream	-	-	Minimpi
a Dream	-	-	Jari befar
to Drefs	-	-	Pakki
Drink	-	-	Minum
to be Drowned	-	-	Mattj di aijer
Drunk	-	-	Makkak
to Dry	-	-	Kring
Dumb	-	-	Bado

## E

Ear	-	-	Koping
Early, too early	-	-	Siang, talalu liang
Earthquake	-	-	Gojang tanna
to Eat	-	-	Makkan
Egg	-	-	Tellor
to Embrace	-	-	Polok
Emperor	-	-	Sufutunang
Empty	-	-	Coffong
to Endeavour	-	-	Mentjoba
to Endure	-	-	Tan

Enough

Enough	-	-	Sampe
Entrails	-	-	Uffus
Even	-	-	Keper
Evening, afternoon	-	-	Sore
Every where	-	-	Dimanna manna
Excuse	-	-	Ampon
Eye	-	-	Matta

## F

Face, countenance	-	-	Mukka
to Fall	-	-	Jatu
Father	-	-	Bappa
Favour, kindness	-	-	Ampon
to Feel, be sensible of	-	-	Kanal rafa
to Fetch	-	-	Ambel
Fever	-	-	Demam
Figs	-	-	Bualo
Fine, not coarse	-	-	Allus
to Find, to get	-	-	Dappat
Finger	-	-	Jare
Fish	-	-	Ikkan
Fire	-	-	Api
Fire place	-	-	Kras
Flesh	-	-	Dagin
Flour, meal	-	-	Tupor
to Fly	-	-	Terbang
Fool	-	-	Gila
Foot	-	-	Kakki
to Forbid	-	-	Larang

to Force

to Force one, compel	-	Bakfa
Fork	-	Tuffuk
Fortune, luck	-	Ontong
Frolicksome	-	Sukante
Fruit	-	Boa, buabua
Full	-	Punu

## G

to Gape	-	Bukka mulut
Garden	-	Kobon
to Get	-	Dappat
a Ghost	-	Matatingi
to Give, give back	-	Kassi, kassi kombali
Glad	-	Suka atj
to Go out	-	Kaloar
He Goat	-	Kambin, prompuang
God	-	Alla
Gold, gold-smith	-	Mas, tukang mas
Good	-	Baj
Gnat	-	Jamok
Great	-	Bezar
Green	-	Ifo
Ground	-	Tanna
to Grow	-	Minjadi timbul
Gums	-	Dagin gigi
Guts	-	Prutnja



## H

Hair	-	Rambut
Half	-	Saparo
Hand	-	Tangan
Handsome, beautiful		Bagus
to Hang	-	Gantong
Hangman	-	Allegootji
Hard	-	Daper
Hat	-	Toppi tjappeo
Hatred	-	Bintji
to Have	-	Ada
He	-	Dia
Head	-	Kappalla
to Heal	-	Brobat
to Hear	-	Dengar
Heart	-	Ati
Heaven	-	Saorga
Heavy	-	Brat
Heil	-	Duraka
to Help	-	Fulong
Hen	-	Ajamp rompuang
Hereabouts	-	Difini
to Hew, (to cut)		Pottong
Hide, bark of a tree		Kulit
High	-	Tingi
Hire	-	Serva
to Hoist up	-	Parreknaik
to lay Hold on		Pegan

Hole

Hole	-	-	Lobang
Hot	-	•	Pannas
Hot in temper	•	-	Bengis
Houfe, to build a houfe			Ruma, Kria ruma
Hunger	-	-	Lappar

## , I

I	-	-	Betta, kitta
Jewels	-	-	Intan
Jeweller	-	-	Tukan Intan
Immediately	-	-	Sabantar, betul
Impudent	-	-	Jang ter taw malu
Indigo	-	-	Nila
In	-	-	Didalam
to Include, or inclofe	-	-	Mendangan
Inheritance, to inherit			Pufakan, dappat pufakan
Ink	-	-	Tinta
Ink-stand	-	-	Tampat tinta
Intestines	-	-	Prutnja
to Invite	-	-	Tauwa
Iron	-	-	Biffi
Ifland	-	-	Pulo
to Itch	-	-	Gatal
Judgment	-	-	Ingatang
Ivory	-	-	Gaiding
Just	-	-	Butul

## K

Kernel	-	-	Bidji
Key	-	-	Kuntji
to Kill	-	-	Buno
King	-	-	Radja
Kitchen	-	-	Dappor
Knee	-	-	Lutok
Knife	-	-	Piffuk
to Knock	-	-	Pukkul
to Know	-	-	Kanal, rafa
to Know (fcire)	-	-	Taw

## L

Lady	-	-	Bini Nonje
Land	-	-	Tanna
Ladder	-	-	Tanga
Language	-	-	Baaffa
Languid	-	-	Tikkar
Late	-	-	Lama
Lateſt, laſt	-	-	Diblakkan kali
to Lay	-	-	Barceng
too Late	-	-	Talalu lama
to Laugh	-	-	Tatauwa
Lazy	-	-	Pamalas

Lead

Lead -	• Tima
Leak (in a ship) ,	- Botjor
Lean, meagre	- Kurus
to Learn -	- Mengadji
Lemon -	- Jeurok
to Lend -	- Pinjang
Less -	- Lebi kurang
Letter -	- • Surat
to Let, permit	- Biar
to Lick -	- Gilat
Lie, a falsity -	- Penjuita
to Lie, tell a lie	- Panjusta
to Lie in wait	- Menguinte
Life -	- Kahidopan
Light, easy -	- Trang eteng
to be Like -	- Turut
Limb, member	- Panton
Lime -	- Kapor
to Limp -	- Prentjang
Linen -	- Kajin
Lion -	- Singa •
Lips -	- Bibir
Little, a little	- Kitjil-fediki
too Little -	- Talalu fedeki
to Live, living	- Idop
to Load -	- Muet
Long -	- Panjan •
to Look, to see	- Leat
to Look about one	- Balek tengok
Loofe -	- Talappas
to Loofe -	- Ilang
Loufe -	- Kutu

to Love	-	-	Tjinta
Low	-	-	Dibauwa

## M

Man (homo)	-	-	Orang
Man (vir)	-	-	Laki laki
to Make, or do	-	-	Kria
Married	-	-	Jang suda kawin
to Marry, marriage	-	-	Kawin
a Mark	-	-	Tanda
to Mark	-	-	Tarrotanda
Mafon	-	-	Tukan batu
to Measure	-	-	Ukur
Me	-	-	Kitta, betta, faja
a Medicine	-	-	Obat
Medicine chest, apothecary's shop	-	-	Tampat obat
to Meet	-	-	Katombu
Merchant	-	-	Dagang
Merchandize	-	-	Bedagangan
Merry	-	-	Suka ati
Milk	-	-	Sufu
Misfortune	-	-	Tjilaka
Miscarriage, ill fortune	-	-	Gugur annak
Money, coin	-	-	Wang
Monkey, ape	-	-	Monjet
Month	-	-	Sa bulang
Moon	-	-	Bulang

Moor, blackamoor	-	Kadja
More	-	Lagi lebi
Morning	-	Bezok
Morning early, the dawn	-	Pags ari
Mother	-	Maa
Mother's brother, uncle	-	Sanak
Mountain	-	Gunong
Mouth	-	Mulut
Much	-	Banjer
too Much	-	Talu banjer
Mud	-	Lumpur
Murder	-	Bunu

## N

Nail (on the finger)	Kuku
Nail (iron pin)	Pakel
Naked, bare	Talanjang
Nape of the neck	Meimang
Narrow	Kurang leba
Near	Dikkat
Nearer	Lebi dikkat
Neatly fitting	Kabetullan
Neck	Ler
Needle	Jarong manjei
Negro	Kadja
Neft	Rumanja
New	Baru
Nice, well tasted	Ennak

Night	-	-	Malam
No	-	-	Trada, tida
Noon	-	-	Satenga ri
Nose	-	-	Idem
Not	-	-	Bulong

## Q

Oath	-	-	Sumpain
Obedient	-	-	Ormat
Oil	-	-	Minjak
Old	-	-	Tua
One-eyed	-	-	Satu Matta
Onion	-	-	Bawang
Open, to open	-	-	Tabukka, bukka
Out, without	-	-	Luar, diluar
to Overturn	-	-	Kria jatu
Own, one's own	-	-	Kandiri, jang ponja
Owl	-	-	Kukublu
Ox	-	-	Sampi

## P

Part	-	-	Bagian
Passionate	-	-	Bengis
Pay	-	-	Bajar
Pearls	-	-	Mutjara

Pepper

Pepper	-	-	Lada
Physician, surgeon	-	-	Guru
to Pickle with brine	-	-	Tarro azin
Pillow	-	-	Tjium
Pimple	-	-	Biful
to Pinch	-	-	Jipit
Plate	-	-	Piring
to Play	-	-	Main
to Please	-	-	Mauw
to Pluck	-	-	Pingan
Poison	-	-	Jang suda kawin
Poor, in want	-	-	Miskin
Poverty	-	-	Kafiakan
Powder	-	-	Obat
Powder, gunpowder	-	-	Obat passan
to Pour	-	-	Saling
to Pray	-	-	Menjumba
Priest	-	-	Pandita
to Print	-	-	Tindis
to Promise	-	-	Janji
Prophet	-	-	Nabei
Proud	-	-	Kabessaram
to Provoke	-	-	Parreknaik
to Pull	-	-	Pingan
to Push down	-	-	Kria jatu

## Q

to Quake for fear	-	Semetar
to Quarrel	-	Geger



to Quench, to quench one's thirst Banuhaus  
 Quick - - - Lakas

## R

to Rain	-	-	Ujang
Rat	-	-	Tikkus
to Read	-	-	Batja
Ready	-	-	Trangt
to Rear	-	-	Piara
to Receive, to get	-	-	Dappat
Red			Mera
Rhenish wine (four wine)			Angor affam
Rice	-	-	Bras
Rich	-	-	Kaja
to Rise (from bed)	-	-	Bangong
to make rise, to awaken			Kria bangong
River, rivulet	-	-	Kali
to Roast	-	-	Goring
Rock	-	-	Batu karang
Roe (of a fish)	-	-	Tellor ikkan
Roof	-	-	Genting
Rope	-	-	Tali
Round	-	-	Rundar
to Run	-	-	Belumpat
to Run, to run away	-	-	Larri, pigi

## S

to Sail	-	-	Balajar
to Salute, falutation	-	-	Kaffi tabe
Salt	-	-	Garang affin
Sand	-	-	Paffir
Safh	-	-	Tajam
Sciffars	-	-	Gunting
to Scratch	-	-	Garok
Sea, fea-shore	-	-	Laut, pingir laut
Seal, fignet	-	-	Tjap
Seafon	-	-	Muffin
to See	-	-	Leat
to Seek out	-	-	Pili
to Sell	-	-	Djuval
to Send	-	-	Kirim
Senfible (underftanding)	-	-	Bifa
Serpent	-	-	Ular
to Set, place	-	-	Tarro
to Sew	-	-	Manjei
Shallows, foundings	-	-	Tjeper
Shameful, fhame	-	-	Mula
Shamelefs	-	-	Jangter taw malu
to Shave	-	-	Tjukkyr
to Shew	-	-	Unjuk
Ship	-	-	Kapal
Shoe, fhoemaker	-	-	Sapato, tukan fapato
to Shriek	-	-	Geger
to Shut	-	-	Mendangan

to Shut

to Shut in	-	-	Tuto
Sick	-	-	Sâkkit
Sign	-	-	Tanda
Single, alone	-	-	Sakali
Silk	-	-	Sutra
Silver	-	-	Perak
Silversmith	-	-	Tukan perak
to Sing	-	-	Manjanji
Sister	-	-	Sudara prompuang
to Sit	-	-	Duduk
Skin, bark of a tree	-	-	Kulit
Sleepy	-	-	Mengantok
to Sleep	-	-	Tidor
Slow, tedious	-	-	Palan
Small-pox	-	-	Tjatjar
Smith	-	-	Tukan biffi
to Smoke	-	-	Tjum
Snuffers	-	-	Gunting liling
Sometimes	-	-	Barankali
Soft	-	-	Lembek
Son	-	-	Annek lakki
Sorrowful	-	-	Sufa ati
Sour	-	-	Affam
Spacious	-	-	Lebar
Spawn of fish	-	-	Tellor ikkan
to Speak	-	-	Katta
Speech, language	-	-	Baassu
Spices	-	-	Bumbu
Spider	-	-	Lawa
to Spit, spitting bason	-	-	Luda tempat luda
Spoiled (damaged)	-	-	Rufak
Spoon	-	-	Sundek

Sportfinan	-	-	Tukan peffan
Square	-	-	Ampat ujong
Stand	-	-	Bediri
Stake	-	-	Ambara
Star	-	-	Bintan
to Steal	-	-	Mantjuri
to Stick, to cleave	-	-	Melenket
to Stick, to stab	-	-	Tuffuk
Sticky, adhesive	-	-	Litjin
Stomach	-	-	Prut
Stone	-	-	Batu
Strength, force	-	-	Kuat
to Strike	-	-	Pukkul
Strong	-	-	Kras
to Stuff, to darn	-	-	Tiffi
Sugar	-	-	Gula
Sulphur	-	-	Tjollak
Sun (the eye of the day)	-	-	Matta ari
Sweet	-	-	Manis
to Sweep	-	-	Sapu
to Swim	-	-	Bernang
Sword	-	-	Pedang

T

Table	-	-	Meja
to Taste, tasteful	-	-	Ennak
to Take medicines	-	-	Minom obat
to Tear to pieces	-	-	Subek

That

That	-	-	Itu
to Thank, thanks	-	-	Tramma kassi
There	-	-	Difitu ,
There below	-	-	Difitu bauwa
There above	-	-	Difitu atas
Therefore	-	-	Dari itu
Therefore not	-	-	Dari itu tida
They	-	-	Dia orang
Thick	-	-	Kassar
Thin	-	-	Tippis
Thing	-	-	Karon
to Think	-	-	Ingat
Thunder	-	-	Geontor
Tiger	-	-	Matjan
Time	-	-	Waktu
Too much	-	-	Talalu banjer
Tooth	-	-	Gigi
Tongue	-	-	Lida
Town	-	-	Kotta
to Treasure up	-	-	Simpang
Tree, wood	-	-	Pohon, Caju
to Try	-	-	Tjoba
to Turn	-	-	Balek

## U

Ugly	-	-	Rupa buffuk
Uncle (by the mother's side)	-	-	Sanal
Under	-	-	Dibauwa
to Understand	-	-	Mananti

Unknown

Unknown	-	-	Hada kanalan
Unmarried	-	-	Bujang
Un-used	-	•	Trada biafa
Upper edge, t'other fide			Sabran
Us	-	-	Kitta orang

## V

Vexatious	-	-	Sajang
Vein	-	-	Urat
Victuals	-	-	Makkanang
Vinegar	-	-	Tjuka
Virginity	-	-	Prawang

## W

Waggon, cart	-	-	Padati
the Wait	-	-	Miawak
to Wait on, to attend	-	-	Jaga
to Wait for	-	-	Nanti
to Wake one	-	-	Kria bangor g
to Walk	-	-	Jalang
to take a Walk	-	-	Kuliling
Wall	-	-	Tembot
it is Wanting	-	-	Kurang
War	-	-	Prang
Warm	-	-	Panas
to Wash	-	-	Tjutji
Water	-	-	Aijer
Way, road	-	-	Jallang

Weak	-	-	Enting
Weed in the fields, &c.			Rompat
Weight	-	-	Timbanggan
to Weigh	-	-	Timbang
Welcome	-	-	Slainmat
Wet	-	-	Bafa
What	-	-	Appa
When	-	-	Kappan
Whence	-	-	Derimanna
Which	-	-	Sappa
to Whistle	-	-	Tjop
White	-	-	Putti
Whole	-	-	Interu
a Whore	-	-	Sundal
to debauch, make a Whore			Befundal
Why	-	-	Manappa
Why not	-	-	Manappa tida
Wild, woody	-	-	Utan
Wilderness	-	-	Utan
to Will, be willing	-	-	Maw
Wind	-	-	Angin
Window	-	-	Jenella
Wine	-	-	Angor
Within	-	-	Didalam
With	-	-	Dengan
to Wonder	-	-	Erran
Wood	-	-	Kaju
World	-	-	Dunia
to Work	-	-	Kria
to Write, writer	-	-	Tulis, jurre turlis
Wrong, injury	-	-	Sala

## Y

Yarn	-	-	Benang
Year	-	-	Taun
Yeast	-	-	Panko
Yellow	-	-	Koning
Yesterday	-	-	Kalamari ari
You	-	-	Lu
Young	-	-	Muda

---

In counting, the following words, are used.

1 Sato	11 Saplās
2 Dua	12 Duablas
3 Dika	20 Duapulo
4 Ampat	21 Duapulo fato
5 Lemma	30 Dika pulo
6 Anam	40 Ampat pulo
7 Tujo	50 Lemma pulo
8 Telappan	100 Sarattos
9 Sambilan	1000 Serrives
10 Sapulo	



There are several words that do not occur in the Malay language : these have been taken with the things they signify, from the Dutch and Portuguese, as

Table cloth	Doek
Glas	Glas
Telescope	Kyker
Kettle	Ketel
Lanthorn	Lantarn
Cap	Karpoes
Tobacco-pipe	Pipa
Beer	Bier
Stockings	Kous
Seltzer water	Aijer hollandia
Soup	Soep
to Iron (linen)	Strika
Lady, madam	Nonje
Sir or master	Sinjon
Rix-dollar	Real
Paper	Kartas

The Malay language is written with Arabic letters, which the Malays adopted at the time when they carried on an extensive traffic in the neighbourhood of the coasts of India. With respect to declensions, conjugations, and other grammatical affections, this language is one of the most simple and least artificial; nevertheless both Indians and Europeans are able perfectly to understand each other. In order to give an idea of the genius and construction of it, I have thought proper to annex the following short dialogues, which may possibly be of use to some future traveller, and may be easily looked over, or else entirely omitted, by the rest of my readers.

What is it o'clock?

Pukkul brappa?

It has already struck eight.

Sudabis pukkul telappan.

If it be so late, why have not  
you set the house in order  
yet?

Kalu bigitu lama, manappa  
lu orang bulong sapu ru-  
ma?

We are but just now risen.

Baro betta orang suda bangun.

It does not become a slave to  
sleep so late.

Trada patut samma budak  
jang tidor bigitu lama.

I cannot rise earlier, when I  
go to bed so late.

Kalu betta bigitu lama pigi  
tidor, kitta trabuli bangun  
lebi siang.

Hold! I will teach you how  
to behave another time.

Lain kali nanti betta ajar itu  
samma lu.

For this time I beg your par-  
pardon, madam.

Ini sa kali kitta minta ampon  
samma, Nonje.

- Is not the water boiled yet? Ajer bulong suda massak?  
 Not yet, but it will boil im- Bulong, tappe sabantar nanti  
 mediately. mediri.
- Who is to blame, that I have Sappa punje sala, jang betta  
 no coffee yet? bulong dappat koffi?
- The cook is to blame. Tukkan massak punje sala itu.
- How so? Manappa?
- Because he let the kettle with Darri dia suda kria jatu itu  
 with the water overset. ketel dengan ajer.
- How did that happen? Bigimanna itu suda jadi?
- I did not see it. Kitta trada leat.
- How do you know it then? Bigimanna lutan itu?
- I only heard it from himself. Kitta tjomma suda dengar ita  
 darri dia kandiri.
- Where is he? Dimanna dia ada?
- I believe he is in the kitchen. Betta kira, jang dia ada di  
 dapper.
- Let him come to me himself, Bear dia kandiri dattang di-  
 then. fini samma betta.
- I will call him. Nanti betta pangil samma dia.
- Why is water wanting, when Manappa ada korang ajer,  
 I am to drink coffee? kappan betta mau minom  
 koffi?
- The water was already boil- Ajer suda ada massak pagi  
 ed at six o'clock this morn- ari pukkul anam.  
 ing.
- Where is it now then? Dimanna ada Sakirin?
- Overset, by which means I Suda jatu, darri itu kitta lagi  
 scalded my foot. suda bakkar betta punje  
 kakki.
- It is your own fault. Itu ada la punje sala kandiri.
- I feel it yet. Sampe sakarin kitta ada rasa  
 itu.

Be wiser another time. Lain kali lu muste ada lebi bifa.

Very well, madam. Baij, nonje.

You are this day to dress a great deal of victuals. Ini ari lu muste kria banjak makanna.

More than usual (daily)? Lebi darri fari fari?

Certainly, because here will be many people (to eat) to entertain. Sungo, darri banjak orang dattang makkan diffini.

What do you order me to dress, madam? Appa nonje furu, jang kitta muste massak?

Soup, a piece of salt meat, fish, and fowl-curry. Sup, fa pottong dagin azin, ikkan, dengan kerri affam punje.

What shall I roast? Appa betta muste goring?

Two capons and a piece of mutton. Dua ayam kabiri dengan fa pottong dagin kambing punje.

Is that enough? Sampe itu?

Yes, it is enough; but you must go into the garden, and fetch fruits of various kinds (to eat) for this entertainment. Sampe juga; tappe lu muste pigi di kobong, ambel banjak rupa bua bua pur makkan dibblakan kali.

At what time will you eat, madam? Pukkul brappa Nonje, mau makkan?

Precisely at twelve o'clock. Betul pikkul dua blas.

What are you doing, girl? Appa lu, budak prompuang, ada kria?

I am sewing my master's shirt. Kitta ada Manjei Sinjor ponje kameja.

And what are you doing else? Lu lagi apa kria?

I am darning stockings. Betta ada tiffi kous.

Whom do they belong to? Sappa punje?

They belong to my mistress. Nonje punje.

When did you take them to Kappan lu suda ambel in  
darn? puer tiffi?

Last night. Kalamari pagi.

Are they not ready yet? Bulong abis?

Not yet. Bulong.

You are too lazy. Lu ada talalu malas.

No, madam; but I have got Trada nonje; tappe kitta suda  
many holes to darn. dappat banjak lobang puer  
tiffi.

You have always something Lu fari fari ada satu appa puer  
to say. katta.

I also yesterday ironed (the Kitta kalamari lagi suda strika  
things) the linen. itu barang.

What (things) linen? Barang appa?

Those which the washerman Jang manatu kalamari daulo  
brought (to the house) suda bauwa di ruma.  
home the day before yes-  
terday.

Have you first counted the Suda bilang itu barang lebi  
things? daulo?

Yes, I have counted them, Suda bilang, ada lagi betul  
and found them right.

I do not believe you; I will Betta trada pertjaja samma lu,  
count them myself. kandiri betta mauw bilang.

Very well, madam, here are Bai Nonje, disini ada itu  
the (things) linen, and the barang dengan dia punje  
(letter) inventory of it. furat.

Look; how you have counted! Leat; bigimanna lu suda bilang  
Is there any thing wanting? Ada korang barang?

Certainly; one shirt, two Sungo; satu kameja, dua  
pair of drawers, and two tjillana dibaua punje, den-  
pillow-cases. gan dua sarong bantal.

Madam,

Madam, shall I call the Nonje Maw, jang kitta pigi  
washerwoman? pangil samma menatu?

Run, and call him. Larri juga, pangil samma dia.

If he will not come, what shall I tell him? Kalu di' tra mau d'uttang, appa  
kitta nanti bilang samma dia

Tell him, that if I do not get back what is wanting, he must pay for it. Bilang juga, jang kalu betta  
trada dappatita barang, jang  
ada korang, dia muste bayar  
itu.

And if he will not do that, what am I then to do with him? Kalu dia tra mau itu, appa  
kitta nanti bekin samma  
dia?

If so, you will tell him that he shall never more wash my (things) linen. Kalu bigitu, lu muste bilang  
samma dia jang dia jangan  
kira puer tjutje betta punje  
barang lagi.

What more? Appa lagi?

That I shall keep back the money which I owe him for this month. Jang betta nantj pegan itu  
vang, jang kitta ada ulang  
samma dia puer ini bulang.

How much is he to pay for the linen? Brappa dia muste bayar puer  
itu barang?

For the fine shirt four rix-dollars. Itu kameja allus ampat real.

For the other things? Puer itu lain?

For the two pillow-cases, which were coarse, one rix-dollar and five skellings. Itu dua sarong bantal, jang  
suda ada kassar, satu real  
dengam lima satali.

What more? Lagi?

For the two pair of breeches, two rix-dollars and a half. Itu dua tjillana dua real sa-  
tenga.

Have you any more commands, madam? No! je ada lagi satu appa puer  
furo?

No, get you gone; but return Trada, pigi; tappe dattang  
foon. lakas kombali.

I go. Kitta ada pigi.

On the merchandize which the officers of the ship had brought with them from Holland and the Cape on their own account, they gained, for the most part, a considerable profit. The price of goods is here, as well as in other Indian places of trade, subject to many changes, because when several ships arrive from one place, a large quantity of certain articles are brought, the price of which then falls. And again, if the ships stay away late, certain articles are much called for, in great request, and well paid. In-  
somuch that thirty-six Dutch rix-dollars have sometimes been paid in Batavia for a ham. In general, however, the profits are computed to be from thirty to fifty, and even a hundred per cent.

There are certain commodities from Holland for which there is always a great call, and which are bought up by the Europeans resident here, such as smoaked hams, Dutch cheese, Dutch beer, and several sorts of wine, especially red, and feltzer water. The wines are brought hither in bottles well corked; but the beer is carried on board in barrèls, and sold here by the barrel, and bottled off after it is brought a-shore,  
and

and has stood quiet a day or two in order to settle. It not only keeps during the voyage, but also after it is bottled. Several other articles are also sold to great advantage, such as jewellery, stuffs and shags for lining coaches, sailors' knives, and other kinds of hard ware, &c.

From the Cape of Good Hope not many articles were brought for sale, but almonds and raisins, which were bought up for the use of the hospital, were sold with some little profit. But iron seemed to me to be the most lucrative branch of commerce. Some of the subaltern officers had bought from the smiths at the Cape a parcel of iron, the greater part of which was considered by the latter as being unfit for use, such as bits of iron of different sizes, which had been cut off in forging. These bits of iron, which had been bought at the Cape at two stivers a pound, were here sold to the Chinese at the rate of five stivers.

So that all over the East Indies every kind of commerce is more precarious than in Europe. The principal commercial speculations, therefore, turn upon knowing what wares are most in request, or have not for some time been brought to any particular part.

Custom-houses and tolls.—Institutions which, in countries where commerce is expected to flourish, are not suffered to lay any obstacles in



the way of either buyer or seller, are not known either here or in other commercial places in the Indies; but a certain duty is to be paid to government on all commodities that are sent from the ship and sold on shore. And this duty was now farmed out to a company of Chinese, who, in a decent and becoming manner, searched the larger chests, but let trunks and chests with clothes pass untouched.

The current coins at Batavia were either Indian or European. Dutch ducats were rather scarce; but ducatoons and piastras, as also skellings, especially ship's skellings, and doits coined by the company, were very common. The latter, with the Company's arms on the one side, as well half doits as whole ones, served as change to buy fruits and greens with, and were more current up the country among the Indians. Gold and silver rupees, but particularly the latter, and half, and still more, whole rupees coined in different places, were the most current coin. A golden rupee was worth ten rix-dollars, and a silver one half a rix-dollar. It was said, that at the instigation of the Company both a whole and a half rupee in gold, and a whole one in silver, had been coined here in the prince of Madura's name. This was known by the year marked on it agreeable to the Christian æra, and the golden coin was very  
pale,

pale, in consequence of the silver that was mixed with it. New, and particularly old Spanish dollars, were frequently to be met with, and were much liked by the Indians. Angular, and cut piaſtres, coined in America, and brought hither from the Manilla iſlands, were alſo often to be met with, in whole, half, and ſmaller pieces, conſiſting of very fine ſilver. Sometimes alſo I ſaw ſome imperial ſilver dollars, rather leſs than a piaſter, and theſe were chiefly bought up by ſuch as returned to Europe, as there was hardly any thing loſt on them. Ducatoons, eſpecially the ſtriped, went here at the rate of eighty ſtivers.

The inhabitants have, as well as their neighbours in Sumatra and Borneo, a coin peculiar to themſelves, made of lead, roundiſh, and leſs than a farthing, with a few letters on one ſide, and a round hole in the middle, through which a ſtring may be run upon occaſion. It is thinner than a farthing, of very little value, and current in the interior part of the country only.

Near the canals, within the town, are ſmall forts built of ſtone, and furniſhed with cannon, for the purpoſe of bombarding the poſſes and ſtreets in caſe of an inſurrection. And at the ſame time proper meaſures are taken, that, on ſuch occaſions, cannons may be brought out at the ſhorteſt notice, and placed at certain diſtances in the ſtreets, in order to compel the Indians  
and

and slaves to keep within their houses. These preparations for defence, absolutely necessary for a people who are very far from being numerous, and reside in an invaded country, make the town not very agreeable, and excite, in the thinking mind of the philosopher, rather unpleasant ideas respecting the mode in which those manifold delicacies and luxuries, those costly garments, and elegant articles of furniture, are, with so much voluptuousness and sensuality, procured from those distant places.

The Chinese are reckoned the most numerous of all the strangers. They retain their national character, customs, and manners, are the most industrious people in the whole country, and indefatigable in every thing they undertake. Some of them travel to and from China for the sake of commerce, but most of them live constantly here. Stout and tall, and of a yellow colour, they are particularly distinguished from other people, by their small and oblong eyes. Some few wear their beards; the greatest part of them are shaved, and the hair, which is left growing on the crown of their heads, is plaited in one or three long plaits, either hanging down their backs, or coiled up round their heads. Their cloathing is thin and wide, consisting of a jacket, which is buttoned on one side, and long trowsers. They have shoes with thick soles, and without buckles in them;

and they wear no stockings. A handkerchief generally hangs down the thigh on the right side, and on the same side they carry a silver box, to put small money in, or else a purse. Their heads are covered with a hat in the form of a cone, or with an umbrella, and they have commonly in their hand a fan.

The gardens about the town are chiefly taken care of by the Chinese, who carry about fruit and culinary vegetables, for the use of the inhabitants and the shipping, and vend them at a low price. They likewise farm the arrack distilleries, are skilled in almost every handicraft business, carry on an extensive commerce, cultivate the sugar-cane, coffee, and indigo, and, in short, are indispensibly necessary.

As no women are allowed to be brought out of China, the Chinese are under the necessity of intermarrying with the Javanese women.

Besides the Chinese who carry wares and merchandize about the streets, one is sometimes visited by those that offer their service in cleansing the ears, an operation to which the surgical art in Europe is an utter stranger. By means of some fine instruments which they use, they have the art of cleansing the ears of wax, and other impurities that may have accumulated there, without causing any disagreeable irritation.

The Indians chew betel in common, and  
consider

consider it as impolite to address any body without having a quid of it in their mouths. The betel leaves, called Siri (*Piper betel*), are therefore brought in fresh every day for sale, and are sometimes used by European ladies, especially such as are born in the country. Into one of these pepper leaves a piece of the Areek-nut, (*Areka cathecu*), being put, and sometimes a little lime, the leaf is folded together, and kept for some time in the mouth, till all the strength is drawn out of it. When lime is added, the saliva, lips, and teeth grow red, and at last of a dark colour. A person who is accustomed to betel, and first begins to use it, grows giddy and drunk as it were, and in time, from the force of habit, cannot do without this spice, which produces a painful sensation in the mouth, ulcerates the tongue, and affects its nerves in such a manner as almost to deprive him of all taste. It is said to cure bad breath, clean the teeth, and strengthen the gums.

Among the many spices which the Indies produce, none is more commonly used than Cayenne pepper, (*Capficum*), with which almost every dish is seasoned. Rice mixed with the powder of this spice, is frequently eaten without any other addition; sometimes cocoa-nut is added, when it makes a complete meal. To fish, flesh, and all kinds of sauces, this hot spice is always added; and in the soup called *Karri* or *Currie*,

*Currie*, Cayenne pepper is the chief ingredient. This currie soup, a dish much used in the Indies, is a common meat-soup, to which are added several sorts of spices, such as *Schoenanthus*, (or *Limon grass*), turmeric, and in particular Cayenne pepper. This elegant soup, dyed yellow by the turmeric, is rendered so hot and fiery by the Spanish pepper, that a person that is not used to it, imagines his mouth and throat to be on fire. In time this dolorous sensation becomes less perceptible, and the soup not only acceptable, but even highly desirable. It irritates the nerves of the Indian tongues, rendered torpid by the use of betel, strengthens the tone of the stomach, and assists digestion. However, in order to diminish the heating qualities of the currie soup, it is mixed up with boiled rice, according to every one's palate or fancy.

The usual European grains neither thriving, nor indeed being cultivated in India, the Indians have neither wheat nor rye bread. The bread, of which the Europeans in the town eat very sparingly, and particularly to their meat, is made from the wheat which is brought hither from the Cape of Good Hope. Instead of this the Javanese use rice, which is cultivated on the low and inundated lands in abundance, and with great advantage. It is used to all dishes instead of bread, for which purpose it is simply boiled; and,

and, after it is strained off, served up on large pisang-leaves: the way of eating it is to take some of it up with the three first fingers and put into the mouth.

The flesh of the buffalo-oxen of this island is called *Karbou*. It was sometimes used as food for the slaves and sailors; but considered, at least by the farmer, as coarse food, unfit for this hot climate. Otherwise the greatest part of the meat consumed here was of the feathered kind, such as hens, ducks, and geese, and particularly a great quantity of fish of different kinds, which is easier digested, and makes the body less inclined to putrefaction and putrid fevers.

Of European fruits, roots, and culinary vegetables, one finds few cultivated here, such as cabbages, turnips, Jerusalem artichokes, and Windsor beans. But, on the other hand, the country abounds with other fruits, roots, bulbous plants, different species of beans, and other vegetables, which are daily served up at table.

• The cocoa-nut (*Cocos nucifera*) is daily eaten by the Indians. It is brought down more or less ripe from the crown of the palm-tree, and, after it is opened with a knife, the liquor contained in it is first drunk, which tastes sweetish, and quenches thirst. The white almond-like kernel is afterwards eaten either alone or with rice. The Europeans grate the kernel, and make a  
kind

kind of almond emulsion, from which they prepare currie soup and other palatable dishes.

*Pifang* is the appellation given by every one to the fruit of the tree of paradise, (*Musa paradisiaca*), of which there are several sorts, different in size and quality. The fruit is generally gathered unripe and green, it is then hung up to ripen, and grows yellow. The lesser kind is called *Pifang radja*, and may justly be considered as one of the most delicious and wholesome fruits in the world. The thin coat which covers the fruit is easily peeled off, and the inner and pulpy part, which is sweetish, almost melts in one's mouth. Though one eats much of it, one is hardly ever satiated with it. It is somewhat of a mealy nature, and one of the principal articles of the Indians' food. It is eaten raw both by the Indians and Europeans; but the latter dress it besides in various different ways, either by roasting or stewing it. Sometimes it is stewed in red wine, like pears, or it is peeled and boiled in a decoction of a red species of amaranthus, by which it is turned quite red, in the same manner as if claret had been added to it. Fried in oil, it grows rather hard, and has a very agreeable taste. In both these processes it is previously peeled and cut into long slices. These slices are sometimes dipped in batter, and fried like apple-fritters, and these I frequently saw the Europeans



eat at their afternoon collations, when tea was drunk at the usual hour. \* One single tree produces a large quantity of fruit, but never blossoms more than once; after which it dies, and propagates by new shoots springing out from the root. This tree, though it grows wild in the country, is yet very generally cultivated, almost indeed in every garden. It attains to the height of a man, and has no branches. The leaves of this tree are the largest in the world, of such as are undivided and do not lie in folds.

The pine-apple, or fruit of the *Bromelia ananias*, has been considered by many as the most delicious of all fruits. The odour of it is agreeable, and fills the whole room. The taste of it likewise deserves the highest commendations; it has a mixture of sweet and sour in it, which is extremely agreeable. But it contains also something acrid, something which is noxious, so that it ought to be eaten by way of desert only, and not as food; it is as big as a man's head. When the outer coat is taken off, the fruit is cut into slices crosswise, which are taken into the mouth and chewed a little, when the liquid part only is swallowed, and not the fibrous. <sup>Its</sup> agreeable taste seems to penetrate the tongue itself. The Europeans eat it either with salt, sugar, or red wine, in order to prevent any bad consequences that may arise from it, and seldom  
more

more than one or two slices are eaten at a time. Slices of this fruit cut into shreds are sometimes put into syrup, and eat, like sweet-meats, with tea. I have likewise seen these slices stewed in red wine and soft sugar. When it is not quite ripe, it is acrid and poisonous. If eaten in great quantities it causes the diarrhoea and dysentery, especially among the sailors and soldiers, who are afflicted with the scurvy on their first arrival.

Gojavus (*Psidium*) is eaten, when ripe, both raw, and stewed in red wine and sugar.

Jambo (*Jambelifera indica*) is also eaten raw, and, when cut into slices and the seeds taken out, stewed in red wine. Of this fruit there are different kinds: the common Jambo fruit is small, and not larger than a small plum; *Jambobol* is as large as a pear; *Jambo ayer Mauer* both smells and tastes like rose-water. All these have something dry in their taste, but are not in the least astringent. The juice of it is sometimes used with Tjampaka (*Michelia*) water and rose-water, for inflammations of the throat and mouth, and also in the thrush.

Mango (*Mangifera indica*) is an egg-like fruit, of the size of a goose's egg, flat, of a green or yellowish colour, and is frequently eaten without any other preparation than the taking off the rind with a knife or the finger. The inner pulp, which surrounds the kernel, is the part

which is eaten. This fruit is very common at the tables of the Europeans, and I often eat it with sugar, cut into slices and dipped in its own liquor. Preserved in sugar, it is not unfrequently served up at the tea-table. When unripe it is very sour, and in this state, boiled with sugar, butter, and eggs, it yields an acrid sauce that tastes like boiled apples or goose-berries. The Javanese boil the unripe fruits in brine, which taste, and are used, like olives; others boil them, and steep them in vinegar and pepper, to eat with meat like cucumbers.

The Catappa (*Terminalia catappa*) is a tree which sheds its leaves like the Bombax. The fruit of it is oblong and rather flat. The outermost shell is green, and grows yellow as it ripens. Within it lies one or two kernels, as sweet as almonds, which are eaten both raw and made into tarts, and are very nourishing.

The fruit of the Papaya (*Carica papaya*) is at first green, but afterwards grows yellow, like a pear, and is as large as a small melon. Within the exterior shell there is a yellow pulp, which is eaten, and has nearly the same taste as a melon. This fruit is boiled, when green and unripe, and is in general stewed with some dish or other of meat.

Among the fruits which may be more properly said to serve the Indians for food, is that called

called the *Bread fruit*, *Boa Nanca*, (*Radermachia*), and that fetid fruit, the *Durio*. This latter is extraordinary on account of its nauseating and intolerable corpse-like smell, which is perceived at a great distance, when the fruit is brought into the town for sale. Nevertheless it is reckoned delicious, and is eaten eagerly, even by the Europeans. Each of these fruits is as large as a child's head, and larger, and covered with a thick skin, which is prickly, like that of a hedge-hog, and is thrown away; of both the inner part only is eaten, and that either raw or stewed. The *Durio* is considered as diuretic and sudorific, and as serviceable in expelling wind.

*Salac* is a singular kind of fruit on account of its small imbricated scales, which lie like shingles one on the other. It is sold in every market and street, but is seldom eaten by the Europeans. It is like a pear, and of the same size; within it has a kernel, which is white, and divided into several pieces, and is the part which is eaten. It is nutritious and well tasted.

The *Annona* is one of those fruits which I often saw exposed to sale in the markets, but seldom on gentlemen's tables. The pulp, which is inclosed within a thin shell, and surrounds the seeds, is to be sucked out with the lips. It is sweet, of a mealy nature, and an agreeable taste. Two sorts

of it mostly occurred, as large as apples, viz. the *Annona squamea*, and *reticulata*.

Among the various sorts of fruits which were served up at the tables of the Europeans, were the Carambola and Bilimbing (*Averrhoa*). The former of these is an egg-like yellowish fruit, with five corners, and sharp projecting edges, and is of the size of a pear, or a hen's egg. It has an agreeable tartness, and is eaten raw as well as stewed. Some of the trees bear fruits that have a more acid and somewhat rough taste. The latter fruit is oblong, of the thickness of one's finger, and so sour that it cannot be eaten alone. It is therefore cut into pieces, and put into soups, or preserved in sugar. Of the juice of this and sugar is prepared a syrup, which is a cooling and refreshing remedy in fevers.

*Boa lansay* is the Malay name for the fruit of a tree, from which I could not procure a blossom, and which as yet is unknown to the botanists. The fruit hung down in long clusters; they were round and small, like goose-berries, yellowish and hairy. Within their thin shells they include a thin juice, which is white and tartish, and which is sucked out with the mouth. The fruit begins to ripen in March, when it has a sweetish acid taste, and is in no great estimation among the better sort of people.

The fruit of the Ratan (*Calamus rotang*) I saw  
once

once or twice exposed to sale, and I observed it was bought up by the Indians. When ripe, roundish, as large as hazel-nuts, and like salac chip, they are covered with small shining scales, laid, like shingles, one upon the other, and always disposed in large clusters. The Indians generally suck out the pulp (which is subacid, and surrounds the kernel) by way of quenching their thirst, and sometimes it is pickled with salt, and eaten at tea-time.

The Rambutan (*Nephelium lappaceum*) grows in large clusters, and is very generally eaten. The external rind is thrown away; the white and viscid juice contained within is sucked out with the lips, has a tart subacid taste, and quenches thirst. Each fruit is somewhat oblong or roundish, red, and hairy all over, and less than a plum. The rind is easily taken off, and is white on the inside. The pulp is white, loose, and almost transparent, tough, and difficult to tear asunder with the teeth. It has a sweetish acid taste, like that of lemon juice and sugar, and is tolerably pleasant; the kernel, which is within, is not eaten.

*Rambutang ati* is to the full half as big again, with thicker and longer hairs, and its rind separates more easily from the pulp. This is eaten, like the former, but is scarcer and dearer.

The Mangustine, (*Mangostanos, Garcinia mangostana*), is brought to Batavia from Bantam, and is only to be had at a certain time of the year,

which is in January and the months following. The rind is of a purple colour on the outside, and pale within, soft, of an astringent nature. It is used by the Chinese for dying black. The fruit is quite round, like a ball, and divided within into five compartments. When it is eaten the rind is generally pared off all round, and the pulp on the inside, which surrounds the seeds, and is white, soft, sweet, and inexpressibly delicious, is put whole into the mouth, in which it melts like whipped cream. It has a most pleasing mixture of acid, with a small degree of sweetness in it, which does not incommode the stomach, neither is one easily satiated with it. It is, in my opinion, the most delicious and wholesome fruit in all the East Indies.

At their tables they frequently had, by way of desert, water-melons, and sometimes shaddocks. Of both these there is a white and red sort, and both will keep on board of ship for weeks together, to the great benefit of navigators. The shaddock (*Citrus decumanus*) is a large lemon of the size of a child's head, with a moderately acid and refreshing juice. The peel is thick, but is easily taken off, and the fruit is afterwards easily separated into several pieces, and, at the same time, is sufficient for several people. The juice quenches thirst, and is cooling, antiseptic, and antiscorbutic.

Water

Water Melons, or *Arbuses*, grow every where in India. The red are considered as the best. The juice is very watery, thin, cooling, and refreshing, melts in the mouth like sugar, and is eaten after meals, either by itself or with sugar, or else with a little salt.

A kind of fresh beer, which is called (*Klein Bier, or*) small beer, was sometimes prepared by the Dutch, in order to drink in the evenings. It was used while in a state of fermentation, and made a loud report every time the Calabash or vessel containing it was opened; it frothed briskly in the glass, distended the bowels, and kept the body open. It tasted agreeably; but as there were no hops in it, it would not keep above twenty-four hours.

In the Indies, where the inhabitants live on fruits and greens, and drink nothing but water, I must confess I did not expect to find any body afflicted with the Stone. However a slave belonging to my host had the misfortune to harbour a very large one in his bladder, which at length cost him his life. After his death, my host opened the body in my presence, and the stone was found to weigh two ounces and a quarter.

My host, Dr. HOFFMAN, had the Company's dispensary under his care, from which all the medicines were fetched for the sick in the hospital; but, for the ships which go to Europe and to the Indian settlements, medicines are delivered



out pursuant to a certain arrangement and to the length of the voyage from out of another store-house, (*Winkel*), to which there are two overseers, who have a considerable annual income.

There are two hospitals; one within the town (*Binnen hospital*); into which all the sick from the town and from the ships are received. Three physicians and two surgeons have the care of the sick here. The other stands out of the town, (*Buyten hospital*), to which the sick are brought from the former as soon as they begin to recover, in order to have wholesome air there, and more exercise.

Besides these two hospitals appropriated to the Company, there are two more in the town, one of which belongs to the Moors, and the other to the Chinese.

The heat which constantly prevails here, and the heavy fogs that hang in the air, without soon dispersing, contribute to make the country, and in particular the town, very unwholesome, and the mortality so great, that the town has been called the European grave. The stench which arises from substances of different kinds, that are imprudently suffered to be thrown into the rivulet, and the irregular diet of the Europeans, do not a little contribute to the devastation which annually are apt to take place amongst them. The poorer sort of people commit excesses in eating fruit, and in the improper use  
of.

of arrack; and the rich indulge more than they ought in so hot a climate, both with respect to strong food and heating liquors; the latter are, for the most part, hastily carried off by putrid fevers, often within the space of three days, and sometimes even in twenty four hours. Dysenteries and putrid fevers destroy the former; and most of those who are able to get over these disorders have a large and distended stomach, with an obstruction in some of the interior parts, (*Placenta febrilis*), which seldom disperses or disappears, if the patient be not sent to some other settlement, where the air is more wholesome and cooler. Those who appear to be the healthiest and most vigorous, die the soonest; while such as are weakly, as also women, hold out longest and best; although those who come from Europe with rosy cheeks, lose this species of beauty in a short time, and are afterwards as pale as a corpse.

The winds that prevail here the whole year throughout, are naturally either sea or land-winds, change according to the season. In the west, *mousson* or rainy season, which is also here considered as the winter, and commencing in November, or the beginning of December, lasts till the month of March, the land-winds blow from S. W. and the W. after which, about noon, a sea breeze springs up from the N. W. In the good season, or *Mousson*, as it is called, the land-winds shift

shift S. E.—E. afterwards to N. E. and at last to N.

Near the ditches before the town I found the *Costus Arabicus* grow, the aromatic root of which is carried to different parts of India, and there sold to advantage.

In the very same manner I found ginger (*Amomum Zingiber* and *Zerumbet*), growing wild farther up the country, in the dry sandy fields, and sometimes near the roads; both these are, perhaps, one and the same species; (at least there is very little difference between them) as the floral spike, which at first is round, grows out by degrees, and becomes longer. The Chinese, however, apply themselves to the cultivation of ginger; and the root, cleansed from the adhering earth, is boiled up with sugar, and sold in the Indies as well as Europe. In India it is frequently used with tea, to strengthen the stomach, and in Europe mostly in hoarseness, coughs, and other disorders of the breast.

I also saw a kind of cardamom (*Amomum compactum*), with roundish seed-vessels, reared in a garden. The seeds of this was like the cardamoms which are usually brought to Europe, and are perhaps collected from several plants: the clusters of flowers grew very low down near the root, and the leaves resembled those of the common flag, but had a point like a fine thread at the end.

Arrack,

Arrack, which, in India is used instead of brandy, which here, as well as in every other part of the world, is reckoned the best ingredient for making punch, and which has a peculiar taste and smell, very different from those of any other distilled liquor, is best made at Java. For the distilling of this several considerable distilleries have been erected out of the town of Batavia, which, together with the privilege of preparing arrack, are farmed by the Chinese only. Rice is the chiefest ingredient from which this spirit is distilled, of three different degrees of strength, in large pans, after a previous fermentation with water, treacle from the sugar-houses, and the juice of the cocoa-trees. The weaker sort of arrack is drank warm by the Chinese, out of cups, at their merry meetings. The white arrack, which is called *Kneip*, and is immediately bottled off, is stronger, and is used chiefly in India. The arrack, after it is put into wooden vessels to be sent to other places, acquires a colour from the wood, and is the brown arrack that is commonly sold in Europe.

Cotton and silk are the chief materials throughout all the East Indies, from which the Indians make their clothes, and of which they sell annually an immense quantity to the Europeans. Silk indeed is not manufactured in the island of Java; but of cotton two different kinds occur in the country. One grows on a very high tree, with a large

large spreading and handsome top, and is called *Bombax pentandrum*, or silk-cotton tree. The cotton which encloses the seed in the capsule, is called *Kapack*, and is not used for spinning, but for making mattraffes, bolsters, and pillows. The other is the produce of a shrub, which, in the space of half a year, grows to the height of a man, and afterwards dies within the year (*Gossypium herbaceum*). This produces, from its seed-vessels, a much better and finer cotton (*Kapas*), which is spun and woven into an infinite number of cotton and calicoe pieces, of various degrees of fineness. I saw the cotton cleansed from the seed, by being laid on extended cloths, and beaten with sticks, till all the seed was perfectly separated from it.

Neither coffee-houses nor taverns are to be met with in this large and populous town, but all strangers, as well those who arrive by the Dutch ships, as those who come by vessels belonging to other nations, are obliged to put up at the Gentlemen's Hotel, which is a very large and handsome house, with a great number of apartments. Here they have not only attendance, a room, and bed and board, for a ducatoon, or a rix-dollar and a half, a day, but also coffee, wine and ale, by paying extraordinary for them. There is besides in this house a very large hall for the boarders to meet in and converse together, long galleries open on one side for them to walk or sit in.

---

in under the shade, and a billiard-table for their amusement. No burgher, nor person that has a post under the Company, is suffered to lodge or board strangers for payment; but, if they choose to harbour a friend gratis, there is no prohibition to the contrary.

The rice (*Oryza*) which is cultivated on the low lands of the island of Java, is remarkably white, and ranks next to the Japanese in point of goodness. Some rice is also cultivated on the higher parts of this island, and needs not be under water, which this sort of grain otherwise usually requires. Before rice was brought hither, and became common in the country, the Javanese lived on (*Geerst*, as it is here called) the seed of a plant with a blackish bloom, of the *Panicum* or millet kind, which was cultivated by them, but was neither so good nor so profitable.

Besides rice, I saw cultivated here in different places Turkish wheat (*Zea mdis*), and the *Helcus sorghum*.

The burning heat of the air, and excessive perspiration, make bathing very necessary: and indeed a day seldom passes without one's seeing the Indians splashing about in the water. For this purpose they choose such places, either in the rivulets or creeks, where they are secure from the crocodile. By these means their bodies are cleansed, and their pores opened: besides this the cold water strengthens their bodies,

so that they afterwards perspire less, and grow more light and lively.

The spice trade, it cannot be denied, brings the Dutch Company the greatest profits of any; no private person therefore, whether he be an officer on the civil list, a burgher or a naval officer, is suffered to have any thing to do with it; but the Company has engrossed the whole to itself. If any one is caught smuggling in this article, it always costs him his life, or at least he is branded with a red hot iron, and imprisoned for life.

Opium, which is commonly called Amphion, is considered as being contraband in the highest degree; the commerce in it likewise is entirely reserved to the Company alone, and the punishment, in case of trespass, extremely severe. This commodity is chiefly brought from Bengal, and brings the Company an immense profit. A great consumption of opium is made in Java, and the adjacent islands. The Indians use it very much, but not so commonly for chewing as the Turks, but, in its stead, make it into an electuary, with which they besmear the top of their tobacco, after they have put it into their pipes. This, when they have smoked a few whiffs of it, makes them delirious, and, as it were, drunk; and if they imprudently use too much of it, they are quite beside themselves, and raving, so as even to be ready to murder every one they meet. When a

man,

man, thus rendered furious by opium, comes into the street, they call out *Amok, Amok*, and every one has a right to kill him, as he is to all intents and purposes an outlaw. The privilege to sell opium is usually farmed out to some people, (for the most part men high in office), who are the farmers general, and who pay very large sums for it. These again retail out their privilege to others, or, to speak more properly, they sell opium by wholesale at a very high price, to such as dispose of it in small quantities to the Indians. And as some of the first people here have an interest and fellow-feeling in the trade, a particular strict watch is kept, to prevent it from being smuggled into the country; and the offender is sure to be punished according to the utmost rigour of the law. Birds' nests, which I had also seen at the Cape before, were here more used in soups, as nourishing and delicious. They are composed of glutinous fibres, and dissolve into a transparent jelly, when put into warm water. They were said to be found in abundance in the Javanese mountains, and to be a profitable article of commerce, especially in China. This trade is also monopolized by the Company, and is generally farmed out to the highest bidder. These nests have hardly any taste, but are nourishing, and easy of digestion.



*Subattes* was the name given by the inhabitants to several species of a curious kind of grasshopper (*Mantis*, especially the *precatoria* and *religiosa*), whose thorax was as long as the rest of its body, and which always lifted up its fore-legs, like the Indians, when they salute, or are requesting any thing. As this animal is extremely indolent, and seldom stirs, and the thorax perfectly resembles the stalk upon a leaf, and the wings, with their dark veins, look exactly like a leaf. Another species of it (the *Mantis gongyloides*), was therefore called the walking or living leaf. The Indians consider them as holy, or at least, as animals that brought good luck.

The buffaloes in Java were much unlike those that I had seen in the African woods. These were grey, smaller, and wallowed themselves in pools of muddy water. Although they always retained more or less of their native wildness, they nevertheless suffered themselves to be tamed; and I frequently saw them used for drawing large carts.

I observed that the chests, as well in the dwelling-houses as in the warehouses, were generally set upon bottles. The stagnation and unfrequent renovation of the air, and the consequent mouldering and speedy decay of most substances, rendered this precaution necessary; as otherwise, not only the bottoms of the chests, but the goods  
also

also contained in them, would in a short time be spoiled and intirely rotten.

In the road of Batavia there are a great many islands which not only make it secure in storms, but are also of great utility to the Dutch company. On these islands the Company has wharfs, store-houses for goods, and many other conveniences.

The Javanese were seen rowing to and fro' in the harbour in amazingly narrow but long boats, the gun-wale of which for the most part lay as steady and as level as a looking-glass. These boats are hollowed out of a tree, of a breadth merely sufficient for one man to sit in them, but several yards long, and without fails.

Slender ratans, (*Calamus rotang*) are in very common use among the Javanese as cordage, and with these, either whole or cut into thin slips, they had the art of tying up any thing whatever with great dexterity. I likewise saw both strong and neat baskets made with them, as also broad mats for sitting on, which were very pretty.

The Bamboe tree is one of the most useful trees to the Indians in this part of the country. Of this they make almost every thing they want with the greatest expedition. With it I saw houses built, chairs, tables, bedsteads, ladders, poles for carrying goods on, as also vessels and

house utensils made, which were neat, strong, and light.

In the gardens of the Europeans situated out of the town, several shrubs and plants made a most elegant appearance; some with their variegated leaves, and others with their large and beautiful flowers. Amongst the former were the *Nyctanthes picta*, and the *Erythrina corallodendrum*; and amongst the latter the *Hibiscus Rosa sinensis*, the *Muraya exotica*, &c. The *Hibiscus rosa sinensis* was called Kambang Sapato (*the Shoe flower*); and, in fact, the bloom of it yields a very black pigment. On this account it is said to be used for blacking the scabbards of their hangers, (*Kris*), as also for blacking shoes.

The *Morinda citrifolia*, is called *Bengado*; and the juice of its root is used by the Javanese for dying red.

Indigo (*Indigofera nila*) grew wild every where, and was in some small degree cultivated by the Chinese.

Of crocodiles there is a very great abundance near the mouths of the rivers, and in the streams of this island. This creature grows to a considerable length. In my botanical excursions I frequently saw them lying on the beach, basking and sleeping in the sun. Sometimes they are taken by the Javanese with a hook, a circumstance which seems almost incredible.

The

The mouth of this animal is very wide, and the teeth in both his jaws as sharp as chissels; so that with the greatest ease he can bite asunder the strongest rope. In order to catch him, the Javanese use a very loosely twisted cord of cotton, at the end of which a hook is fastened with some carrion or fresh meat on it. When the crocodile, after having swallowed the hook, endeavours to bite the cord asunder, his teeth get fast between its loose fibres, so that he is not able to bite it in two. The hook that he has swallowed likewise prevents him from tearing the cord to pieces. The hook, as I was told, is made of wood; and as soon as the crocodile is observed to have fastened, people come to assist his antagonists, and kill him with other instruments. So that it is possible indeed to catch Leviathan with a hook; it must not however be done by dint of strength, but by artifice and stratagem.

The kernel of the fruit of *Boa atî* has a very bitter taste. It is used, pounded, in the colic, both by the Malays and Javanese.

The Javanese must not be made slaves of; but I was informed that it sometimes happens that they pawn each other; though I must confess that I could not get sufficient intelligence on this subject.

The kernel of the pinang (*Nux arecæ*) which is so commonly and almost daily used with Siri, in chewing betel, was cut to pieces with a pe-

culiar pair of scissars made for the purpose, which I frequently had an opportunity of seeing, particularly when in company with the European ladies. The kernel was generally divided into six parts, and one of these parts was taken each time as a quid.

The Sugar-cane (*Saccharum officinarum*) is planted in great abundance at Java; and soft sugar is exported from hence to most other parts of India. All the sugar used in the East-Indies, is either sugar-candy or soft sugar. The refining it to loaf-sugar is not suffered here, but must be done in Holland. The chief trade to Japan is in this commodity. The sugar-candy is used with tea and coffee; and the soft sugar for dressing victuals, and preserving fruits of all sorts and berries, such as cloves and half-grown nutmegs, which are eaten by some people with their tea, in order to strengthen their weak and relaxed stomachs.

Nellika, or Boa Malacca, is preserved in the same manner, as is also a fruit called Cherimelle. In this state the former tastes quite soft and tender, and is as large as a hen's egg. The pulp has a subacid taste.

Cherimelle is less; it is pricked all over with a needle, and laid in water, and at length boiled up with sugar, and kept with syrup in glass bottles. These fruits are often eaten with tea. They are sometimes eaten unripe with a little salt, and may likewise, when in that state,  
be

be preserved in fall. Sometimes they are eaten ripe, and have then a subacid taste.

Fokke Fokkes was the name by which the fruit of the *Solanum Melongena* was distinguished, which grew here both in a wild and cultivated state. It is of an oblong form, something like a pear, of various sizes, of a quite smooth and shining exterior, and of a purple blue colour. The fruit has an agreeable taste when boiled in soup, or else boiled up with wine and pepper. It is diuretic, and expels gravel, and is in general use among the Europeans as well as the Indians.

Various roots, fruits, culinary vegetables, and other eatables, such as fish, &c. are preserved in vinegar. Thus preserved these articles are commonly called *Attjar*, and are used with roast meat and other dishes, for the purpose of creating an appetite, and strengthening the stomach. The vinegar is rendered more acrid and stronger by the addition of cayenne pepper, so that these pickles are rendered very hot and fiery. In this manner are preserved cucumbers, the rind of melons, and the aromatic roots of the bamboo tree, which latter are even carried from China to Europe.

Within the town of Batavia stand six churches, two Calvinistical, one Lutheran, one church belonging to the hospital, and one in the citadel, as also a Portuguese church out of the

town, which have their clergy<sup>m</sup>en from Holland, who are much respected here and well paid.

The Moors, who live at Bata<sup>v</sup>ia, are, as they are else where, chiefly merchants, and distinguishable by their peculiar and handsome mode of dress. They are frequently stout and tall men, with long black hair, which they fold up in a white cloth, like a turban, and wear whiskers. Some of them wear a cap, or round hat, on their head. Their dress is a large and wide gown or shirt, for the most part of white cotton, which is tied with a string or broad ribbon under the breast, and is wide at bottom, at the same time reaching down to the feet. Their shoes are wide, and terminate in a long slender point, which is turned up, and, by the richer sort, they were frequently embroidered with gold.

The Javanese always sit cross-legged on a straw mat laid on the floor or on the ground itself. On the road, or in the street, they sit on their heels. They compliment each other and salute in the same manner as most other Indian nations do, viz. by clapping their hands together, and lifting them up against the forehead. They take hold of their victuals with their fingers, without using either knife or fork. Their dress consists of a handkerchief, which they twist about their head; a waistcoat with many small buttons on it; and a garment (*Kajin*), which they fasten about their waist.

waist. The waistcoats of the better sort of people are frequently very handsome, and elegantly worked. They wear slippers, but go bare-legged. Their slippers are quite square at the toes and turn up. Some wear a cylindrical cap cut off square, as it were at top, and made of very white cotton, and so much loaded with rice starch, as to be stiff and quite transparent. The women wear a garment, which, after covering their bodies, reaches down to their feet, and is folded together about their waists; and over this they wear a half shirt. The hair is wreathed up in a coil upon the crown, and fastened with a pin. People of quality wear slippers also, which are often very richly embroidered.

The children of these people, like those of many other Indian nations, are educated in a very simple inartificial way. They are seldom heard to cry. I saw them frequently left by their mothers on a mat spread on the earth, to amuse themselves, and crawling about on all fours till they could walk. They are never laced nor swaddled, and I did not see one deformed child or cripple among them.

The principal people among the Javanese live in great splendour, and are attended by several domestics, one of which carries a pinang box, the second a tobacco pipe, and the third tobacco, the fourth a spitting basin, the fifth an umbrella, &c.



nay, the ladies are even carried in chairs mounted with silver, and the chieftains have sometimes silver or gold scabbards to their side arms.

The Javanese are of a yellow colour, with black and rather prominent eyes, the nose very slightly turned up, but yet short and blunt; the hair long and black, the mouth by no means large, but the upper lip of a moon-like figure, turned up, thick and rather pouting. They are mostly of the middle size, or rather tall than otherwise.

The Indians set a great value upon their hair, which is black; and so long as to reach down to their loins. Not a day passes without their anointing it, and combing it, and putting it up in the manner of their country.

It may indeed with justice be alledged, that the inhabitants of the warmer climates have a dull torpid brain, and are less keen and sharp than the Europeans. They have the power of thinking, but not profoundly; and consequently conversation among them is rather trifling. They are in general idle, sleepy, heavy, and lascivious. To these qualities the heat of the climate itself inclines them. And, without insulting the greater part of the dark-brown inhabitants of the East-Indies, one may truly say, that there is a greater difference between them and the Europeans, than between the monkeys and them.

The

The heat of the climate has that influence likewise on the Europeans who arrive here, that in time they become heavy, inactive, and less lively than they are in the colder climates; so that the most industrious man, against his inclination, frequently sinks into a state of inactivity and idleness.

Surnames are never used by the Javanese; and the prænomen is often changed by them according to circumstances. As soon as a father has a son, he changes his own name, and instead of the son being called after his father, as in Europe, the father is here called after his son; for example, if the son is called Choso, then the father's name is changed to *Bappa Choso* (or *Choso's father*). If he afterwards has more sons, he constantly takes his name after the youngest.

The weapons used by the Javanese are of various kinds. The *Kris* is a kind of Coteau de Chasse, which is usually worn by all ranks and on every occasion. The blade is about a foot long, and is either strait or wavy like a serpent, two fingers in breadth, sharp pointed, and two-edged. It is frequently of the colour of lead, with lighter stripes in it. Sometimes it is inlaid with flowers, and in general poisoned. It is kept in a wooden scabbard, which sometimes is painted, and sometimes, when the owner is a man of property, is covered with a thin plate of silver or gold, which

is loose, and can easily be taken off. The hilt is of wood, and is of a peculiar shape. This Kris is worn in a belt, which is tied about the body, on the right side near the back, and frequently quite at the back, especially among the lower class of people.

Another kind of sabre I frequently saw sold in the markets: it was thick in the back, heavy, and above two feet in length, with a horn or wooden hilt.

Badi was the name of a small Couteau de Chasse, or rather dagger. It was about six inches long, with a crooked handle, and was sometimes worn, like the former, in a belt.

Wudong is another weapon, which I saw worn by the lowest class of people only, and chiefly by men servants. It was said to denote obedience and attachment. The blade was short and broad, and resembles a chopping-knife, with a convex edge, and a thick back. The scabbard in which it was kept was made of wood, with a horn spring on one side, by means of which it was held fast in the girdle round the body, where it was stuck in near the back. It was six inches long and three broad. This instrument served also to cut with, and to clear the roads in the thick woods of Java.

Among the Javanese both sexes can be ennobled; so that if a nobleman marries a commoner,

moner, the lady becomes ennobled, and vice versa.

Java is not governed by one sole monarch, but by several, although the island is not so very large as to be divided into different kingdoms. At Bantam there is a king, at Madura a regent, or prince; at Surikarta an emperor, and at Djokjakarta a sultan.

Cock-roaches (*Blattæ*), and ants are as common as they are troublesome in India. The former, however, are more destructive on board of ship, and the latter there and every where else, especially the small red ants, which devour or destroy every thing. These are so diminutive as hardly to be perceived, and penetrate into the smallest crevices. If an insect is caught, and put into a box, it is immediately eaten up by these small animals, so that the wings only remain. The ants are particularly fond of sugar, and assemble in such numbers as intirely to cover the vessel in which it is kept. I found the best means of expelling cock-roaches out of chests of clothes, was to lay camphor among the clothes; and, for keeping out the small red ants, the Oleum Cajeput and Kulit Lavang were the most powerful remedies. They cannot endure the smell of these oils, but die very speedily. With the Cajeput oil, which is more volatile, I made several trials, in order to see in how far  
I should

I should be able, by means of it, to preserve my collections of insects from the ravages of India's all-devouring ants. Having made a ring on the table with cajepur oil, and put a few ants within it, I perceived that the ants did not venture to pass it, but soon grew giddy from the vapor of it, staggered about, and at length died. When any of my insect-boxes was anointed with the oil, and some ants were put into it, in a few seconds they were scarcely able to crawl, and soon afterwards died. In like manner, sooner or later, it killed other insects; so that I plainly perceived that this oil was as dangerous and fatal to insects in general, as it was an efficacious remedy in feveral disorders.

Formerly, and at the first establishment of the Company's commerce, few people of any respectability sailed for these parts, which were considered as dangerous as the voyage itself. The major part of the crew, in all probability, consisted of such as, having committed some crime in Europe, had been obliged to leave their native country; or else, in consequence of a series of misfortunes, and with nothing but the most disagreeable prospects before them, had been necessitated to go to sea. These in the mean time made their fortunes, arrived by degrees at the highest employments, and some of them returned home, from time to time, in affluent circumstances, and

laden with the spoils of India. These again encouraged others to try their fortunes, and such an alteration gradually took place in the face of affairs, that, at present, men of birth and education go thither, and sometimes noblemen, who generally go out as writers, in order to wait for an opportunity of getting into a profitable employment. Although such men of family are sent out every year with many recommendations and great expectations, yet I doubt very much that by this (to all appearance) so useful an alteration, the Company's interest is more promoted; as it is not birth and rank that are required here, but abilities and assiduity. For although one would be apt to suppose that, in consequence of having received a better education than ordinary, they had acquired some degree of knowledge, which however is frequently little enough, yet it is not so much the Company's interest as their own that they have at heart, and to obtain such posts as they may make their fortunes in with speed, as likewise to be enabled to return with their booty as soon as possible to Europe, there to live on the interest of their fortunes in a style suitable to their high rank and dignity. With such views arrived, in the ship that brought me from the Cape, the young baron S\*\* de L\*\*, and a count B. proudly paraded the streets of Batavia, whilst he waited with impatience for some vacancy,

vacancy which might satisfy his ambition as well as his other wants.

Within the citadel are the Company's store-houses for the keeping of grain, rice, spirits, and wines, and other necessaries, not only for this town, but for almost all their factories in India; as also spices and other merchandizes for Europe and other markets.

Here are also the Company's accounting offices, treasury, arsenal, laboratories, &c.

In the chemical laboratory I saw tolerably good oil distilled from damaged cloves, although they did not yield a great quantity of it.

A printing-office is also established here for the Company's use, together with Archives, and a handsome library, the catalogue of which was printed as early as in the year 1752.

The governor-general makes a very great and princely figure when he goes abroad in his large gilt coach of state. He has his master of the horse, master of the ceremonies, and a life-guard consisting of twelve horse-men, also two trumpeters, and a coach-man, all dressed in an appropriate dress. The guard rides, for the most part, before the coach, with drawn swords, and before them two trumpeters, a European and four black running foot-men, and an officer at the side of the coach. Sometimes fifty or sixty armed horse-men attend the carriage, led by a cornet

or serjeant. All ranks of men, except the gentlemen of the council, are obliged to pay obedience to the governor wherever he passes; those that are on foot stand still, and those that are in carriages alight. In the council, which generally meets every Tuesday and Friday, are, besides him, a director-general, and five counsellors in ordinary, who have the power both to advise and determine. There are besides several counsellors extraordinary, who are competent only to advise, but have no voice. Nobody is suffered to enter the council with his sword on, which is always left in the anti-chamber, to the care of the guard. The governor-general has an absolute regal authority and power: whatever he thinks proper to do, is generally agreed to by the rest; and, should they be against him, he can nevertheless carry the matter into execution; but in that case becomes alone responsible for the issue. He has also power to enter into treaties with the Indian princes, to make war or peace, and sometimes, when the Company's interest requires it, he assumes that of dethroning kings and princes, and of putting others in their place. The director-general has the chief management of the Company's trade, goods, and store-houses. Each gentleman belonging to the council has the separate inspection over some of the other Indian factories, and is at the same time frequently



quently president of some of the colleges in the town. When a gentleman, belonging to the council passes any body in his carriage, who has two running footmen before his coach, he must stop whilst they salute. When the Governor-general's lady goes out, two yeomen of the guard ride before the coach, and sometimes twelve horsemen behind it.

In the town there were several coach-jobbers, or burghers, who kept horses and carriages for the use of strangers and others who could not afford to keep any of their own. Such coaches might be hired by the week, month, or day, or for a certain time, but the terms were very high; the owners generally grew rich in a short time.

I viewed the astronomical observatory, which the famous preacher MOOR had built out of the town for the advancement of the sciences; after his death, however, it was no longer used, but stood as a testimonial of the zeal and assiduity of its respectable founder.

Amongst other exotic plants that were cultivated here, I saw likewise the Cajeput-tree (*Melaleuca leucadendra*), from the leaves of which that famous and excellent oil, called Cajeput oil, is distilled; as also the Cacao-tree (*Theobroma cacao*), the flowers of which grow on the stem and larger branches, and whose fruits contain the kernels, from which chocolate is manufactured.

Dragons

Dragons (*Draco volans*) flew about in the environs of the town in great numbers during the heat of the day, like bats in a summer's evening in Europe, without injuring me, who sometimes caught them in their flight, or any one else.

In the road, which is large and wide, but, at the same time, shallow and muddy, lies an old guard-ship, on board of which watch is kept for four nights successively, in turns, by all the surgeons that arrive here in the ships; and to this guard-ship are brought all such as are taken ill in the night, or meet with any accident during the time that the town-gates are shut. A man, however, may get excused from keeping this watch by paying a couple of ducatoons, which are given to some other surgeon that does the duty in his stead.

As at Batavia, as well on board of the ships as also in the hospitals and with the regiments, there is a great number of surgeons in the Company's service, a surgeon-general is appointed, who, with the concurrence of the governor-general and council, orders each of them to such places, either on board the ship or on shore, as he is most wanted in.

Amongst the many articles with which the ships were supplied here for their intended voyage, were pickled fish, fowls, ducks, geese, and eggs, also water-melons, shaddocks, and

cocoa-nuts, and these not only in great abundance, but also at a very low price, as likewise arrack and rice.

Milk also was daily brought to town for sale, and used in the houses.

Sheep were some of the most scarce animals on this island; their woolly coat made the climate insupportable to them. When a live sheep, therefore, arrived from the Cape, it was for the most part sent immediately farther up the country to the Blue Mountains, where the country is higher and the air much colder.

The fig-tree, of which this island has several different sorts, I often saw growing out of the very cracks in the walls; and those so dry, that I was amazed to find that the trees could be kept alive by the trifling quantity of moisture that might be left in such places by the rain.

The military consists partly of Europeans and partly of Indians, who are taken into regular service and exercised, besides the burghers and Chinese, who likewise, in case of a war breaking out, must do duty. The officers here, and all over India, are considered as servants, whom the Company has engaged, in consideration of a certain stipulated pay, for the defence and service of the country. They have, therefore, no share either in the administration of government, or in the carrying on of commerce, nor do they rank  
above

Above the gentlemen in the higher departments of office, who, on account of the most advantageous trade that is carried on by their means, are considered as being of greater utility. The soldiers, the number of whom, on account of the ravages committed by diseases and the arrival of the ships, differs greatly in the course of the year, are frequently treated very ill and with great injustice. Such as are sent out by the kidnappers, have no pay for a long time, and when they get their pay, they receive no more than thirteen stivers in the gilder, of which the greatest part is deducted for cloathing. After recovery from illness, they wander about as pale as a whitened wall, and are frequently so lean that one may almost see through them.

I had several opportunities of seeing the Javanese dances, and, at the same time, of hearing their music.

These dances are performed with various motions of the body, and particularly of the arms and feet. The Malays call these dances *Tantak*, and the Javanese *Rongé*. On these occasions there is always some well-dressed and decorated female, who begins the dance with one of the company, and afterwards continues, one at a time, with such of the others as find a pleasure in dancing; and these her partners always put a piece of money into her hand before the dance

is over. A female dancer of this kind is called *Rongin*, and the money given is divided between her and the musicians.

The music consists of several different instruments, which, when well played on, have not a bad effect at a small distance. The instruments mostly in use are a kind of violin with only two strings, a drum which is beat at both ends with the fingers, a kind of an organ, consisting of pieces of wood of different lengths (according to the different tone to be produced) and laid on a hollow block: these are beaten with a wooden hammer; a copper kettle, which is beaten as it is suspended in the air, and two copper bowls, which are held in the hand and struck against each other.

The titles of the reigning princes in Java differ according to their different dignity. Those that I could arrive at the knowledge of, with any degree of certainty, were as follows,

The Emperor in Surikarta is called,	
<i>Sufu bunang,</i>	i. e. Sovereign prince.
<i>Pako buna,</i>	The world's (nail) support.
<i>Senapati ingalaga,</i>	Land, or field-colonel.
<i>Abdul cakman,</i>	Holy priest.
<i>Sultan panatagama,</i>	Defender of the throne.
The Sultan in Djokjakarta is called,	
<i>Sultban,</i>	i. e. Prince or king.

*Haming*

*Haming kubana*, Regent of the world.  
*Halisa tolak*, God's stadtholder;  
 and *Sennapatti ingalaga*, Abdul rakman and Say-  
 din panagatagama.

The Regent in the island of Madura is stiled *Panembaham Adipatti*, a free prince or regent.

A prince is called *Pangerang*. A hereditary prince *Pangerang adepatti*; a queen *Ratu*; and a princess *Radin Aju*.

*Patti* is the denomination given to an intendant of a province, or any large tract of land, among the Javanese. Of these there were several in the territories subject to the Dutch company. These are appointed, it is true, by the governors, but must be confirmed by the government of Batavia, in like manner as are the kind of regents called captains, who are set over the Chinese in that country.

*Tommegomme*, is the appellation given to the overseer or head-man of some small district or large village; and if one of these governors marries a princess, he is stiled *Radin tommegom*.

There is a very scarce coin amongst the Javanese, which I had a great deal of difficulty in procuring, though I paid a silver ducatoon for it. It was made of brass, and was about as broad as a Swedish rix-dollar, but was not of above twice the thickness of a half-penny. There is a square hole in the middle, which serves for stringing

stringing them together. It is called *Pettis kang*, and was said to be found at present on the eastern extremity of the island only, e. g. at Suribaija and Banjermassing. A broad raised border surrounds the edge. In the middle stands a tree with spreading branches, and on each side of this a mis-shapen human figure like a skeleton. This figure, like all others which they draw or carve in wood, is disfigured, as the Mahometan religion prohibits them from making any true likeness. For the rest, the coin is cast.

At Batavia there is likewise a coin struck in copper, by governor ZWARDEKROON (though it was said to be more current at Coromandel than here) which is of the size of a Swedish stiver, or an English half-penny, and of the thickness of a farthing. On one side is a double margin, on which is stamped Batavia, with the date of the year, and in the middle a sword. On the other are represented the Company's arms, and over these is stamped half a stiver.

I also met with a Javanese doit as large as a farthing, and of the same thickness. It was made of copper, stamped on one side with Javanese characters in three rows, within a dotted circle, and exhibiting on the other side a wreath of flowers, within which were the words *Duyt Jav.* 1783, likewise in three rows.

The Chinese *Petjes*, cast in brass with a square hole

hole in the middle, were current here also, and that even amongst the Europeans. This coin is strung to a certain number on a string, is as large and thick as a common farthing, and is brought hither from China by the Chinese merchants.

*Garing* is a name given to a large Cicada, which, sitting on the trees in the Javanese woods, is heard to make a noise as shrill and piercing as if it proceeded from a trumpet. This animal is not easily seen nor caught. It sits on the trunks of the trees and the larger naked branches, and is with difficulty perceived by the eye. On a closer approach it becomes silent by degrees, and at last suddenly flies away. It is best caught with an insect-net, which is set before it, or, by the Indians, with bird-lime at the end of a long rod, which was brought gently to the back of the wings, and made them stick together.

I observed two sorts of peas eaten by the Javanese, by which their breath was rendered extremely offensive. They were therefore called by the Dutch stink-beans, and by the Javanese the small leaved sort *Petté*, and the other *Chenkol*.

The name of *Dranguli* is given to the fruit both of the *Cassia Javanica* and *fistulosa*, the pods of which are cylindrical, black on the outside, and contain a black laxative pulp within, and hang down from the tree like long sticks.

*Dau kitji* was the name of a herb which I  
never



never could see in blossom, but it seemed to me to belong to the order of *Asperifoliae*, and was, by some, considered as a *Saxifrage*. They endeavoured to persuade me, that it was not only able to dissolve the stone in the human body, but also that if small pieces of porcelain were put into it, it would make them brittle. And indeed when little bits of porcelain were wrapped up in it, it was easy to bite them asunder with the teeth; but the same might be done by wrapping them up in linen, or any thing else that would counteract their slipperiness, and prevent them from hurting the teeth.

Wild boars were to be found in the woods in abundance, and enjoyed amongst the Javanese, who are followers of the Mahometan doctrine, the most perfect freedom and security, although they made great havock in the rice grounds and sugar plantations. In fact, they are neither killed nor eaten by the natives.

Sometimes, though very seldom, I saw fences erected for defending the cultivated lands against the wild boars, and these were, for the most part, weak, and made of bamboos. On the outside of these fences near the sugar plantations, twigs a foot high were frequently placed with a cotton rag at the end of them. These rags the Javanese watered with their urine, which was said to have this good effect, that the wild boars who smell the

the scent, and cannot bear the odour of human urine, do not break into this feeble fence.

The court of judicature at Batavia, which is composed of a few members who have their appointment from Holland, are, as well as the Fiscal, independent of the great Indian court; but these members of the council are poorly paid, so that it has not fallen to their lot to accumulate riches here. From the acquaintance I had occasion to form with some of them, as well as from other circumstances, it appeared to me, that justice was not here an object of commerce.

Besides this court which judges the Company's servants of every degree, even in matters of life and death, smuggling and other criminal cases, the town has its own court of judicature, or Stadthouse, at which one of the members of the grand Indian court presides, and several of the burghers sit as aldermen (*Scheepen*) to judge in such cases as come before them, and even those that regard the lives and properties of the Indians. These places in the council are in the gift of the governor general, and are frequently well paid for by such as thirst after honours, and cannot acquire rank by any other means.

The Sabandar, M. BOERS, who frequently visited at M. RADERMACHER'S house, and was his friend, shewed me much friendship and kindness. He held an employment which was very

lucrative and brought him in a large income, as every stranger who arrived here with the ships was obliged to wait upon him, and take from him every thing they wanted, as well with respect to provisions as other necessaries. Amongst other kindnesses shewn me by this gentleman, he lent me above 1000 rix-dollars on Bottomry, with which I purchased unicorns horns, (*Unicornu verum*), which it was thought would sell well at Japan.

The interest of money borrowed on Bottomry is very high, but differs in proportion to the length of the voyage, and the dangers of the seas to which the ship is bound. The navigation to Japan is considered as the most dangerous of all the Indies. The interest therefore amounts to twenty, or twenty-five, per cent. which is paid on the return of the person to Batavia, should the voyage prove successful; but should the vessel be stranded, or lost, all claims are null and void, and the debtor is for ever exempted from any demands respecting the loan, which, in consideration of a high interest, is made at all hazards.

The commissary appointed over the inhabitants, has perhaps one of the most profitable places that can well be imagined; as he alone has any concern with the inhabitants on the island, and furnishes all the merchandize, coffee, sugar, birds nests, &c. which are the natural products of  
Java.

Java. By these articles, which the natives are obliged to sell to him at the lowest prices; as well as by advancing them money at the highest and most unreasonable interest, he makes an astonishing income.

On the 24th of May, the cannon round the town were discharged, in commemoration of the taking of Jaccatras, which happened on the 13th of May, 1619, according to the old stile, or 156 years ago.

*Jaccatra*, which is now only a fortress, or out-post, was formerly one of the capitals of the island, before it was conquered by the Dutch, and the present flourishing city of Batavia founded nearer to the sea-side.

On the 1st, 2nd, and 3d of June, the Chinese celebrated one of their festivals by a rowing match on the river, which runs through the town down to the harbour. This was performed by two boats that rowed against the stream. The first that arrived obtained the prize, which was set up on a green pole, and chiefly consisted of handkerchiefs, fans, silver coins, or a silver box. This contest was repeated several times, with music, accompanied by a kettle-drum, and beating on brass cymbals.

The time now approached when the ships were to sail for Japan. And, although M. RADERMACHER, who had conceived a high degree of friend-

ship for me, tried to persuade me to remain at Batavia, and to accept the appointment of physician, which was vacant, the income of which was computed to amount to 6 or 7000 ~~fix~~-dollars yearly, yet, on account of the promises I had made in Holland, I preferred my duty to my interest, and the rather, as I had had sufficient opportunities of observing, during my short stay in the place, that no great advantages are to be reaped here honestly. I therefore heartily thanked my kind benefactor, and, by way of preparing for my intended voyage to Japan, bespoke several necessary articles relative to my apparel, some of silk and others of cloth, with lace and other decorations of dress, in order that I might exhibit myself with propriety among the Japanese, who view the Europeans with greater attention than any natural philosopher can possibly examine the most rare and uncommon animal.

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

# I N D E X.

## A

VAN AARDE, p. 136

Acari, 11, 48, 49

Air, 288

Alder tree, 110

Ale, 212

Almond tree, 111

Aloe, 'Aloe tree, Gum aloe,

49, 154

Alps, 26

Amandel hout, 111

Amaryllis disticha, 163

Amomum, 282

Amphion, vide opium

Amsterdam island, 212

Anas, 143, 150

Annona, the fruit of, 275

Ants, 299, 300

AUGE, 201

Arbuses, 279

Ardea, 143

Areca cathecu, Areek, 268,

291

Arrack, 282, 283

Arundo, 143

Æsculus pavia, 131

Aslagay tree, 96, 111

Asses, striped, 84, 89

Atjar, 293

Averrhoa, 276

## B.

Babel, tower of, 116

Baboons, 116

——— mountain, 7, 141

Babiansberg, 141

BADENHORST's farm, 115

Badi, 298

Bamboo tree, 289, 312

Bantam, 214

Barup, 102

Batavia, 215, 216, 220, 226

Bartering trade, 156-157

# INDEX.

- Bath, bathing, 17, 97, 98
- Beads, string of, 81
- Beckvliet, 117
- Bed clothes, 224
- Bengado, 290
- BERG, 200
- Berghaas, 182
- Berge rivier, 184
- Besmearing, 161
- Betel, 268
- Beer small, kleine bier, 279
- BERNARD'S farm, 52
- BEYER'S farm, 115
- BEUTELAAR, 106
- Bilimbing, 276
- Birds nests, 287
- Black and blue spots, 20
- Black river, 115
- BLANKENBERG'S farm, 40
- Blattoe, 299
- Blue-mountains, 2
- Boa ati, 291
- Boa lanfa, 276
- Boa Malacca, 292
- Boa Nanca, 275
- Boats, 289
- BOERS, 313
- Bokkeveld, 29, 154-155, 180
- Bokkeland mountains, 22, 23, 24, 163
- Bombax, 274, 284
- Bonteboks, 44, 58
- Boomlang, 23
- Booter rivier, 115
- Bos Caffer, 84-88
- BOSMAN, 135
- Bosniefmen, 157-163, 167, 173, 175
- BOTA'S farm, 36, 38, 40, 45, 52, 54
- Bottomry, 314
- Bows, 161, 175
- Bow-wood, 171
- Brack rivier, 54
- Brand valley, 35
- BRANDT'S house, 12
- Bread, 269
- Bread fruit, 275
- Bread tree, 66
- Breede rivier, 31, 35, 112
- BRINK, 201
- Bromelia ananas, 272
- BRUEL'S farm, Mrs. 36
- Brug drift, 31
- BRUYN, CLAS, 49
- Bucku, 6, 187
- tree, Buckuhout, 110
- Buccinum, 206
- BURFON, 182
- Buffaloes, 84-88, 270, 288
- Buffeljagts rivier, 40
- Bulfinch, 64
- Bulbous plants, 126, 163
- BURGER, 16, 17, 138
- Burghers post, 4
- Burying, 121, 194, 195
- Butterflies, 96

# INDEX.

- Butter, 2, 57, 117
- Butter-milk, 63
- Buy's farm, 54
- Byssus lactea, 9
  
- C.**
  
- Cabeljauws rivier, 79
- Cacao tree, 304
- Catappa, 374
- Caffres, 94
- Caffres, the country of, 95, 107
- Cajeput tree and oil, 299, 300, 304
- Calcareous hills, 33
- Calamus rotang, 276, 289
- Camassie root and wood, 110
- Camenassie land, 54, 55, 56, 97
- Camtous rivier, 79
- Canarium, 220
- Canna shrub, 104
- Cannaland, Canna's heights, or Canaan's land, 53
- Canna root, 96, 175
- Cannon, 4, 315
- Cape, 117, 120-125
- Capra, 7, 12, 24, 26, 41, 58, 84, 89, 113, 163
- Captain Kloof's mountain, 141
- Carex, 143
- Caravan, 106, 201-203
- Caracal, 182
- Carambola, 276
- Card playing, 78
- Cardamoms, 282
- Carica papaya, 274, 152, 158
- Carrow, 54, 98, 100-106
- CARRELSPECK, 141
- Cassia, 311
- Castration, 192
- Casuarina, 220
- Cat, 182
- Catjepiring, 111
- Cavia, 158
- Cestrum, 162
- Charcoal, 5, 126
- Chenkol, 311
- Cherimelle, 292, 293
- Chestnuts, 131
- Chinese, 95, 217, 266-267, 315
- Christmas, 96
- Churches, 14, 67, 121, 207, 228, 293
- Cicada, 311
- Circumcision, 194
- Citrus decumanus, 278
- Citadel, 216, 302
- Clay, 146
- Clothes, 221
- Cloves, 292



# INDEX.

- Coaches, 222
  - hired, 304
  - Cocos nucifera, 270
  - Cocoa-nut, 270
  - Cock roaches, 299
  - Cockle shell, 5
  - Codon, 147
  - Coins, 264-265, 344-346
  - Colic, 291
  - Cold Bokkeveld, 23, 29
  - Cold, 28, 34, 55, 104, 127, 168, 176, 177, 182, 207
  - Colony, Colonists, 24, 199
  - Columba, 34, 140
  - Coloquintida, 171
  - Commissary, 314
  - Company, 224
  - Confessa, 18
  - Coots, 143
  - Corpulence, 33
  - Covered walk, 128
  - Corvus, 11, 48
  - Costus arabicus, 282
  - Cotton, 284
  - Cotula turbinata, 14
  - Council, gentlemen of, 303-304, 314
  - Crocodiles, 290, 291
  - Crows, 11
  - Crozier, 200
  - Cucumis, 171
  - Cucumbers, wild, 171
  - Cunonia, 110
  - Custom houses and tolls, 263
  - Currie, 268-269
  - Curtisia, 96, 112
  - Cyprea, 206
  - Cyanella capensis, 14
- D.
- Damaquas Hottentots, 52
  - Dances, 307
  - Daun kitje, 311-312
  - Daunis, 167
  - Dassenberg, 4
  - Dassen eyland, 8
  - Dassi, 158
  - Dassi klipp, 16
  - Decline, Consumption, 21
  - Dialogues in the Malay tongue, 257-262
  - Diarrhœa, 15
  - Dictionaries, 228, 229, 231-255
  - DIDEL OF, 52
  - Diep drift, 31
  - Diep rivier, 54
  - Diomedea, 8
  - Diosma, 6, 187
  - Difa, 32
  - Dispensary, 279
  - Diving goats, 7, 23
  - Dollonea, 139
  - Dogs, wild, 10
  - Doit, Javanese, 310
  - Dorn hout, 111

# I N D E X.

- Dorn rivier, 21, 180  
 Dorn boom rivier, single, 152  
 Doves, 34, 140  
 Draco, Dragons, 305  
 Dranguli, 311  
 Drakenstein, 125  
 Draught oxen, 65  
 Drie fontains berg, 141  
 DREIJER, 137  
 DROSKIS farm, 37  
 Drooge rivier, 167  
 Duykers, 7  
 Ducks, 45, 143  
 Duyven hoeks rivier, 46  
 Durio, a fruit, 275  
 Dyes, 290-291  
 Dysentery, 281
- E.
- Ekebergia, 60, 110  
 Eland hoks, 58  
 Elands kloof, 22  
 Elephants, 39, 68, 84, 89, 140.  
     river, 97  
 Else rivier, 31  
 Elsis kraal, 184  
 Emperor's titles, 308  
 Engel bath, 18  
 ENGELMAN, 18  
 ENGELAAR, 135  
 Engines, 296  
 Ennobling, 298  
 Epilepsy, 21
- Essebosch, 60  
 Essenboom, 60, 111, 112  
 ESTERHUYSEN's farm, 176  
 Erythrina, 290  
 Expeditions, 106, 201-203
- F.
- Farming of duties, 264, 287  
 Farms, 33  
 FELDMAN, corporal, 156  
 Fennel root, 4  
 Fences, 312  
 Ferry, 16  
 Fevers, putrid, 281  
 Ficus capensis, fig tree, 60,  
     306  
 Fire, mode of producing, 160  
 FISCHER's farm, 14  
 Fishing, 62  
 Fish river, 95  
 Flies, 92  
 Fly-bush, 26, 32  
 Fokke fokkes, 293  
 VAN FORB, 103  
 FORB, 45  
 Fortrefs, 315  
 FORSTER, Bernard, 22  
 Four and twenty rivers moun-  
     tain, 7  
 Foxes, 10, 78  
 FRERE, 56, 58, 59, 97  
 Fruit, 214, 270, 279  
 Fulica, 143  
 Fundling island, 8

# I N D E X.

FUNERE, Peter, 30

## G.

Galgebosch, 80

Ganſe-kraal, 5

Gardens, 226, 267, 290

Gardenia, 109, 111

Garing, 311

Garcinia mangostana, 277-  
278

GAUS's farm, 19, 22

Geelhout, 109

Geerſt, 285

Gemſeboks, 58.

Gentlemen's hotel, 146, 148,  
284

Geraniums, 31

Giftbolles, 163

Ginger, 282

Gli, 31

Goats, vid. Capra

Gold fiſh, 227

Goldfinches, 13

Gonaquas Hottentots, 80, 83

Goofe, Goofe's egg, 141, 150

GOSSEN's farm, 15

Goffypium herbaceum, 284

Government, 299, 302, 304

Governor general, 208, 302

Goud bloems kloof, 179

Goudena, 35

Gouds rivier, 108

Grand-father's wood, 41

Grasshopper 44, 65

Grazing, 56

GREEF's farm, 135, 141

Grey buck, 11

Greifbok, 11

Groene kloof, 4

Groene kloofs mountain, 4

GROENEWALL's farm, 115

Groot paarde kraal, 53

Groot vaders bosch, 44, 108

Gryllus spumans, 44

Guard ſhip, 305

Guettarda, 220

Gunna, 102

GYLLENHUYSEN's farm,  
112, 115

Gypſum, radiated, 33

## H.

Hagelkraal, 52

Hair, 222

Hail, 31

Haliotis, 5

HANNERKAMP's farm, 138

Hantum, Hantumſberg, 157

Hares, 135

Hartebeest, 7, 84, 89

Hartequas kloof, 53, 103,  
105

HARLOC, the Gardener, 201

Heat, 108, 280, 296

VAN HEESE, 28

HEINS, 53

HELBECK, 54

# I N D E X.

- Helena bay, 12
- Heron, 143
- Hesslaquas kloof, 112, 297
- Hex rivier, 35, 182, 182
- Heykoms Hottentots, 60
- Hibiscus, rosa sinensis, 290
- Hippopotamus, 68
- Hirundo apus, 9
- HOFFMAN, Dr. 217, 218, 226, 279
- Holcus, 285
- HOLMBERG, 209, 217
- Honingberg, 138
- klipp, 11
- Hoof distemper, 71, 93
- Hospitality, 225
- HOP, 201
- Horses, striped, 84, 89, 114.
- Hospital, 119
- Hottentots, 13, 24, 41, 43, 61, 64, 65, 72, 78, 80, 82, 93, 95, 98, 102, 103, 144, 155, 162, 163, 170, 185, 198
- Hottentots God, 65
- Hottentots Hollands berg, 116
- Hottentot captain, 79
- Hottentot language, 72-77
- Houses, 4
- Mout hoek, 116
- Houtniquas essen, 110
- Hunting, 196
- Hereen logement, 146, 148
- Hyæna maculata, 57
- Hydnora, 133, 164
- I.
- Jaccatra, 315
- Jackalls, 10
- JANSEN's farm, 27
- Japan, Japanese, 315-316
- Java, 212, 213, 315
- Javanese, 213, 214, 220, 227-228, 291, 294-299
- Jean Besis kraal, 2
- Jerbao capensis, 182
- Ilex, 109
- Indigo, Indigofera, 181, 290
- Inophyllum, 220
- Insects, 91
- Intoxicating liquor, 150, 167
- Interest of money, 314
- JORDAN's farm, 97, 182
- Iris edulis, 4
- Iron, 23
- Iron tree black, 109
- Islands, 8, 282, 213, 289
- JUBA's farm, 115
- Judicature, court of, 314
- Iutland, 8
- Jumping rat, 182
- Jurisdiction, 120
- Ixia, 34
- K.
- Kreupelboom, 112

# I N D E X.

- Kameka, 102  
 Kamerup, 159  
 Kamkou, 54  
 Kambang sapato, 290  
 Kapàs, Kapok, 284  
 Karbou, 270  
 Karrie soup, 268, 269  
 Kartous kloof, 16  
 Karup, 150  
 Karre hout, 171  
 Keer de Koe, 123  
 KEISER's farm, 35  
 KEMP's farm, 16  
 KERSTE's farm, 172  
 Kerremelks rivier, 75  
 Keurebooms rivier, 40  
 Keurhout, 111  
 Kidnapper, 130, 131  
 Klapper island, 213  
 KLEIN, 11  
 Klipp rivier, 53  
 Kloppenberg, 203  
 Koberg, 4  
 Koedoes, 89  
 Kok, 62, 67, 96  
 Kokmans kloof and rivier,  
     37  
 Kòn, 98, 102  
 Kontberg, 7  
 KOOPMAN's farm, 21  
     — rivier, 184  
 Kora, 44, 78  
 Kreuts fontein, 172  
 Korraans, 7, 14  
 Kou, 135  
 Kouka, 58  
 Krakékamma, 83, 84  
 Kris, 297  
 Kromme rivier, 61, 97  
 KRUYDHOFF, 200  
 Kuka, 91  
 Kuka kamma, 95  
 KUTSE, 135, 141, 173  
  

L.

  
 Ladies, 222, 223  
 Lange valley, 146  
 Lange kloof, 54, 55, 97  
 Language, 191  
 Lanthorns, 56  
 Langstaart, 64  
 Lentils, 180  
 LAU's grazing farm, 164, 169  
 Leathern thongs, 13  
 Leeuwedans, Leeuwejagt, 153  
 Leepelboom, 112  
 Lemons, 141  
 Lemur, 206  
 LEUWESTEIN, count, 210  
 Library, 502  
 LIEBENBERG, 16  
 Lime-stone, 33  
 LINDE's farm, 114  
 LINNÆUS, 206  
 Lions, 19, 38, 69-71, 88,  
     149, 165-167, 179  
 Lions dance, 153

# INDEX.

- Lobelia, 150  
 LOMBART's farm, 48, 138  
 Look-out, 178  
 Looris rivier, 79  
 LOSPER's farm, 12, 21, 109,  
     111, 136  
 Loxia, 14, 23, 64  
 LUBBE's farm, 19, 21  
  
     M.  
  
 Madagafcar island, 133  
 Madagafcar cats, 206  
 Malay books, 228-230  
 ——— language, 217, 227-  
     228, 232, 262  
 Mantis, 65, 194, 288  
 Mangustines, 277  
 Maquas duyv, 34  
 Marmota, 5, 146  
 Marriage, 127, 192  
 Maskamma, 151  
 MATJE's drift, 54, 138  
 Marius dirk, 52  
 Matjes fontein, 13  
 ——— kloof, 54  
 Matjes goed, 37  
 MATTON, 21  
 Mats, 37  
 Maurice's heights, 178  
 Mead, 31  
 Measles, 20, 21  
 Melaleuca, 304  
 MELK, 206  
 MELK's farm, 12, 113  
  
 MENTZ, 41  
 VAN DER MERVEL, 27, 182  
 VAN DER MERVEL's wi-  
     dow, 180  
 Merchandize, 262-263, 305,  
     314-315  
 Mesembryanthemum, 35, 98,  
     128, 175  
 Meulen riviersberg, 62  
 Meuwen Eyland, 8  
 MEYER's farm, 52, 62  
 MEYBURG, 179  
 Military, 306-307  
 Milk, 306  
 Mimosa, 45, 111, 151  
 Misfortune, River of, 179  
 Moles, 146  
 Monkey, 40  
 Mone island, 212  
 MONSON, Lady Ann, 132  
 MOOR, 304  
 Moors, 294  
 Moorwortel, 150, 167  
 Monstrous birth, 170  
 Morinda, 290  
 Mosselbanks rivier, 134  
 MOSTERT's farm, 9  
 ——— hoek, 30, 173  
 Mossel baay, 52  
 Mountains, 2, 4, 7, 12, 15-  
     17, 19, 21, 25, 27, 29, 30,  
     35, 36, 40, 44, 45, 53, 54,  
     56, 61, 62, 83, 100, 101,  
     105, 115, 116, 135, 138,  
     141, 144

# INDEX.

Mountain river, 12, 15  
*Murraya exotica*, 290  
*Musa paradisiaca*, 271  
 Music, 308  
 Mosquitoes, 223, 224

## N.

Namaquas, 155  
 Names, 12, 192, 297  
 Necklace, 176, 188  
 Nellika, 292  
 NELL's farm, 37, 170  
 Nenta, 97  
 New year's day, 96, 197  
 Nieuwland, 119  
 NYCKERT's farm, 58  
*Nyctanthes picta*, 206

## O.

Oaks, 207  
 Observatory, 304  
 OLDENBERG, 133  
 Olea, 111  
 Olive tree, 111  
 OLOFSON's farm, 55, 97  
 OLIVIER's farm, 176  
 Olyfants mountains, 62  
 ——— rivier, 17, 54, 149,  
 150, 151  
 ——— warm bath, 55, 61,  
 97, 98  
 Olive hout, 111  
 Ongeluek's rivier, 179  
 Opium, 286-287  
 ORACK,

Orebi, 58  
 Ormithagalum, 112  
 Ostriches, 7, 10, 53  
 ——— eggs, 135, 141,  
 142, 176  
 Owerhlesne's farm, 138

## P.

Paardeberg, 136, 179, 180,  
 184  
 Paarl-berg, Paarl diamonds,  
 135, 136  
 PALOO, captain, 107  
 Panicum, 285  
 Papenkuyls fontein, 7  
 Papiliones, 96  
 VANDER PARRA, gover-  
 nor, 208, 217, 218  
 Partridges, 143  
 Party military, 158, 173  
 Patrys berg, 12  
 Patti, 309  
 St. Paul's island, 211  
 Bear tree, red, 110  
 Pebble stones, 25  
 PENNANT, 182  
 Penguins, 8  
 Pepper, cayenne, 268  
 Petjes, Chinese, 310-311  
 Persian cat, 182  
 Pettis kantang, 310  
 Petté, 312  
 Physician, appointment of,  
 316

# I N D E X.

Pickeniers kloof, 21  
 Picket berg, or mountain, 7,  
     15, 138  
 Pine apple, 272  
 Pinang, 291  
 PINARD'S farm, 151  
 Piper betel, 268  
 Pifang, 271-272  
 Piftia, 227  
 Pits for animals, 79  
 Placenta febrilis, 281  
 PLAISIR'S farm, 35, 48  
 PLANT'S farm, 52  
 VAN PLETTENBERG, Ba-  
     ron, 120  
 Pleasure-houses, 226  
 DE PLOI, 35  
 Plough, 28  
 Pneumora, 44  
 Police-counsellors, 120  
 Pomegranates, 131  
 Port, 168  
 Portuguese language, 228  
     — books, 229, 230  
 Post, 168  
 Potteberg, 44  
 DE PRE, 58  
 Pretoris's farm, 28  
 Printing office, 302  
 Princes, titles of, 309  
 Prince's island, 213  
 Provisions, 305  
 Protea, 24, 32, 112  
 Public houses, 129  
 Purgatives, 139

Q.

Quagga, 84, 88  
 Quartz, 215  
 Quercus, 207  
 Quiver, 154

R.

Raapuntjes, 14  
 Rabekin, 43  
 Rabbits, 8  
 Radermachia, 275  
 RADERMACHER, 209, 217,  
     219, 226, 313, 315, 316  
 Rain, 37  
 Rambutan, 277  
 Ras's farm, 151  
 RASMUS'S farm, 28  
 Ratans, 276  
 Rats, 178, 179, 182  
 Reebokkop, 7  
 Reeboks, 44  
 Reeds and rushes, 143  
 Regent of Madura's title, 309  
 RENIUS, 40  
 VAN RHENEN, 79, 164  
 Rheumatisms, 18, 212  
 Rhinoceros bushes, 24  
 Rhinoceros, two horned, 84,  
     89  
 Rhonoster rivier, 165  
 Rhus, 171  
 Rice, 269, 285  
 Rietbok, 44



# I N D E X.

- Riebeck caſteel, 7, 15, 137,  
     139, 184  
 VAN RIEBECK, 137  
 Riet-kuyl, 45  
     — valley, 2, 97, 103, 108  
     — fontein, 164  
 Rivers, 12, 15, 17, 21, 31, 35,  
     36, 37, 40, 45, 53-54, 60-  
     62, 79, 80, 89, 93, 95, 96,  
     97, 108, 112, 115, 116, 134,  
     138, 140, 143-144, 149,  
     151, 152, 165, 167, 176,  
     179, 180, 181, 183, 184  
 Roads, repairing of, 173  
     — in harbours, 289  
 Rock's farm, 40  
 Roebucks, 7, 44  
 Rondebosch, 119  
 Rongé, rongin, 307-308  
 Roodbeckjes, 23  
 Roode Peer, 110  
 Roodekatt, 182  
 Roode-zand, 30, 33, 182, 183  
 Roggeveld, 22, 157, 167-  
     169, 175, 175, 176-179,  
     205  
 Roridula, 26  
 Roſendal, 12  
 Rowing match, 315  
 VAN ROYEN, 54, 103  
 Royena, 111  
 RYKVOET, ſurgeon, 202  
 Ryd, 168  
     S.  
 Sabandar, 313  
 Sabre, 298  
 Saffraan kloof, 35  
     — kraal, 53  
 Salke, 275  
 Saldahna bay, 8  
 Salfola, 104  
 Salt, 6, 7  
 Salt pans, 6, 89, 90  
 Sand-ftone, 25  
 Sand-olyve, 139  
 Sand moles, 5, 146  
 SARDYN, 127  
 Saxifrage, 312  
 Scheepen eyland, 8  
 Scurvy, 212  
 Scheepen, 313  
 Sea cow, 68  
     — hole, 46  
 Seals, 8  
 VAN SEELE's farm, 149  
 Serpents, poiſon of ſerpents,  
     23, 145, 162, 173  
 Shaddocks, 278  
 Sheep, 27, 35, 125, 153, 154,  
     197, 306  
 Sheep's dung, 36  
 Ships officers, 125  
 Sideroxylon, 148  
 Silk cotton tree, 284

# N D E X.

- Simia, 40  
 Siri, 268  
 Sitticamma, 97  
 Sky, 207  
 SLABBERT's farm, 7, 15, 35  
 Slange rivier, 45  
 Slate, 32, vide Strata  
 Slaves, 37, 127, 133, 206,  
     227, 279, 291  
 Sleep, 223  
 SMIDT's farm, 14, 35, 141  
 Sneew-berg, 95  
 Snow mountains, 95  
 Snow, 23, 28, 95  
 Solanum, 293  
 Soldiers, 307  
 Sophora, 112  
 Sowing time, 27  
 SPANNENBERG, 21  
 Spice trade, 268, 286  
 Spring-boks, 23, 24, 26, 171-  
     172  
 Spring-haas, 182  
 Spring-guns, 71  
 Stadthouse, 313  
 Stapelia, 140, 171  
 VAN STADE's farm, 54, 103  
     — — — rivier, 80, 96  
 STARRENBURG, landroft, 201  
 Steen-boks, 7, 23  
 Steen brafems rivier, 116  
 Stellenbosch, 125  
 VANDER STELL, governor,  
     119, 125, 200  
 STENKAMP's farm, 168  
 Stink-beans, 311  
 STEIN's farm, 112  
 Stinkhout, 110  
 Stoné (a disease), 181, 279  
 Straat, Straits of Sunda, 181,  
     212  
 Strata, 26, 32, 145, 155, 168,  
     169, 181, 183  
 Straw, 115  
 Strangury, 4, 134  
 STREIDUNG's farm, 58  
 Stroom-drift, 31  
 Subattis, 288  
 LE SUEUR, Dr. 217, 218  
 Sugar, 292  
 Sugar cane, 292  
 Sugillationes, 20  
 Suitors, 192  
 Sultan's titles, 308-309  
 Sun, 223  
 Sunday river, 193  
 Surgeon, 183  
 Surgeon general, 305  
 Swallows, 9  
 SWENFINGER, Captain, 52  
  
 T.  
 Table mountain, 19, 27  
 Tam bukki, 95, 107  
 Tantak, 307  
 Taverns, 129  
 Tax, 19, 20

# INDEX.

- TEMMINK, Burgomaster, 217  
 Terminalia catappa, 274  
 Testudo pufilla, 3  
 Tetrao, 143  
 Texel island, 8  
 Theobroma, 304  
 THERON's farm, 176  
 Thongs of hides, 52  
 Throat, disorders of, 207  
 Tigerberg, 2  
 Tiger hoek, 112  
 Tiger wolf, 57  
 Tobacco, 80, 207  
 DE TOI, 35  
 Tois kloof, 35  
 Tommegomme, 309  
 Tortoise land, 3, 66  
 Torrents, 33  
 Train oil, 8  
 Translator, 228  
 Trees, 60, 96, 104, 109-112,  
     128  
 Trutru, 151  
 Tseiran, 113  
 Turn the cow, 123  
 Turtle's blood, 66, 173  
 TULBAGH, governor, 106,  
     201  
 Turtle, v, rood, 140  
 Tygers, 139, 140  
  
     V.  
 VERMAK's farm, 61  
 Vermin, 145  
 Verkeerde valley, 181  
 Vifchershoek, 134  
 Vifch rivier, 95, 176  
 Vifcum æthiopicum, 15  
 VISAGE, Ifaac, 27  
 Viverra, 115  
 Vliermuys drift, 15, 138  
 Vocabulary, 74, 77  
 Vogel valley, 140  
 Vogts rivier, 36  
 VOGT, 36  
 VOLLENHOVEN's farm, 112  
 DE Vos's farm, 181  
 Verlooren valley, 143, 144  
 Vygebofches, 35  
  
     U.  
 Umbelliferous plants, 31,  
     150, 167  
 Unicorn, 314  
 Uyle kraal, 7  
 Uytkyk, 178  
  
     W.  
 Waageboom, 24, 111  
 Walther's farm, 137  
 Warm bath, 18, 97, 98  
 Warm bokkeveld, 29, 30  
 Water, 186, 226  
 Water turtle, 3, 45, 66  
 Water melon, 135, 150, 151,  
     278, 279.

# I N D E X .

Weapons, 297, 298

De WETT's farm, 31, 49.

Wheat, Turkish, 285

Wild boars, 312

Wind hoek, 139

Winds, 281, 282

Wine, vineyards, 96, 97,

• 135, 136

Winter hoek, 31, 32

Witchcraft, 78

Witte klipp, 9

Woods or groves, 28, 88,

89, 96

Wudong, 298

VAN WERK's farm, 160, 164,

170

## Y.

Yellow wood, 109

## Z.

Zamia caffra, 66

Zea mays, 285

Zebra, 84, 89, 114, 136

Zeeko rivier, 62, 95

Zeekorivur's berg, 62

Ziekenhuys, 115

Zoete melks valley, 114

Zout rivier, 12

ZONDAG, Matthew, 55

Zwardekroon, 310

Zwart bast, 111

Zwarte berg, 15, 115

Zwart yzer hout, 109

Zwartkops rivier, 89

Zwartkops salt pan, 89

Zwartland, 14

Zwart rivier, 115

Zwellendam, 40, 112

ZWELLENGREBEL, 40

Zygophyllum, 97







